

A  
N E W S E T  
O F  
E X E R C I S E S

Upon the VARIOUS PARTS of  
FRENCH SPEECH,

Calculated for the Use of such

As are desirous of making FRENCH without the  
Help of any Grammar or Dictionary whatever.

---

By THOMAS DELETANVILLE,  
Teacher of the French and Latin Languages.

---

The FIFTH EDITION,  
Carefully Revised and Corrected.

---

---

L O N D O N:  
Printed for C. N O U R S E, in the Strand,

---

M.DCC.LXXXIX.



276  
6

---

## P R E F A C E.

**T**HIS book may be considered as a Practical Grammar, comprehending the Principles of the French Language, and a new set of Exercises adapted to them. Each part of speech being separately treated of therein, its formation is first shewn; then its use, and the order in which it is to be ranged are pointed out; afterwards the whole is exemplified in short sentences; and lastly, English Exercises are printed in one column, in order to be translated into French according to the rules that are before laid down, with a Dictionary in the other, containing the French for those Exercises, and explaining the nature of every word.

The Noun, claiming the first place in speech, is treated of first; and Rules are laid  
A 2 down

down to shew in what instances it is preceded by our first article, and in what by any of the other three.

Throughout, the Learner's understanding is never anticipated, nor is he supposed to be acquainted with any part of speech, till it has been explained to him.

Adjectives in English, being placed before their nouns, are attended with no difficulty in that language. But not so in the French, where some precede their nouns; some follow them; and some may indifferently be placed either before or after them. Were children to learn French, in places where no other language is spoken, they would soon know by practice in what order each adjective should be placed. But in an English school, where they have seldom an opportunity of conversing with their French teachers, and are left to speak only among themselves, it is impossible they should know the proper arrangement of adjectives without some rules to guide them. Such they will here find, which, with the exercises adapted to them, will make them surmount that difficulty.



The tables of the French Pronouns shew how those parts of speech are to be formed, and with what articles they are to be declined. As to the difficulties which foreigners find in placing them, they will soon vanish before any one who will take the trouble to read the rules that are laid down, and make the exercises joined to those rules.

Next follow the French Verbs, the compounds of which are shewn to be easily formed with the two auxiliary verbs, and the single tenses are conjugated, according to the scheme of the celebrated *Abbé Girard*; which is so short, that it may be learned in a few hours; so plain, that it is not above the capacity of children; and so complete, that any one by the help of it may conjugate any French verb whatever.

Learners having been hitherto misled in relation to the order in which the French Adverbs are to be placed, it has been thought necessary to be very particular on that head. And no less so, on the French Prepositions and Conjunctions, which answering sometimes to one, sometimes to two or more English prepositions

prepositions and conjunctions, and being sometimes englished otherwise than by prepositions and conjunctions, might puzzle the learner, if they were not fully explained.

Interjections, as they express sudden passions common to all men, are much the same in all languages, and require little to be said of them.

Throughout, no Rule is laid down without being accompanied with some Exercises upon it, consisting generally of Moral Sentences; by which means children, at the same time that they learn the Rudiments of the French Language, imbibe the principles of virtue, and the properest maxims for the conduct of life.

The Exercises at the end of the book the reader will see are taken out of the Old and New Testament, and are designed for the use of those who have gone through the former part of the book.

Every Exercise or set of Exercises has a Dictionary peculiar to it, in which a repetition  
of

of the same word, being needless, seldom occurs. The Dictionaries do not always contain the Pronouns, because these parts of speech may be found in the tables.

When Verbs Passive or Participles Passive make part of a sentence, instead of setting them down in the Dictionary, the Verbs Active, to which they belong, are only inserted therein, as being sufficient to make them known.

---

*Lately published by the same* AUTHOR,

In One large Volume, Octavo, Price 7 s. bound,

The SECOND EDITION, improved by the AUTHOR;

**A** NEW FRENCH DICTIONARY, in Two Parts:  
The First FRENCH and ENGLISH; the Second  
ENGLISH and FRENCH:

C O N T A I N I N G

- I. Several Hundred Words not to be found in any of the Dictionaries hitherto published:
- II. The various MEANINGS of Words, often explained by French or English Sentences:
- III. The GENDERS of NOUNS, ADJECTIVES and PRONOUNS, and the CONJUGATIONS of VERBS:
- IV. The IRREGULARITIES of the PARTS of SPEECH.

To which is prefixed

**A FRENCH GRAMMAR,**

showing how to form the Regular PARTS of SPEECH.



*An explanation of the chief abbreviations made use of in this work.*

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Art.                       | Article.   |
| masc.                      | masculine.   |
| fem.                       | feminine.  |
| sing.                      | singular.  |
| pl. or plur.               | plural.  |
| n. m.                      | noun masculine.  |
| n. f.                      | noun feminine.   |
| n. m. plur. or pl.         | noun masculine plural.   |
| n. f. plur. or pl.         | noun feminine plural.  |
| adj.                       | adjective.   |
| adj. und.                  | adjective undeclined.  |
| adj. plur. or pl.          | adjective plural.  |
| pron. f. or subs.          | pronoun substantive.   |
| pron. nom.                 | pronoun nominal.   |
| pron. nom. m.              | pronoun nominal masculine.   |
| pron. nom. f.              | pronoun nominal feminine.  |
| pron. adj.                 | pronoun adjective.   |
| pron. conj.                | pronoun conjunctive.   |
| sing. m.                   | singular masculine.  |
| sing. f.                   | singular feminine.   |
| v. aux.                    | verb auxiliary.  |
| v. 1.                      | verb of the first conjugation.   |
| v. 2.                      | verb of the second conjugation.  |
| v. 3.                      | verb of the third conjugation.   |
| v. 4.                      | verb of the fourth conjugation.  |
| v. 5.                      | verb of the fifth conjugation.   |
| v. 6.                      | verb of the sixth conjugation.   |
| v. 1. 2. &c.               | verb of the 1st, of the 2d conjugation, &c.                              |
| v. 1. 1. &c.               | 2 verbs of the first conjugation, &c.                                    |
| v. p. or pass.             | verbs passive.   |
| p. p.                      | participle passive.  |
| adv.                       | adverb.  |
| prep.                      | preposition.   |
| conj.                      | conjunction.   |
| v. 1. prep. art. n. m. &c. | verb of the first conjugation, preposition, article, noun masculine, &c. |
| w. p.                      | without a plural.  |
| N.                         | Nominative.  |
| G.                         | Genitive.  |
| D.                         | Dative.  |
| Ac.                        | Accusative.  |
| V.                         | Vocative.  |
| A.                         | Ablative.  |

To form an Adjective, excepted from the general rules, you need only add the letter or letters placed after the comma to those that come before it; for instance, when you find *b-on, onne*, good, in the Dictionary, or any where else, add *onne* to *b*, and you will have *bonne* the feminine of *bon*.

But if the last Letter of the Adjective is to be changed into another, add what is placed after the comma to what comes before the last consonant of the Adjective masculine; for instance, when you find *grac-ieux, ieuse*, gracious, add *ieuse* to *grac*, and you will have *gracieuse* for the feminine of *gracieux*.

---

A New Set of

# EXERCISES

Upon the various Parts of

## FRENCH SPEECH.

**T**HERE are nine Parts of Speech in *French*, viz. Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

To speak and write *French* well, one should know how to form these parts of Speech, in what order to place them, and how to make them agree with one another. When in treating of any one of them, I mention another without giving any rule concerning it, the learner ought to suppose that it answers in every respect to its *English*.

---

### OF NOUNS.

**F**RENCH Nouns are either Masculine or Feminine, and commonly have a singular and a plural. Such as end in *s*, *x*, and *z*, have their singular and plural alike; and most of the others form their plural, by adding an *s* to their singular.

Our Grammarians don't agree about the words *de* and *à*, when joined to Nouns. Those who admit no other article but *le*, *la*, *les*, which they look upon to be undeclined, rank these words amongst the Prepositions; and the others decline our Nouns with them. I shall here follow the opinion of the last, not because it is the best, but because it renders the principles of our language more easy to beginners. When I come to the Prepositions, I shall not scruple to place *de* and *à* amongst them; and in the course of these Exercises, I shall indifferently call them Articles or Prepositions; for it matters very little whether I say, for instance, that such

B

a Verb

a Verb governs the genitive or dative, or that it requires the Preposition *de* or the Preposition *à* before the Noun, provided I don't deviate from the principles of our language, and am understood.

We have then, according to the scheme of several Grammarians, four different articles, which, for distinction sake, may be called the first, second, third, and fourth article.

### FIRST ARTICLE.

This article is *le* for the Masculine, and *la* for the Feminine in the singular, and *les* for both genders in the plural.

Nouns Masculine and Feminine, beginning with a consonant, are thus declined with it in the singular.

#### Masculine.

N. *Le bras*, the arm.  
G. *du bras*, of the arm.  
D. *au bras*, to the arm.  
Ac. *le bras*, the arm.  
V. *ô bras*, o arm.  
Ab. *du bras*, from the arm.

#### Feminine.

N. *La main*, the hand:  
G. *de la main*, of the hand.  
D. *à la main*, to the hand  
Ac. *la main*, the hand.  
V. *ô main*, o hand.  
Ab. *de la main*, from the hand.

But when these Nouns begin with a Vowel, or an *h* not founded, they are declined alike, thus;

#### Masculine.

N. *l'arbre*, the tree,  
G. *de l'arbre*, of the tree.  
D. *à l'arbre*, to the tree.  
Ac. *l'arbre*, the tree.  
V. *ô arbre*, o tree.  
Ab. *de l'arbre*, from the tree.

#### Feminine.

N. *l'ame*, the soul.  
G. *de l'ame*, of the soul.  
D. *à l'ame*, to the soul.  
Ac. *l'ame*, the soul.  
V. *ô ame*, o soul.  
Ab. *de l'ame* from the soul.

#### Masculine.

N. *l'honneur*, the honour.  
G. *de l'honneur*, of the honour.  
D. *à l'honneur*, to the honour.  
Ac. *l'honneur*, the honour.  
V. *ô honneur*, o honour.  
Ab. *de l'honneur*, from the  
honour.

#### Feminine.

N. *l'huile*, the oil.  
G. *de l'huile*, of the oil.  
D. *à l'huile*, to the oil.  
Ac. *l'huile*, the oil.  
V. *ô huile*, o oil.  
Ab. *de l'huile*, from the oil.

In the Article *le*, *la*, of the four last Nouns, the vowels *e* and *a* are dropt, and supplied by apostrophes.



All *French* Nouns, whether they be masculine or feminine, or they begin with a vowel, a consonant, or an *h* not founded, are thus declined alike in the plural.

N. *Les bras*, the arms. Ac. *les bras*, the arms.  
G. *des bras*, of the arms. V. *ô bras*, o arms.  
D. *aux bras*, to the arms. Ab. *des bras*, from the arms.

Observe 1st, That *du*, *des*, *au*, and *aux*, are formed, by contraction, from *de le*, *de les*, *à le*, and *à les*.

2dly, That the genitive, which in *English* is placed sometimes before, and sometimes after a Noun in the nominative or accusative case, always comes after that Noun in *French*, as,

*The tools of the carpenter.* } *Les outils du charpentier.*  
*the carpenter's tools.*

*Use of this Article.*

R U L E I.

This Article is joined to such Nouns and Adjectives, as take or may take the Article *the* before them in *English*; as,

*Le livre*, the book. *des valets*, of the servants.  
*de la fille*, of the girl. *aux bras*, to the arms.  
*à l'homme*, to the man. *du second*, of the second.  
*les cris*, the cries. *au dixième*, to the tenth.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| The king's 1 palace 2.             | 1 <i>Roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>palais</i> , n. m.                              |
| the queen's 1 picture 2.           | 1 <i>reine</i> , n. f. 2 <i>portrait</i> , n. m.                          |
| the ring 1 of the princess 2.      | 1 <i>bague</i> , n. f. 2 <i>princesse</i> , n. f.                         |
| the country 1 of the Amazons 2.    | 1 <i>pays</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Amazone</i> , n. f.                            |
| the fable 1 of the frogs 2.        | 1 <i>fable</i> , n. f. 2 <i>grénoille</i> , n. f.                         |
| the compliments 1 of the season 2. | 1 <i>compliment</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , n. m.<br>2 <i>saison</i> , n. f. |
| the virtues 1 of the Romans 2.     | 1 <i>vertu</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Romain</i> , n. m.                            |
| the looks 1 of the assembly 2.     | 1 <i>regard</i> , n. m. 2 <i>assemblée</i> , n. f.                        |
| to go 1 to the park 2.             | 1 <i>aller</i> . 2 <i>parc</i> , n. m.                                    |
| to speak 1 to the prince 2.        | 1 <i>parler</i> . 2 <i>prince</i> , n. m.                                 |
| to send 1 to the town 2.           | 1 <i>envoyer</i> . 2 <i>ville</i> , n. f.                                 |
| to see 1 the battle 2.             | 1 <i>voir</i> . 2 <i>bataille</i> , n. f.                                 |
| to speak 1 to the ladies 2.        | 1 <i>parler</i> . 2 <i>dame</i> , n. f.                                   |
| to imitate 1 the ancients 2.       | 1 <i>imiter</i> . 2 <i>anciens</i> , n. m. plur.                          |

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| the first 1 of the book 2. | 1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>livre</i> , n. m.  |
| the third 1 of the page 2. | 1 <i>troisième</i> , adj. 2 <i>page</i> , n. f. |
| the last 1 of the year 2.  | 1 <i>dernier</i> , adj. 2 <i>année</i> , n. f.  |

## R U L E II.

This article, serving to denote individuals, and the names of arts and sciences, virtues and vices, and also of metals, being in the French language taken for metaphysical individuals, it must be placed before those names, although they have not the article *the* before them in *English*; as,

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| La Chirurgie, <i>surgery</i> .    | à la patience, <i>to patience</i> .       |
| de la Botanie, <i>of botany</i> . | dé la gourmandise, <i>from gluttony</i> . |
| le cuivre, <i>copper</i> .        |   |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| To study 1 Geography 2.      | 1 <i>Etudier</i> . 2 <i>Géographie</i> , n. f.                   |
| to 1 apply one's self 1 to   | 1 <i>s'appliquer</i> . 2 <i>Astronomie</i> , n. f.               |
| Astronomy 2.                 |  |
| to neglect 1 Painting 2.     | 1 <i>négliger</i> . 2 <i>Peinture</i> , n. f.                    |
| to learn 1 Drawing 2.        | 1 <i>apprendre</i> . 2 <i>Dessin</i> , n. m.                     |
| to despise 1 Fencing 2.      | 1 <i>mépriser</i> . 2 <i>l'art de faire des armes</i> .          |
| to have 1 a 2 taste 2 for 3  | 1 <i>avoir</i> . 2 <i>du goût</i> . 3 <i>pour</i> . 4            |
| Musick 4.                    | <i>Musique</i> , n. f.   |
| to 1 be fond 1 of Dancing 2. | 1 <i>aimer passionément</i> . 2 <i>Danse</i> , n. f.             |
| to love 1 virtue 2.          | 1 <i>aimer</i> . 2 <i>vertu</i> , n. f.                          |
| to hate 1 vice 2.            | 1 <i>hâïr</i> . 2 <i>vice</i> , n. m.                            |
| to preach 1 temperance 2.    | 1 <i>prêcher</i> . 2 <i>tempérance</i> , n. f.                   |
| to excite 1 to patience 2.   | 1 <i>exciter</i> . 2 <i>patience</i> , n. f.                     |
| to reward 1 sobriety 2.      | 1 <i>récompenser</i> . 2 <i>sobriété</i> , n. f.                 |
| to avoid 1 idleness 2.       | 1 <i>éviter</i> . 2 <i> paresse</i> , n. f.                      |
| to punish 1 pride 2.         | 1 <i>punir</i> . 2 <i>orgueil</i> , n. m.                        |
| to blame 1 vanity 2.         | 1 <i>blâmer</i> . 2 <i>vanité</i> , n. f.                        |
| gold 1, silver 2, iron 3.    | 1 <i>or</i> , n. m. 2 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 3 <i>fer</i> , n. m. |

## R U L E III.

*English* Nouns, taken in a general and indefinite sense, and used without the article *the*, must, to express in the *French* language metaphysical individuals, have the article *le*, *la*; *les*, prefixed to them; as,

L'honneur, *honour.*  
de l'esprit, *of wit.*  
à du bled, *to corn.*

à l'éducation, *to education.*  
de la fantaisie, *from fancy.*  
à la laideur, *to ugliness.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Rye 1, wheat 2, barley 3. | 1 seigle, n. m. 2 froment, n. m.<br>3 orge, n. f. |
| salt 1, vinegar 2, oil 3. | 1 sel, n. m. 2 vinaigre, n. m.<br>3 huile, n. f.  |
| to depreciate 1 merit 2.  | 1 avilir. 2 mérite, n. m.                         |
| to admire 1 beauty 2.     | 1 admirer. 2 beauté, n. f.                        |
| to kill 1 time 2.         | 1 tuer. 2 tems, n. m.                             |
| to work 1 for 2 glory 3.  | 1 travailler. 2 pour. 3 gloire,<br>n. f.          |
| to live 1 in 2 plenty 3.  | 1 vivre. 2 dans. 3 abondance,<br>n. f.            |
| to judge 1 mankind 2.     | 1 juger. 2 genre humain.                          |
| to declare 1 war 2.       | 1 déclarer. 2 guerre, n. f.                       |
| to proclaim 1 peace 2.    | 1 proclamer. 2 paix, n. f.                        |
| to love 1 wine 2.         | 1 aimer. 2 vin, n. m.                             |
| to detest 1 idleness 2.   | 1 détester. 2 paresse, n. f.                      |

R U L E IV.

This article is placed before Nouns of dignity; declined with the second or no article in *English*, as *le roi Guillaume*, king William; *du prince Henri*, of prince Henry; *à la reine Jeanne*, to queen Joan.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| King 1 George.          | 1 roi, n. m.                      |
| of queen 1 Charlotte.   | 1 reine, n. f.                    |
| to prince 1 Frederic 2. | 1 prince. n. m. 2 Frédéric, n. m. |
| count 1 Saxe 2.         | 1 comte, n. m. 2 de Saxe.         |
| duke 1 William 2.       | 1 duc, n. m. 2 Guillaume, n. m.   |
| marshal 1 d'Estres 2.   | 1 maréchal, n. m. 2 d'Estrés.     |
| general 1 Ligonier.     | 1 général, n. m.                  |
| captain 1 Gardiner.     | 1 capitaine, n. m.                |
| of lieutenant 1 Gordon. | 1 lieutenant, n. m.               |
| to justice 1 Fielding.  | 1 juge, n. m.                     |

R U L E V.

It is used in the genitive, after the words *bien*, much, a great deal, many; as, *bien du monde*, many people.



*Exercifes upon this Rule.*

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Much 1 time 2.              | 1 <i>Bien.</i> 2 <i>tems</i> , n. m.        |
| much trouble 1.             | 1 <i>peine</i> , n. f.                      |
| much noife 1.               | 1 <i>bruit</i> , n. m.                      |
| a 1 great deal 1 of rain 2. | 1 <i>bien.</i> 2 <i>pluie</i> , n. f.       |
| a great deal of ſnow 1.     | 1 <i>neige</i> , n. f.                      |
| a great deal of hail 1.     | 1 <i>grêle</i> , n. f.                      |
| many 1 people 2.            | 1 <i>bien.</i> 2 <i>gens</i> , n. m. plur.  |
| many learned 1 men 1.       | 1 <i>ſav-ant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. |
| many fools 1.               | 1 <i>ſot</i> , n. m.                        |
| many women 1.               | 1 <i>femme</i> , n. f.                      |
| many girls 1.               | 1 <i>fille</i> , n. f.                      |

## R U L E VI.

It comes before the cardinal numbers taken for the ordinal ; as, *le ſept du mois*, the ſeventh of the month.

*Exercifes upon this Rule.*

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| The ſecond 1 of 2 laſt month 2.   | 1 <i>Deux</i> , n. m. 2 <i>du mois dernier.</i> |
| the third 1 of 2 the month 2.     | 1 <i>trois</i> , n. m. 2 <i>du mois.</i>        |
| the fourth 1 of 2 this inſtant 2. | 1 <i>quatre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>de ce mois.</i>    |
| the ſixth 1 of 2 next month 2.    | 1 <i>ſix</i> , n. m. 2 <i>du mois prochain.</i> |
| the tenth 1 of 2 April 2.         | 1 <i>dix</i> , n. m. 2 <i>d'avril.</i>          |
| the twelfth 1 of 2 May 2.         | 1 <i>douze</i> , n. m. 2 <i>de mai.</i>         |
| the ſeven 1 of 2 diamonds 2.      | 1 <i>ſept</i> , n. m. 2 <i>de carreau.</i>      |
| the eighth 1 of 2 hearts 2.       | 1 <i>huit</i> , n. m. 2 <i>de cœur.</i>         |
| the ten 1 of 2 clubs 2.           | 1 <i>dix</i> , n. m. 2 <i>de trefle.</i>        |
| the nine 1 of 2 ſpades 2.         | 1 <i>neuf</i> , n. m. 2 <i>de pique.</i>        |

## R U L E VII.

It is placed before ſuch Nouns of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. as are in the nominative, dative, and accuſative, without a prepoſition ; as,

|                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| La Terre ferme. | <i>Terra firma.</i>   |
| à la Turquie.   | <i>to Turkey.</i>     |
| voir la Perſe.  | <i>to ſee Perſia.</i> |

*Exercifes*

*Exercifes upon this Rule.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Europe 1, Afia 2.                               | 1 <i>Europe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Afie</i> , n. f.  |
| Africa 1, America 2.                            | 1 <i>Afrique</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Amérique</i> , n. f.   |
| England 1, Scotland 2.                          | 1 <i>Angleterre</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Ecoffe</i> , n. f.  |
| Ireland 1, France 2.                            | 1 <i>Irlande</i> , n. f. 2 <i>France</i> , n. f.   |
| Germany 1, Italy 2.                             | 1 <i>Allemagne</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Italie</i> , n. f.   |
| to Sweden 1, to Denmark 2.                      | 1 <i>Suède</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Danemarck</i> , n. m.  |
| to Spain 1, to Poland 2.                        | 1 <i>Efpagne</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Pologne</i> , n. f.  |
| to Turkey 1, to Hungary 2.                      | 1 <i>Turquie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Hongrie</i> , n. f.  |
| to discover 1, Peru 2, Chili 3, and 4, Japan 5. | 1 <i>découvrir</i> . 2 <i>Pérou</i> , n. m. 3 <i>Chili</i> , n. m. 4 <i>Œ</i> , 5 <i>Japan</i> , n. m. |

## R U L E VIII.

It is placed before the Noun of a country, kingdom, province, &c. in the genitive, whenever this Noun does not denote the country of a Noun coming before it, as, *le bonheur de l'Angleterre*, *the happinefs of England*.

*Exercifes upon this Rule.*

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| The fate 1 of Portugal 2.       | 1 <i>Sort</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Portugal</i> , n. m.    |
| the politeness 1 of France 2.   | 1 <i>politeffe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>France</i> , n. f. |
| the friends 1 of Holland 2.     | 1 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Hollande</i> , n. f.     |
| the enemies 1 of Ruffia 2.      | 1 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Ruffie</i> , n. f.    |
| the misfortunes 1 of Croatia 2. | 1 <i>malheur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Croatie</i> , n. f.  |
| the credit 1 of Scotland 2.     | 1 <i>crédit</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Ecoffe</i> , n. f.    |

## R U L E IX.

When speaking of, or to a person, we use the words *Monfeigneur*, my Lord; *Monfieur*, Master; *Madame*, Mrs; and *Mademoifelle*, Mifs, before a Noun denoting his or her title, office, trade, profeflion, and temper; we may place the first Article before that Noun; as,

The archbifhop.  
the prince.  
doctor.

*Monfeigneur l'archevêque.*  
*monfieur le prince.*  
*monfieur le docteur.*

B 4

Mrs.

Mrs. gad-about.

*madame la coureuse.*

Miss blunderer.

*mademoiselle l'étourdie.**Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| The dauphin 1.      | 1 <i>Dauphin</i> , n. m.      |
| the dauphines 1.    | 1 <i>Dauphine</i> , n. f.     |
| the physician 1.    | 1 <i>médecin</i> , n. m.      |
| the ambassador 1.   | 1 <i>ambassadeur</i> , n. m.  |
| the ambassadrefs 1. | 1 <i>ambassadrice</i> , n. f. |
| the duke 1.         | 1 <i>duc</i> , n. m.          |
| the duchefs 1.      | 1 <i>duchesse</i> , n. f.     |
| the marquiss 1.     | 1 <i>marquis</i> , n. m.      |
| the marchionefs 1.  | 1 <i>marquise</i> , n. f.     |
| the count 1.        | 1 <i>comte</i> , n. m.        |
| the countefs 1.     | 1 <i>comtesse</i> , n. f.     |
| the baron 1.        | 1 <i>baron</i> , n. m.        |
| Mr. painter 1.      | 1 <i>peintre</i> , n. m.      |
| Mr. prattler 1.     | 1 <i>babillard</i> , n. m.    |

## RULE X.

The first article is sometimes used in calling people, or speaking of a woman with a sort of freedom, or contempt; as,

*La Mingotti chante bien.*

Signora Mingotti sings well.

*la Duprez est morte.*

Mrs. Duprez is dead.

*la femme aux pommes.*

apple-woman.

*parlez, l'homme, la femme.*

speak, man, woman.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Milk 2 woman 1.                 | 2 <i>Au lait</i> . 1 <i>femme</i> , n. f.   |
| butter 2 man 1.                 | 2 <i>au beurre</i> . 1 <i>homme</i> , n. m. |
| pear 1 man.                     | 1 <i>aux poires</i> .                       |
| oyster 1 woman.                 | 1 <i>aux huîtres</i> .                      |
| green 1 woman.                  | 1 <i>aux herbes</i> .                       |
| fish 1 woman.                   | 1 <i>au poisson</i> .                       |
| do 1 you hear me 1, man.        | 1 <i>m'entendez vous</i> .                  |
| do 1 you speak to me 1, woman.  | 1 <i>me parlez vous</i> .                   |
| come 1 here 1, pretty 2 girl 2. | 1 <i>venez ici</i> . 2 <i>belle fille</i> . |



## S E C O N D   A R T I C L E.

This Article being *de* and *à* for the singular and plural, French Nouns are thus declined with it.

*In the Singular.**Masculine.*

N. *Pierre*, Peter.  
 G. *de Pierre*, of Peter.  
 D. *à Pierre* to Peter.  
 Ac. *Pierre*, Peter.  
 V. *ô Pierre*, o Peter.  
 Ab. *de Pierre*, from Peter.

*Feminine.*

N. *Marie*, Mary.  
 G. *de Marie*, of Mary.  
 D. *à Marie*, to Mary.  
 Ac. *Marie*, Mary.  
 V. *ô Marie*, o Mary.  
 Ab. *de Marie*, from Mary.

*In the Plural.*

N. *gens*, people.  
 G. *de gens*, of people.  
 D. *à gens*, to people.

Ac. *gens*, people.  
 V. *ô gens*, o people.  
 Ab. *de gens*, from people.

In such of the French nouns, as begin with a vowel, or an *h*, not founded, the *e* of the article is dropt, and supplied by an apostrophe, as *d'André*, of Andrew; *d'Angélique*, of Angelica.

*Use of this Article.*

## R U L E   I.

This Article must be joined to proper Names; as,

Le doigt de Marie.  
 il parle à Henriette.

Mary's finger.  
 he speaks to Henrietta.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Thomas's 1 hat 2.

1 Thomas, n. m. 2 chap-eau,  
 plur. eaux, n. m.

John's 1 coat 2.

1 Jean, n. m. 2 habit, n. m.

Anthony's 1 waistcoat 2.

1 Antoine, n. m. 2 veste, n. f.

Charles's 1 shoes 2.

1 Charles, n. m. 2 soulier,  
 n. m.

James's 1 stockings 2.

1 Jacques, n. m. 2 bas, n. m.

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Grace's 1 cap 2.          | 1 Grace, n. f. 2. <i>coiffure</i> , n. f.        |
| Martha's 1 petticoat 2.   | 1 <i>Marthe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>juppe</i> , n. f.   |
| Priscilla's 1 gown 2.     | 1 <i>Priscille</i> , n. f. 2 <i>robe</i> , n. f. |
| Sarah's 1 handkerchief 2. | 1 <i>Sara</i> , n. f. 2 <i>mouchoir</i> , n. m.  |
| to give 1 to Stephen 2.   | 1 <i>donner</i> . 2 <i>Etienne</i> , n. m.       |
| to offer 1 to Gregory 2.  | 1 <i>offrir</i> . 2 <i>Grégoire</i> , n. m.      |
| to tell 1 to Margaret 2.  | 1 <i>dire</i> . 2 <i>Marguerite</i> , n. f.      |
| to refuse 1 to Lucy 2.    | 1 <i>refuser</i> . 2 <i>Lucie</i> , n. f.        |

## R U L E II.

It must come before the words *Monseigneur*, my Lord ; *Monfieur*, Master ; *Madame*, my Lady, Mistress ; *Mademoiselle*, Miss ; *Maitre*, Master ; *Saint*, *Sainte*, Saint ; as,

|                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Les titres de milord.               | <i>My lord's titles.</i>            |
| la beauté de mademoiselle Primrose. | <i>the beauty of miss Primrose.</i> |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| My lord's equipage 1.         | 1 <i>Equipage</i> , n. m.                       |
| Mr. Smith's garden 1.         | 1 <i>jardin</i> , n. m.                         |
| Mr. Grove's sword 1.          | 1 <i>épée</i> , n. f.                           |
| Mr. Nelson's house 1.         | 1 <i>maison</i> , n. f.                         |
| Mrs. Garon's promise 1.       | 1 <i>promesse</i> , n. f.                       |
| Mrs. Tirrel's books 1.        | 1 <i>livre</i> , n. m.                          |
| Mrs. Smart's necklace 1.      | 1 <i>collier</i> , n. m.                        |
| lady Preston's jewels 1.      | 1 <i>joy-au</i> , plur. <i>aux</i> , n. m.      |
| lady Nichol's laces 1.        | 1 <i>dentelle</i> , n. f.                       |
| miss Parson's apron 1.        | 1 <i>tablier</i> , n. m.                        |
| miss Fair's ruffles 1.        | 1 <i>manchette</i> , n. f.                      |
| the statue 1 of St. George 2. | 1 <i>statue</i> , n. f. 2 <i>George</i> , n. m. |
| the life 1 of St. Ann 2.      | 1 <i>vie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Anne</i> , n. f.      |

## R U L E III.

It must always be placed after the following words, *vis*:

|                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Abondance</i> , plenty.           | <i>peu</i> , little, few.       |
| <i>assez</i> , enough.               | <i>plus</i> , more.             |
| <i>autant</i> , as much, as many.    | <i>moins</i> , less.            |
| <i>beaucoup</i> , much, many.        | <i>point</i> , <i>pas</i> , no. |
| <i>combien</i> , how much, how many. | <i>quantité</i> , a deal.       |
| <i>disette</i> , want.               | <i>que</i> , what.              |
| <i>grand nombre</i> , great number.  | <i>gueres</i> , little.         |

*jamais*,

|                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>jamais</i> , never.                | <i>ta-t</i> , so much, so many.       |
| <i>quelque chose</i> , something.     | <i>trop</i> , too much, too many.     |
| <i>rien</i> , nothing.                |                                       |
| <i>Assez de fruit</i> , fruit enough. | <i>trop de pain</i> , too much bread. |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Plenty of grapes I.        | I <i>Raisin</i> , n. m.        |
| plenty of corn I.          | I <i>bled</i> , n. m.          |
| wheat I enough.            | I <i>froment</i> , n. m.       |
| oats I enough.             | I <i>avoine</i> , n. f.        |
| as much sugar I.           | I <i>sucre</i> , n. m.         |
| as many soldiers I.        | I <i>soldat</i> , n. m.        |
| much oil I.                | I <i>huile</i> , n. f.         |
| many pease I.              | I <i>pois</i> , n. m.          |
| how much money I.          | I <i>argent</i> , n. m.        |
| how many songs I.          | I <i>chanson</i> , n. f.       |
| want of hay I.             | I <i>foin</i> , n. m.          |
| want of men I.             | I <i>homme</i> , n. m.         |
| great number of goats I.   | I <i>bouc</i> , n. m.          |
| great number of turkeys I. | I <i>poulet d'Inde</i> , n. m. |
| little trouble I.          | I <i>peine</i> , n. f.         |
| little wit I.              | I <i>esprit</i> , n. m.        |
| few people I.              | I <i>gens</i> , n. m. plur.    |
| little prudence I.         | I <i>prudence</i> , n. f.      |
| more esteem I.             | I <i>estime</i> , n. f.        |
| more love I.               | I <i>amour</i> , n. m.         |
| less credit I.             | I <i>crédit</i> , n. m.        |
| less courage I.            | I <i>courage</i> , n. m.       |
| no gold I.                 | I <i>or</i> , n. m.            |
| no silver I.               | I <i>argent</i> , n. m.        |
| a deal of straw I.         | I <i>paille</i> , n. f.        |
| what wealth I.             | I <i>bien</i> , n. m.          |
| little sense I.            | I <i>bon sens</i> .            |
| never of him I.            | I <i>lui</i> , pron. s.        |
| something scarce I.        | I <i>rare</i> , adj.           |
| something good I.          | I <i>bon</i> , adj.            |
| nothing true I.            | I <i>vrai</i> , adj.           |
| nothing new I.             | I <i>nouveau</i> , adj.        |
| so much cloth I.           | I <i>drap</i> , n. m.          |
| so many ladies I.          | I <i>dame</i> , n. f.          |



## 12      E X E R C I S E S   upon the

|                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| too much water 1.   | 1 eau, n. f.     |
| too many sailors 1. | 1 matelot, n. m. |

### R U L E   IV.

It must come before names of cities, towns, villages, &c. as, *de Naples, from Naples; à Vienne, to Vienna.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| From London 1.    | 1 Londres, n. m.   |
| from Lisbon 1.    | 1 Lisbonne, n. f.  |
| of Bristol 1.     | 1 Bristol, n. m.   |
| to Edinburg 1.    | 1 Edinbourg, n. m. |
| from Dublin 1.    | 1 Dublin, n. m.    |
| of Paris 1.       | 1 Paris, n. m.     |
| to Roan 1.        | 1 Rouen, n. m.     |
| from Brentford 1. | 1 Brentford, n. m. |
| of Hampstead 1.   | 1 Hampstead, n. m. |
| to Putney 1.      | 1 Putney, n. m.    |
| to Islington 1.   | 1 Islington, n. m. |

### R U L E   V.

It must be joined to the absolute Numbers, which are undeclined adjectives; as,

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| De six chevaux.   | <i>of six horses.</i>     |
| à sept cavaliers. | <i>to seven horsemen.</i> |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| of ten 1 soldiers 2.     | 1 dix. 2 soldat, n. m.                  |
| to twelve 1 streets 2.   | 1 douze. 2 rue, n. f.                   |
| of thirteen 1 books 2.   | 1 treize. 2 livre, n. m.                |
| to fourteen 1 towns 2.   | 1 quatorze. 2 ville, n. f.              |
| of fifteen 1 villages 2. | 1 quinze. 2 village, n. m.              |
| to sixteen 1 roads 2.    | 1 seize. 2 chemin, n. m.                |
| of seventeen 1 rooms 2.  | 1 dix-sept. 2 chambre, n. f.            |
| to eighteen 1 gardens 2. | 1 dix-huit. 2 jardin, n. m.             |
| of nineteen 1 rivers 2.  | 1 dix-neuf. 2 rivière, n. f.            |
| to twenty 1 brooks 2.    | 1 vingt. 2 ruisseau, pl. eaux,<br>n. m. |

R U L E

## R U L E VI.

It must be placed after adjectives of number followed by a participle passive; as,

vingt de brulés.

*twenty burnt.*

cent de tués.

*hundred killed.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Twenty 1 finished 2.

1 *Vingt.* 2 *finis*, p. p.

thirty 1 begun 2.

1 *trente.* 2 *commencés*, p. p.

forty 1 done 2.

1 *quarante.* 2 *faits*, p. p.

fifty 1 lost 2.

1 *cinquante.* 2 *perdus*, p. p.

sixty 1 found 2.

1 *soixante.* 2 *trouvés*, p. p.

fifteen 1 destroyed 2.

1 *quinze.* 2 *détruits*, p. p.

nineteen 1 drowned 2.

1 *dix-neuf.* 2 *noyés*, p. p.

seventy 1 broken 2.

1 *soixante & dix.* 2 *brisés*, p. p.

eighty 1 saved 2.

1 *quatre vingts.* 2 *sauvés*, p. p.

## R U L E VII.

It is commonly placed before names of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. joined to words signifying going from or coming to, going to, or living in them; as,

Je vais en Suède.

*I am going to Sweden.*

Je viens de Danemarc.

*I come from Denmark.*

Je vis en Russie.

*I live in Russia.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Do 1 you go 1 to 2 Holland  
3, to Germany 4, to Po-  
land 5, into 6 Normandy  
7, into Provence 8?

1 *Allez vous.* 2 *en.* 3 *Hol-  
lande*, n. f. 4 *Allemagne*,  
n. f. 5 *Pologne*, n. f. 6 *en.*  
7 *Normandie*, n. f. 8 *Pro-  
vence*, n. f.

Do 1 you come 1 from France  
2, from Italy 3, from Spain  
4, from Portugal 5, from  
Piedmont 6, from Corsica  
7, from Sardinia 8?

1 *Venez vous.* 2 *France*, n. f.  
3 *Italie*, n. f. 4 *Espagne*,  
n. f. 5 *Portugal*, n. m. 6  
*Piémont*, n. m. 7 *Corse*, n.  
f. 8 *Sardaigne*, n. f.

I 1 live 1 in 2 England 3, in  
Scotland 4, in Ireland 5,  
in Flanders 6, in Essex 7,  
in Middlesex 8.

1 *Je vis.* 2 *en.* 3 *Angleterre*,  
n. f. 4 *Ecosse*, n. f. 5 *Ire-  
lande*, n. f. 6 *Flandre*, n. f.  
7 *Essex*, n. m. 8 *Middlesex*,  
n. m.

## R U L E

## RULE VIII.

It must be used before such Nouns as express the cause, character, kind, matter, nature, quality, or country of a Noun coming before them ; as,

Woollen stuff.

*Etoffe de laine.*

French wine.

*vin de France.*

a gold watch.

*une montre d'or.*

the emperor of Morocco.

*l'Empereur de Maroc.*

a woman of sense.

*une femme de bon sens.*

a man of wit.

*un homme d'esprit.*

The three last examples shew that the *English* Idiom answers sometimes to the *French* ; and the three first prove that an *English* Noun or Adjective is sometimes translated into a *French* Genitive.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Champaign 1 wine 2.

1 *Champaigne*, n. f. 2 *vin*, n. m.

Burgundy 1 wine.

1 *Bourgogne*, n. f.

Florence 1 wine.

1 *Florence*, n. f.

a 1 wine merchant 2.

1 *un*. 2 *marchand*, n. m.

a 1 gold 3 box 2.

1 *une* 2 *boîte*, n. f. 3 *or*, n. m.

a 1 silver 3 spoon 2.

1 *une*. 2 *cueillièrre*, n. f. 3 *argent*, n. m.

a 1 copper 3 pot 2.

1 *un*. 2 *pot*, n. m. 3 *cui-vre*, n. m.

a 1 house 3 roof 2.

1 *un*. 2 *toit*, n. m. 3 *maison*, n. f.

a 1 thunder 3 clap 2.

1 *un*. 2 *coup*, n. m. 3 *tonnerre*, n. m.

a 1 marble 3 statue 2.

1 *une*. 2 *statue*, n. f. 3 *marbre*, n. m.

a 1 silk 3 waistcoat 2.

1 *une*. 2 *veste*, n. f. 3 *soie*, n. f.

a 1 diamond 3 buckle 2.

1 *une*. 2 *boucle*, n. f. 3 *diamant*, n. m.

a 1 country 3 house 2.

1 *une*. 2 *maison*, n. f. 3 *campagne*, n. f.

a 1 law-suit 2 of consequence

1 *un*. 2 *procès*, n. m. 3 *conséquence*, n. f.

3.  
a 1 jewel 2 of worth 3.

1 *un*. 2 *joy-au*, pl. *aux*, n. m. 3 *prix*, n. m.

*T H I R D*



## T H I R D   A R T I C L E.

This Article being *du, de la, de l'* in the singular, and *des* in the plural; *French Nouns* beginning with a consonant are thus declined with it in

*The Singular.**Masculine.*

N. *Du vin*, wine.  
D. *à du vin*, to wine.  
Ac. *du vin*, wine.

*Feminine.*

N. *De la biere*, beer.  
D. *à de la biere*, to beer.  
Ac. *de la biere*, beer.

But when they begin with a Vowel, or an *h* not sounded, *de l'* being used instead of *du* and *de la*, they must be thus declined.

*Masculine.*

N. *de l'or*, gold.  
D. *à de l'or*, to gold.  
Ac. *de l'or*, gold.

*Feminine.*

N. *de l'huile*, oil.  
D. *à de l'huile*, to oil.  
Ac. *de l'huile*, oil.

In the Plural all kinds of *French Nouns* are declined alike, with this Article, thus;

N. *Des savans*, learned men.  
D. *à des savans*, to learned men.  
Ac. *des savans*, learned men.

If an Adjective is placed between the Article and the Noun, instead of *du, de la, de l'* and *des*, we use *de*, thus;

*Singular.*

N. *De bon vin*, good wine.  
D. *à de bon vin*, to good wine.  
Ac. *de bon vin*, good wine.

*Plural.*

N. *De grands hommes*, great men.  
D. *à de grands hommes*, to great men.  
Ac. *de grands hommes*, great men.

When the Adjective begins with a vowel, or an *h* not sounded, *e* must be dropt in *de*, and supplied by an apostrophe; as,

d'excellent vin.  
d'indignes amis.

excellent wine.  
unworthy friends.

Use

*Use of this Article.*

This Article answering to the *English* words *some* or *many*, either expressed or understood, the learner will not find much difficulty in making the following exercises.

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Give 1 me 1 some 2 bread 3. | 1 <i>Donnez moi, 2 du, sing. m. de la, sing. f. des, pl. m. and f. 3 pain, n. m.</i> |
| some butter 1.              | 1 <i>beurre, n. m.</i>   |
| some cheese 1.              | 1 <i>fromage, n. m.</i>  |
| some eggs 1.                | 1 <i>œuf, n. m.</i>  |
| some beef 1.                | 1 <i>bœuf, n. m.</i>   |
| some mutton 1.              | 1 <i>mouton, n. m.</i>   |
| some veal 1.                | 1 <i>veau, n. m.</i>   |
| some pork 1.                | 1 <i>porc, n. m.</i>   |
| some mustard 1.             | 1 <i>moutarde, n. f.</i>   |
| some beans 1.               | 1 <i>fève, n. f.</i>   |
| some peas 1.                | 1 <i>pois, n. m.</i>   |
| colliflowers 1.             | 1 <i>chou-fleur, n. m.</i>   |
| radishes 1.                 | 1 <i>rave, n. f.</i>   |
| gooseberries 1.             | 1 <i>groseille, n. f.</i>  |
| apricocks 1.                | 1 <i>abricot, n. m.</i>  |
| peaches 1.                  | 1 <i>pêche, n. f.</i>  |
| plumbs 1.                   | 1 <i>prune, n. f.</i>  |
| excellent 1 coffee 2.       | 1 <i>excellent, adj. 2 café, n. m.</i>   |
| bad 1 tea 2.                | 1 <i>mauvais, adj. 2 thé, n. m.</i>  |
| good 1 leather 2.           | 1 <i>b-on, onne, adj. 2 cuir, n. m.</i>  |
| large 1 melons 2.           | 1 <i>gr-os, offe, adj. 2 melon, n. m.</i>  |
| small 1 fishes 2.           | 1 <i>pétit, adj. 2 poisson, n. m.</i>  |
| unworthy 1 friends 2.       | 1 <i>indigne, adj. 2 ami, n. m.</i>  |

## FOURTH ARTICLE.

This Article being *un* for the Masculine, and *une* for the feminine in the singular, and having no plural, *French* Nouns are thus declined with it.

*Masculine.*

|                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| N. <i>Un duc, a duke.</i>         |
| G. <i>d'un duc, of a duke.</i>    |
| D. <i>à un duc, to a duke.</i>    |
| Ac. <i>un duc, a duke.</i>        |
| Ab. <i>d'un duc, from a duke.</i> |

*Feminine.*

|                                    |
|------------------------------------|
| N. <i>une ame, a soul.</i>         |
| G. <i>d'une ame, of a soul.</i>    |
| D. <i>à une ame, to a soul.</i>    |
| Ac. <i>une ame, a soul.</i>        |
| Ab. <i>d'une ame, from a soul.</i> |

*Use*

*Use of this Article.*

This Article answering to the *English* Article *a* and *an*, the following Exercises must appear very easy to the learner.

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| A button 1 hole 1. | 1 <i>Boutonnière</i> , n. f.  |
| an angel 1.        | 1 <i>ange</i> , n. m.         |
| a prophet 1.       | 1 <i>prophète</i> , n. m.     |
| a planet 1.        | 1 <i>planète</i> , n. f.      |
| a week 1.          | 1 <i>semaine</i> , n. f.      |
| a moment 1.        | 1 <i>moment</i> , n. m.       |
| a beginning 1.     | 1 <i>commencement</i> , n. m. |
| a minute 1.        | 1 <i>minute</i> , n. f.       |
| a coat 1.          | 1 <i>habit</i> , n. m.        |
| a waistcoat 1.     | 1 <i>veste</i> , n. f.        |
| a shoe 1.          | 1 <i>soulier</i> , n. m.      |
| a head 1.          | 1 <i>tête</i> , n. f.         |

*A general Remark upon the French Articles.*

*French* articles must be repeated in *French* before all the Nouns in a sentence, altho' they are often omitted in *English*; as,

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Le pere, la mère, & la fille.    | <i>The father, mother and daughter.</i>  |
| beaucoup d'esprit & de jugement. | <i>a great deal of wit and judgment.</i> |
| du lait & des fraises.           | <i>milk and strawberries.</i>            |
| un oiseau & une cage.            | <i>a bird and a cage.</i>                |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| The husband 1, wife 2, and 3 children 4.   | 1 <i>Mari</i> , n. m. 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f. 3 <i>Œ</i> . 4 <i>enf-ant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> . n. m. |
| the master 1, mistress 2, and servants 3.  | 1 <i>maître</i> , n. m. 2 <i>maîtresse</i> , n. f. 3 <i>domestique</i> , n. m.                        |
| the officer 1 and soldiers 2.              | 1 <i>officier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>soldat</i> , n. m.   |
| the pilot 1 and sailors 2.                 | 1 <i>pilote</i> , n. m. 2 <i>matelot</i> , n. m.  |
| the brewer 1, butcher 2, and baker 3.      | 1 <i>brasseur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>boucher</i> , n. m. 3 <i>boulangier</i> , n. m.                        |
| a 1 great deal 1 of rain 2 and snow 3.     | 1 <i>beaucoup</i> . 2 <i>pluie</i> , n. f. 3 <i>neige</i> , n. f.                                     |
| I 1 writ 1 to Mr. 2 Sharp and Miss 3 Drum. | 1 <i>J'ai écrit</i> . 2 <i>monieur</i> , n. m. 3 <i>mademoiselle</i> , n. f.                          |

speak



|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 speak 1 to Thomas and 2 Paul. | 1 <i>parlez.</i> 2 <i>É.</i>  |
| Go 1 to Ann 2 and Mary 3.       | 1 <i>allez.</i> 2 <i>Anne</i> , n. f. 3 <i>Marie</i> , n. f.            |
| wishes 1 and suspicions 2.      | 1 <i>souhait</i> , n. m. 2 <i>soupçon</i> , n. m.                       |
| gloves 1 and muffs 2.           | 1 <i>gant</i> , n. m. 2 <i>manchon</i> , n. m.                          |
| milk 1 and cream 2.             | 1 <i>lait</i> , n. m. 2 <i>crème</i> , n. f.                            |
| butter 1 and cheese 2.          | 1 <i>beurre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>fromage</i> , n. m.                        |
| fritters 1 and cakes 2.         | 1 <i>beignet</i> , n. m. 2 <i>gât-eau</i> , plur. <i>eaux</i> , n. m.   |
| knives 1 and forks 2.           | 1 <i>couteau</i> , pl. <i>eaux</i> , n. m. 2. <i>fourchette</i> , n. f. |
| a man 1 and a woman 2.          | 1 <i>homme</i> , n. m. 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.                           |
| a girl 1 and a boy 2.           | 1 <i>fille</i> , n. f. 2 <i>garçon</i> , n. m.                          |
| a dog 1 and a cat 2.            | 1 <i>chien</i> , n. m. 2 <i>chat</i> , n. m.                            |

## OF ADJECTIVES.

**F**RENCH Adjectives must agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Such of them as end with an *e* not founded, have their masculine and feminine alike; and the others commonly add an *e* not founded to their feminine, as masc. *grand*, fem. *grande*, great.

Such of the *French* Adjectives as end into *s* or *x*, have their singular and plural alike; as,

| <i>Sing.</i>                              | <i>Plur.</i>                              |
|---|---|
| Un gros pois, <i>a great pea.</i>         | De gros pois, <i>great pease.</i>         |
| un doux concert, <i>a sweet concerto.</i> | de doux concerts, <i>sweet concertos.</i> |

Such as end in *t*, change that *t* into *s* in their plural; as,

| <i>Sing.</i>                                  | <i>Plur.</i>                                 |
|---|--|
| Un homme ignorant,<br><i>an ignorant man.</i> | Des hommes ignorans,<br><i>ignorant men.</i> |

*N. B.* This rule stands good also for the Nouns; as,

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Un pédant, <i>a pedant.</i> | Des pédans, <i>pedants.</i> |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|

The other Adjectives, whether they be masculine or feminine, commonly form their plural by adding an *s* to their singular; as, *bon*, *bons*, good; *bonne*, *bonnes*, good.

When

When in my Exercises I use an Adjective excepted from the above Rules, I take care to mark either its feminine or plural.

*Places of French Adjectives.*

Of *French* Adjectives some are placed before, and some after their Nouns; and some come either before or after them.

*Of Adjectives placed before their Nouns.*

These Adjectives, not being very numerous, may easily be reduced under the three following heads, viz.

1. The absolute numbers, as, *un*, one; *deux*, two, &c.
2. The ordinal numbers, as, *le premier*, the first, &c.
3. The ten following Adjectives, viz.

*B-eau*, *elle*, handsome.

*vieil*, old.

*bel*, handsome.

*B-on*, *onne*, good.

*gr-os*, *osse*, big.

*grand*, great.

*jeune*, young.

*saint*, faint, holy.

*v-ieux*, *ieille*, old.

*petit*, small, little.

*Note*, That *bel* and *vieil* are used only before Nouns masculine, beginning with a vowel or an *h* not sounded, as, *un bel homme*, a handsome man; *un vieil oiseau*, an old bird.

*Exercises upon the absolute Numbers.*

Twelve 1 sparrows 2.

1 *Douze*, adj. 2 *moins-eau*, pl. *eaux*, n. m.

twenty 1 partridges 2.

1 *vingt*, adj. 2 *perdrix*, n. f.

thirty 1 bottles 2.

1 *trente*, adj. 2 *bouteille*, n. f.

thirty-three 1 candles 2.

1 *trente-trois*, adj. 2 *chandelle*, n. f.

of forty 1 stones 2.

1 *quarante*, adj. 2 *pierre*, n. f.

of fifty 1 glasses 2.

1 *cinquante*, adj. 2 *verre*, n. m.

of sixty 1 chairs 2.

1 *soixante*, adj. 2 *chaise*, n. f.

of seventy 1 dishes 2.

1 *soixante & dix*, adj. 2 *plat*, n. m.

to eighty 1 napkins 2.

1 *quatre-vingts*, adj. 2 *serviette*, n. f.

to hundred 1 pistoles 2.

1 *cent*, adj. 2 *pistole*, n. f.

to two 1 hundred 1 corks 2.

1 *deux cents*, adj. 2 *bouchon*, n. m.

to three 1 hundred 1 bricks 2.

1 *trois cents*, adj. 2 *brique*, n. f.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon the ordinal Numbers.*

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| The first 1 picture 2.       | 1 Premier, adj. 2 tableau,<br>pl. eaux, n. m. |
| the second 1 street 2.       | 1 second, adj. 2 rue, n. f.                   |
| the third 1 book 2.          | 1 troisième, adj. 2 livre, n. m.              |
| the fourth 1 lady 2.         | 1 quatrième, adj. 2 dame, n. f.               |
| the fifth 1 pen 2.           | 1 cinquième, adj. 2 plume, n. f.              |
| the sixth 1 room 2.          | 1 sixième, adj. 2 chambre, n. f.              |
| the seventh 1 table 2.       | 1 septième, adj. 2 table, n. f.               |
| the eighth 1 victory 2.      | 1 huitième, adj. 2 victoire, n. f.            |
| the ninth 1 defeat 2.        | 1 neuvième, adj. 2 défaite, n. f.             |
| the tenth 1 battle 2.        | 1 dixième, adj. 2 bataille, n. f.             |
| the 1 eleventh 1 skirmish 2. | 1 la onzième, 2 escarmouche, n. f.            |
| the twelfth 1 general 2.     | 1 douzième, adj. 2 général, n. m.             |

Observe, That the ordinal number must be placed after its Noun, first, when it is used instead of a surname, as George second, *George the second*. Secondly, when a book, chapter, &c. is quoted, as livre premier, *book the first*; chapitre second, *chapter the second*.

*Exercises upon the ten foregoing Adjectives, viz, beau, &c.*

|                      |                                  |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| A handsome palace 1. | 1 Palais, n. m.                  |
| a handsome woman 1.  | 1 femme, n. f.                   |
| a handsome animal 1. | 1 anim-al, plur. aux, n. m.      |
| a good lock 1.       | 1 serrure, n. f.                 |
| a good opera 1.      | 1 opéra, n. m.                   |
| a great captain 1.   | 1 capitaine, n. m.               |
| a great action 1.    | 1 action, n. f.                  |
| a big tree 1.        | 1 arbre, n. m.                   |
| a big pear 1.        | 1 poire, n. f.                   |
| a young child 1.     | 1 enf-ant, pl. ans, n. m. and f. |
| a young girl 1.      | 1 fille, n. f.                   |
| an old hat 1.        | 1 chap-eau, plur. eaux, n. m.    |
| an old officer 1.    | 1 officier, n. m.                |
| an old mare 1.       | 1 jum-ent, pl. ens, n. f.        |
| saint Peter 1.       | 1 Pierre, n. m.                  |
| saint John 1.        | 1 Jean, n. m.                    |
| a holy man 1.        | 1 personnage, n. m.              |
| a small bird 1.      | 1 ois-eau, plur. eaux, n. m.     |
| a small watch 1.     | 1 montre, n. f.                  |

Observe,



Observe, That when a small particle, or any other dependency is added to the foregoing Adjectives, they may be placed either before or after their Nouns, as *un très beau jour*, or *un jour très-beau*, a very fine day.

*Of Adjectives placed both before and after their Nouns.*

These Adjectives are, first, such as express the moral qualities either good and bad, as *aimable*, *amiable*; for we say *un homme aimable*, and *un aimable homme*, an amiable man.

### Exercises.

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| An excellent 1 work 2.    | 1 <i>Admirable</i> , adj. 2 <i>ouvrage</i> , n. m.               |
| detestable 1 pamphlets 2. | 1 <i>abominable</i> , adj. 2 <i>brochure</i> , n. f.             |
| a learned 1 divine 2.     | 1 <i>savant</i> , adj. 2 <i>théologien</i> , n. m.               |
| a prudent 1 Swede 2.      | 1 <i>prudent</i> , adj. <i>Suédois</i> , n. m.                   |
| impertinent 1 girls 2.    | 1 <i>impertinent</i> , adj. 2 <i>filles</i> , n. f.              |
| an impudent 1 servant 2.  | 1 <i>impudent</i> , adj. 2 <i>valet</i> , n. m.                  |
| an august 1 ceremony 2.   | 1 <i>auguste</i> , adj. 2 <i>cérémonie</i> , n. f.               |
| cruel 1 dispositions 2.   | 1 <i>cru-el, elle</i> , adj. 2 <i>inclination</i> , n. f.        |
| faithful 1 friends 2.     | 1 <i>fidèle</i> , adj. 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.                      |
| a fearful 1 animal 2.     | 1 <i>timide</i> , adj. 2 <i>anim-al</i> , pl. <i>aux</i> , n. m. |
| bad 1 verses 2.           | 1 <i>mauvais</i> , adj. 2 <i>vers</i> , n. m.                    |
| unworthy 1 deeds 2.       | 1 <i>indigne</i> , adj. 2 <i>action</i> , n. f.                  |

Each of the foregoing Exercises must make two *French* sentences, in the first whereof the Adjective ought to be placed before, and in the last after its Noun; as,

|                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| A faithful friend. | { <i>Un fidèle ami.</i> |
|                    | { <i>un ami fidèle.</i> |

Secondly, the Adjective *Cher*, dear, which, when denoting price, is placed after, and when denoting affection, comes before its Noun; as, *un livre cher*, a dear book; *mon cher oncle*, my dear uncle.

*Exercises.*

*Exercises.*

*Cher, denoting Price, to be placed after its Noun.*

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| A dear repast 1.    | 1 <i>Repas</i> , n. m.                      |
| dear pears 1.       | 1 <i>poire</i> , n. f.                      |
| a dear coat 1.      | 1 <i>habit</i> , n. m.                      |
| a dear knife 1.     | 1 <i>cout-eau</i> , pl. <i>eaux</i> , n. m. |
| dear books 1.       | 1 <i>livre</i> , n. m.                      |
| a dear horse 1.     | 1 <i>chev-al</i> , pl. <i>aux</i> , n. m.   |
| dear lands 1.       | 1 <i>terre</i> , n. f.                      |
| a dear jewel 1.     | 1 <i>joy-au</i> , pl. <i>aux</i> , n. m.    |
| dear snuff-boxes 1. | 1 <i>tabatière</i> , n. f.                  |

*Cher, denoting Affection, to be placed before its Noun.*

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| My 1 dear father 2.     | 1 <i>Mon</i> . 2 <i>père</i> , n. m.                          |
| our 1 dear sisters 2.   | 1 <i>nos</i> . 2 <i>sœur</i> , n. f.                          |
| my 1 dear mother 2.     | 1 <i>ma</i> . 2 <i>mère</i> , n. f.                           |
| my 1 dear wife 2.       | 1 <i>ma</i> . 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.                          |
| her 1 dear brothers 2.  | 1 <i>ses</i> . 2 <i>frère</i> , n. m.                         |
| my 1 dear children 2.   | 1 <i>mes</i> . 2 <i>enf-ant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> .<br>n. m. |
| his 1 dear uncle 2.     | 1 <i>son</i> . 2 <i>oncle</i> , n. m.                         |
| her 1 dear aunts 2.     | 1 <i>ses</i> . 2 <i>tante</i> , n. f.                         |
| their 1 dear cousins 2. | 1 <i>leurs</i> . 2 <i>cousin</i> , n. m.                      |

Thirdly, The Adjectives *juste* and *bas*, *asse*, which are placed before some Nouns, and after others ; as,

*La basse Hongrie*, lower Hungary.

*Une maison basse*, a low house.

*Exercises.*

The Adjectives *juste* and *bas*, placed before Nouns.

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| At 1 a reasonable 2 rate 3. | 1 <i>à</i> . 2 <i>juste</i> , adj. 3 <i>prix</i> , n. m. |
| reasonable anger 1.         | 1 <i>colère</i> , n. f.                                  |
| just 1 defence 2.           | 1 <i>juste</i> , adj. 2 <i>défense</i> , n. f.           |
| at a low 1 rate 2.          | 1 <i>bas</i> , adj. 2 <i>prix</i> , n. m.                |
| Low Languedoc 1.            | 1 <i>Languedoc</i> , n. m.                               |
| Low Normandy 1.             | 1 <i>Normandie</i> , n. f.                               |

*The same Adjectives coming after Nouns.*

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| A just 1 action 2. | 1 <i>juste</i> , adj. 2 <i>action</i> , n. f. |
| a just man 1.      | 1 <i>homme</i> , n. m.                        |

a mean

a mean 1 action.

1 *b-as, asse.*

a low floor 1.

1 *plancher, n. m.*

Fourthly, The Adjectives *maigre, mûr, vif, ive,* and *pauvre*, which, when taken in their proper sense, are placed after; and, when taken figuratively, come before the Nouns; as,

*Un chien maigre, a lean dog.*

*Un pauvre diner, a poor dinner.*

*Exercises.*

*Proper Sense.*

a lean 1 child 2.

1 *Maigre, adj. 2 enf. ant, pl. ans, n. m.*

lean oxen 1.

1 *bœuf, n. m.*

ripe 1 apples 2.

1 *mûr, adj. 2 pomme, n. f.*

a ripe melon 1.

1 *melon, n. m.*

a sharp 1 man 2.

1 *vif, adj. 2 homme, n. m.*

a poor 1 woman 2.

1 *pauvre, adj. 2 femme, n. f.*

*Figurative Sense.*

Bad 1 cheer 2.

1 *Maigre, adj. 2 chere, n. f.*

mature 1 deliberation 2.

1 *mûr, adj. 2 délibération, n. f.*

sharp 1 pains 2.

1 *vif, adj. 2 douleur, n. f.*

a sorry 1 fellow 2.

1 *pauvre, adj. 2 homme, n. m.*

Fifthly, The Adjectives *sage; honnête; galant; gr-os, offe; certain; fur-ieux, ieuse,* and *grand*, have a different meaning, according as they are placed before or after their Nouns; as,

*Un honnête femme, an honest woman.*

*Une femme honnête, a well-bred woman.*

*Exercises.*

*The foregoing Adjectives before Nouns.*

A midwife 1.

1 *Sage femme, n. f.*

an honest 1 man 2.

1 *honnête, adj. 2 homme, n. m.*

a well 1 bred 1 man.

1 *galant, adj.*

a big 1 woman 2.

1 *gros, adj. 2 femme, n. f.*

a 1 sort of news 1.

*une certaine nouvelle.*

a huge 1 creature 2.

1 *furieux, adj. 2 animal, n. m.*

the ways of the great 1.

*le grand air.*

*The*



*The same Adjectives after Nouns.*

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| A wife 1 woman 2.                    | 1 Sage, adj. 2 femme, n. f.                        |
| a civil 1 man 2.                     | 1 bonnête, adj. 2 homme, n. m.                     |
| a woman with 1 child 1.              | 1 gr-os, offe, adj. f.                             |
| a sure 1 news 2.                     | 1 certain, adj. 2 nouvelle, n. f.                  |
| a fierce 1 animal 2.                 | 1 fur-ieux, ieuse, adj. 2 ani-m-al, pl. aux, n. m. |
| a noble 1 aspect 2.                  | 1 grand, adj. 2 air, n. m.                         |
| a man complaisant 1 to the ladies 1. | 1 galant, adj.                                     |

*Of Adjectives placed after their Nouns.*

The Adjectives, which come before, and those which are placed either before or after the *French Nouns* being known, it is easy to distinguish those which ought to be placed after them. The chief of these Adjectives are those of nation, colour, figure, taste, hearing, and touching, the verbal Adjectives, those that denote physical and elementary qualities, and those ending in *ique*.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Adjectives.**Adjectives of Nations.*

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| English 1 politics 2.     | 1 Anglois, adj. 2 politique, n. f.        |
| French 1 fashions 2.      | 1 François, adj. 2 mode, n. f.            |
| Italian 1 musick 2.       | 1 Ital-ien, ienne, adj. 2 mu-sique, n. f. |
| the Chinese 1 language 2. | 1 Chinois, adj. 2 langue, n. f.           |
| Roman 1 beauties 2.       | 1 Romain, adj. 2 beauté, n. f.            |

*Adjectives of Colour.*

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| A red 1 cap 2.       | 1 Rouge, adj. 2 bonnet, n. m.               |
| black 1 hats 2.      | 1 noir, adj. 2. chap-eau, plur. caux, n. m. |
| a white 1 coat 2.    | 1 bl-anc, anche, adj. 2 habit, n. m.        |
| blue 1 stockings 2.  | 1 bleu, adj. 2 bas, n. m.                   |
| a yellow 1 flower 2. | 1 jaune, adj. 2 fleur, n. f.                |
| brown 1 gowns 2.     | 1 brun, adj. 2 robe, n. f.                  |

*Adjectives*

*Adjectives of Figure.*

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| a square 1 table 2.   | 1 <i>Quarré</i> , adj. 2 <i>table</i> , n. f.                     |
| round 1 balls 2.      | 1 <i>rond</i> , adj. 2 <i>balle</i> , n. f.                       |
| an oval 1 picture 2.  | 1 <i>ovale</i> , adj. 2 <i>tabl-eau</i> , pl. <i>eaux</i> , n. m. |
| triangular 1 plans 2. | 1 <i>triangulaire</i> , adj. 2 <i>plan</i> , n. m.                |

*Adjectives of Taste.*

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| Bitter 1 herbs 2. | 1 <i>Amer</i> , adj. 2 <i>herbe</i> , n. f.              |
| tart 1 fruit 2.   | 1 <i>acre</i> , adj. 2 <i>fruit</i> , n. m.              |
| sweet 1 wine 2.   | 1 <i>d-oux</i> , <i>ouce</i> , adj. 2 <i>vin</i> , n. m. |
| four 1 cyder 2.   | 1 <i>aigre</i> , adj. 2 <i>cidre</i> , n. m.             |

*Adjectives of hearing and touching.*

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| A sonorous 1 instrument 2. | 1 <i>Sonore</i> , adj. 2 <i>instrum-ent</i> , pl. <i>ens</i> , n. m. |
| an harmonious 1 voice 2.   | 1 <i>harmon-ieux</i> , <i>ieuse</i> , adj. 2 <i>voix</i> , n. f.     |
| tough 1 meat 2.            | 1 <i>dur</i> , adj. 2 <i>viande</i> , n. f.                          |
| a liquid 1 mels 2.         | 1 <i>liquide</i> , adj. 2 <i>mets</i> , n. m.                        |
| an uneven 1 road 2.        | 1 <i>rabot-eux</i> , <i>euse</i> , adj. 2 <i>che-min</i> , n. m.     |
| dry 1 grapes 2.            | 1 <i>sec</i> , adj. 2 <i>raisin</i> , n. m.                          |

*Verbal Adjectives.*

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Burnt 1 wine 2.             | 1 <i>Brulé</i> , adj. 2 <i>vin</i> , n. m.              |
| a rounded 1 figure 2.       | 1 <i>arrondi</i> , adj. 2 <i>figure</i> , n. f.         |
| a diverting 1 fight 2.      | 1 <i>divertissant</i> , adj. 2 <i>spectacle</i> , n. m. |
| an over-ruling 1 passion 2. | 1 <i>dominant</i> , adj. 2 <i>passion</i> , n. f.       |

*Adjectives denoting elementary and physical qualities.*

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Cold 1 weather 2.      | 1 <i>Froid</i> , adj. 2 <i>tems</i> , n. m.                    |
| wholesome 1 weather 2. | 1 <i>sain</i> , adj.   |
| a warm 1 wind 2.       | 1 <i>chaud</i> , adj. 2 <i>vent</i> , n. m.                    |
| a bad 1 air 2.         | 1 <i>méchant</i> , adj. 2 <i>air</i> , n. m.                   |
| lame 1 girls 2.        | 1 <i>boit-eux</i> , <i>euse</i> , adj. 2 <i>filles</i> , n. f. |
| maimed 8 soldiers 2.   | 1 <i>manchot</i> , adj. 2 <i>soldat</i> , n. m.                |

C

a moist

a moist 1 brain 2.

1 *humide*, adj. 2 *cerv-eau*,  
pl. *eaux*, n. m.

a wholesome 1 food 2.

1 *sain*, adj. 2 *nourriture*, n. f.

an ugly 1 fellow 2.

1 *laid*, adj. 2 *homme*, n. m.

*Adjectives ending in ique.*

A peaceable 1 man 2.

1 *Pacifique*, adj. 2 *homme*,  
n. m.

magnificent 1 buildings 2.

1 *magnifique*, adj. 2 *bâtim-ent*,  
pl. *ens*, n. m.

a lyric 1 poet 2.

1 *lirique*, adj. 2 *poète*, n. m.

a soporiferous 1 draught 2.

1 *soporifique*, adj. 2 *potion*,  
n. f.

*Of Nouns accompanied by two or more Adjectives.*

R U L E I.

When a Noun is accompanied by two Adjectives, the surest way is to place these Adjectives after it, with the Conjunction & before the last; as,

A wise and prudent king. *Un prince sage & prudent.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

A 1 beautiful 2 and 3 modest 4 woman 5.

1 *un*. fem. *une*. 2 *B-eau*, *elle*,  
adj. 3 &. 4 *modeste*. adj. 5  
*femme*, n. f.

a just 1 and bountiful 2 God 3.

1 *juste*, adj. 2 *bienfaisant*, adj.  
3 *Dieu*, n. m.

a sincere 1 and disinterested 2 friend 3.

1 *sincère*, adj. 2 *désintéressé*,  
adj. 3 *ami*, n. m.

a solid 1 and bright 2 genius 3.

1 *solide*, adj. 2 *brillant*, adj.  
3 *génie*, n. m.

private 1 and base 2 designs 3.

1 *particulier*, adj. 2 *hont-eux*,  
*euse*, adj. 3 *desssein*, n. m.

cruel 1 and revengeful 2 enemies 3.

1 *cruel*, *elle*, adj. 2 *vindicat-if*,  
*ive*, adj. 3 *ennemi*, n. m.

a monarchical 1 and despotic 2 government 3.

1 *monarchique*, adj. 2 *despotique*,  
adj. 3 *gouvernement*, n. m.

a gross 1 and brutish 2 ignorance 3.

1 *grossier*, adj. 2 *brut-al*, pl. m.  
*aux*, adj. 3 *ignorance*, n. f.

useful



- useful 1 and easy 2 discovers 3. 1 *utile*, adj. 2 *facile*, adj. 3 *découverte*, n. f.  
 a mean 1 and despicable 2 expression 3. 1 *b-as*, *asse*, adj. 2 *méprisable*, adj. 3 *expression*, n. f.

R U L E II.

When a Noun is accompanied by three or more Adjectives, these Adjectives must be placed after it, with the conjunction & before the last ; as,

An eloquent, judicious, and impartial historian. *Un historien éloquent, judicieux, & impartial.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- A 1 long 2 innocent 3 and happy 4 life 5. 1 *un*. fem. *une*. 2 *l-ong*, *ongue*, adj. 3 *innocent*, adj. 4 *heureux*, *reuse*, adj. 5 *vie*, n. f.  
 a short 1 wicked 2 and unhappy 3 life. 1 *court*, adj. 2 *crimin-el*, *elle*, adj. 3 *malheur-eux*, *euse*, adj.  
 a covetous 1 cruel 2 and bloody 3 prince 4. 1 *avare*, adj. 2 *cru-el*, *elle*, adj. 3 *sanguinaire*, adj. 4 *prince*, n. m.  
 a sober 1 virtuous 2 and complaisant 3 wife 4. 1 *sobre*, adj. 2 *vertu-eux*. *euse*, adj. 3 *complaisant*, adj. 4 *femme*, n. f.  
 a sober faithful 1 and industrious 2 servant 3. 1 *fidèle*, adj. 2 *industri-eux*, *euse*, adj. 3 *domestique*, n. m.

*Comparison of Adjectives.*

We have but three comparatives, viz. *meilleur*, better ; *pire*, worse ; *moindre*, less ; and three superlatives, viz. *le meilleur*, the best ; *le pire*, the worst ; and *le moindre*, the least.

When we have a mind to compare persons or things with each other, we place before our adjectives the following words, viz.

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <i>Plus</i> , more.                                | <i>Très</i> , very.              |
| <i>le plus</i> , and <i>la plus</i> , the most.    | <i>bien</i> , very.              |
| <i>aussi</i> , as.                                 | <i>fort</i> , very.              |
| <i>moins</i> , less.                               | <i>extrêmement</i> , extremely.  |
| <i>le moins</i> , and <i>la moins</i> , the least. | <i>prodigieusement</i> , vastly. |
| <i>si</i> , so.                                    | <i>infiniment</i> , infinitely.  |

As *plus beau*, handfomer, or more handsome; *le plus beau*, the handfomeft, or the moft handsome, &c.

You must obferve, that *than* and *as*, immediately placed after the comparing Adjective, must always be rendered into *French* by *que*; as,

Smaller than I.  
as tall as you.

*Plus petit que moi.*  
*aussi grand que vous.*

*Exercises upon the comparifon of Adjectives.*

|   |                      |  |
|---|----------------------|--|
| Julia 1 is 1<br>more handsome 2<br>than<br>as handsome as<br>less handsome than   | } her 3<br>sister 4. | { 1 <i>Julie est.</i> 2 <i>be-au, elle,</i><br>adj. 3 <i>sa.</i> 4 <i>sœur, n. f.</i>  |
| I 1 am 1 taller 2 than<br>as tall as<br>less tall than  | } you 3.             | { 1 <i>Je suis.</i> 2 <i>grand, adj.</i> 3<br><i>vous.</i>   |
| she 1 is 1 wiser 2 than<br>as wise as<br>less wise than   | } he 3.              | { 1 <i>elle est.</i> 2 <i>sage, adj.</i> 3 <i>lui.</i>   |
| He 1 or she 2 is the most agreeable 3.<br>the most ugly 1.<br>the least proud 1.<br>the least witty 1.<br>the most innocent 1.<br>the most polite 1.<br>the most complaisant 1.<br>the most ridiculous 1.<br>we 1 are not 1.<br>so good 2<br>so bad 3<br>so diligent 4<br>so lazy 5 |                      | 1 <i>il.</i> 2 <i>elle. agréable, adj.</i><br>1 <i>laid, adj.</i><br>1 <i>orgueilleux, euse, adj.</i><br>1 <i>spirituel, elle, adj.</i><br>1 <i>innocent, adj.</i><br>1 <i>poli, adj.</i><br>1 <i>complaisant, adj.</i><br>1 <i>ridicule, adj.</i><br>1 <i>nous ne sommes pas.</i><br>2 <i>bon, onne, adj.</i><br>3 <i>méchant, adj.</i><br>4 <i>diligent, adj.</i><br>5 <i> paresseux, euse, adj.</i> 6 <i>eux.</i> |
| they 1 are 1 very difficult 2.<br>very neat 1.<br>very bald 1.<br>very deaf 1.<br>very unhappy 1.<br>very humourfome 1.   |                      | 1 <i>ils sont.</i> 2 <i>difficile, adj.</i><br>1 <i>propre, adj.</i><br>1 <i>chauve, adj.</i><br>1 <i>sourd, adj.</i><br>1 <i>malheur-eux, euse, adj.</i><br>1 <i>fantasque, adj.</i>  |

very

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| very troublesome 1.           | 1 <i>incommode</i> , adj.                 |
| very vicious 1.               | 1 <i>vicieux, ieuse</i> , adj.            |
| extremely civil 1.            | 1 <i>civil</i> , adj.                     |
| extremely revengeful 1.       | 1 <i>vindicatif, ive</i> , adj.           |
| vastly prodigal 1.            | 1 <i>prodigue</i> , adj.                  |
| vastly covetous 1.            | 1 <i>avare</i> , adj.                     |
| God 1 is 1 infinitely just 2. | 1 <i>Dieu est</i> . 2 <i>juste</i> , adj. |
| infinitely wise 1.            | 1 <i>sage</i> , adj.                      |
| infinitely great 1.           | 1 <i>grand</i> , adj.                     |
| infinitely powerful 1.        | 1 <i>puissant</i> , adj.                  |

## OF PRONOUNS.

*French Pronouns* are either conjunctive or disjunctive. The first are such as take no article, and are always joined to the verbs, as will be seen hereafter.

The others are declined with the first or second article, and are either nominal or adjective.

### *A list of the Nominal Pronouns declined with the First Article.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Sing. <i>le mien, la mienne</i> ; plur. <i>les miens, les miennes</i> , mine.          | sing. <i>le leur, la leur</i> ; plur. <i>les leurs</i> , theirs.           |
| sing. <i>le tien, la tienne</i> ; plur. <i>les tiens, les tiennes</i> , thine.         | sing. <i>lequel, laquelle</i> ; plur. <i>lesquels, lesquelles</i> , which. |
| sing. <i>le sien, la sienne</i> ; plur. <i>les siens, les siennes</i> , his, her, its. | sing. <i>l'un, l'une</i> ; plur. <i>les uns, les unes</i> , the one.       |
| sing. <i>le nôtre, la nôtre</i> ; plur. <i>les nôtres</i> , ours.                      | sing. <i>l'autre</i> , the other; plur. <i>les autres</i> .                |
| sing. <i>le vôtre, la vôtre</i> ; plur. <i>les vôtres</i> , yours.                     | sing. <i>le même, la même</i> ; plur. <i>les mêmes</i> , the same.         |

N. B. The article *le* and *la* in *lequel* and *laquelle* makes part of those two words.

The foregoing, and the other nominal pronouns being often joined to verbs in the discourse, I shall not give any Exercises upon them, before I have shewed the formation of the last. I must, however, observe here, that the best way to learn the nominal pronouns, is to decline each of them with its respective article.



As *plus beau*, handsomer, or more handsome; *le plus beau*, the handsomest, or the most handsome, &c.

You must observe, that *than* and *as*, immediately placed after the comparing Adjective, must always be rendered into *French* by *que*; as,

Smaller than I.  
as tall as you.

*Plus petit que moi.*  
*aussi grand que vous.*

*Exercises upon the comparison of Adjectives.*

|                                |                      |   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|---|
| Julia 1 is 1                   | } her 3<br>sister 4. | } 1 <i>Julie est.</i> 2 <i>be-au, elle,</i><br>adj. 3 <i>sa.</i> 4 <i>sœur, n. f.</i> |
| more handsome 2                |                      |   |
| than                           |                      |   |
| as handsome as                 |                      |   |
| less handsome than             | } you 3.             | } 1 <i>Je suis.</i> 2 <i>grand, adj.</i> 3<br><i>vous.</i>                            |
| I 1 am 1 taller 2 than         |                      |   |
| as tall as                     |                      |   |
| less tall than                 |                      |   |
| she 1 is 1 wiser 2 than        | } he 3.              | } 1 <i>elle est.</i> 2 <i>sage, adj.</i> 3 <i>lui.</i>                                |
| as wise as                     |                      |   |
| less wise than                 |                      |   |
| He 1 or she 2 is the most a-   |                      |   |
| greeable 3.                    |                      | 1 <i>il.</i> 2 <i>elle. agréable, adj.</i>  |
| the most ugly 1.               |                      | 1 <i>laid, adj.</i>   |
| the least proud 1.             |                      | 1 <i>orgueill-eux, euse, adj.</i>   |
| the least witty 1.             |                      | 1 <i>spiritu el, elle, adj.</i>   |
| the most innocent 1.           |                      | 1 <i>innocent, adj.</i>   |
| the most polite 1.             |                      | 1 <i>poli, adj.</i>   |
| the most complaisant 1.        |                      | 1 <i>complaisant, adj.</i>  |
| the most ridiculous 1.         |                      | 1 <i>ridicule, adj.</i>   |
| we 1 are not 1.                |                      | 1 <i>nous ne sommes pas.</i>  |
| so good 2                      | } as they 6.         | 2 <i>b-on, onne, adj.</i>   |
| so bad 3                       |                      | 3 <i>méchant, adj.</i>  |
| so diligent 4                  |                      | 4 <i>diligent, adj.</i>   |
| so lazy 5                      |                      | 5 <i>paress-eux, euse, adj.</i> 6 <i>eux.</i>   |
| they 1 are 1 very difficult 2. |                      | 1 <i>ils sont.</i> 2 <i>difficile, adj.</i>   |
| very neat 1.                   |                      | 1 <i>propre, adj.</i>   |
| very bald 1.                   |                      | 1 <i>chau-ve, adj.</i>  |
| very deaf 1.                   |                      | 1 <i>sourd, adj.</i>  |
| very unhappy 1.                |                      | 1 <i>malheur-eux, euse, adj.</i>  |
| very humourfome 1.             |                      | 1 <i>fantasque, adj.</i>  |

very

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| very troublesome 1.           | 1 <i>incommode</i> , adj.         |
| very vicious 1.               | 1 <i>vic-ieux, ieuse</i> , adj.   |
| extremely civil 1.            | 1 <i>civil</i> , adj.             |
| extremely revengeful 1.       | 1 <i>vindicat-if, ive</i> , adj.  |
| vastly prodigal 1.            | 1 <i>prodigue</i> , adj.          |
| vastly covetous 1.            | 1 <i>avare</i> , adj.             |
| God 1 is 1 infinitely just 2. | 1 <i>Dieu est. 2 juste</i> , adj. |
| infinitely wise 1.            | 1 <i>sage</i> , adj.              |
| infinitely great 1.           | 1 <i>grand</i> , adj.             |
| infinitely powerful 1.        | 1 <i>puissant</i> , adj.          |

## OF PRONOUNS.

*French Pronouns* are either conjunctive or disjunctive. The first are such as take no article, and are always joined to the verbs, as will be seen hereafter.

The others are declined with the first or second article, and are either nominal or adjective.

*A list of the Nominal Pronouns declined with the First Article.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Sing. <i>le mien, la mienne</i> ; plur. <i>les miens, les miennes</i> , mine.          | sing. <i>le leur, la leur</i> ; plur. <i>les leurs</i> , theirs.           |
| sing. <i>le tien, la tienne</i> ; plur. <i>les tiens, les tiennes</i> , thine.         | sing. <i>lequel, laquelle</i> ; plur. <i>lesquels, lesquelles</i> , which. |
| sing. <i>le sien, la sienne</i> ; plur. <i>les siens, les siennes</i> , his, her, its. | sing. <i>l'un, l'une</i> ; plur. <i>les uns, les unes</i> , the one.       |
| sing. <i>le nôtre, la nôtre</i> ; plur. <i>les nôtres</i> , ours.                      | sing. <i>l'autre</i> , the other; plur. <i>les autres</i> .                |
| sing. <i>le vôtre, la vôtre</i> ; plur. <i>les vôtres</i> , yours.                     | sing. <i>le même, la même</i> ; plur. <i>les mêmes</i> , the same.         |

N. B. The article *le* and *la* in *lequel* and *laquelle* makes part of those two words.

The foregoing, and the other nominal pronouns being often joined to verbs in the discourse, I shall not give any Exercises upon them, before I have shewed the formation of the last. I must, however, observe here, that the best way to learn the nominal pronouns, is to decline each of them with its respective article.

*A list of the Nominal Pronouns declined with the Second Article.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Sing. <i>Moi</i> , I or me; plur. <i>nous</i> , we or us.                        | sing. and plur. <i>qui</i> , who, which.                                |
| sing. <i>moi-même</i> , myself; plur. <i>nous-mêmes</i> , ourselves.             | sing. m. <i>ce qui</i> , what, that which.                              |
| sing. <i>toi</i> , thee; sing. and plur. <i>vous</i> , you.                      | sing. m. <i>ce que</i> , what, that which.                              |
| sing. <i>toi-même</i> , thyself; sing. and plur. <i>vous-mêmes</i> , yourselves. | sing. m. <i>quelqu'un</i> , somebody; plur. <i>quelques uns</i> , some. |
| sing. <i>lui</i> , he; him; plur. <i>eux</i> , they, them.                       | sing. m. <i>aucun</i> , none; plur. <i>aucuns</i> , none.               |
| sing. <i>lui-même</i> , himself; plur. <i>eux-mêmes</i> , themselves.            | sing. f. <i>aucune</i> , none; plur. <i>aucunes</i> , none.             |
| sing. <i>elle</i> , she, her; plur. <i>elles</i> , they, them.                   | sing. m. <i>quoi</i> , what.  |
| sing. <i>elle-même</i> , herself; plur. <i>elles-mêmes</i> , themselves.         | sing. m. <i>chacun</i> , every body.                                    |
| sing. and plur. <i>soi-même</i> , one's self, himself, herself, themselves.      | sing. m. <i>pas un</i> , not one.                                       |
| sing. <i>celui</i> , he, him, that; plur. <i>ceux</i> , they, those.             | sing. f. <i>pas une</i> , not one.                                      |
| sing. <i>celui-ci</i> , this; plur. <i>ceux-ci</i> , these.                      | sing. m. <i>quiconque</i> , whosoever.                                  |
| sing. <i>celui-là</i> , that; plur. <i>ceux-là</i> , those.                      | sing. m. <i>nul</i> , none.   |
| sing. <i>celle</i> , she, her, that; plur. <i>celles</i> , they, those.          | sing. f. <i>nulle</i> , none.   |
| sing. <i>celle-ci</i> , this; plur. <i>celles-ci</i> , these.                    | sing. m. <i>autrui</i> , others.  |
| sing. <i>celle-là</i> , that; plur. <i>celles-là</i> , those.                    | sing. m. <i>tel</i> , such.   |
| sing. and pl. <i>ce</i> , he, she, it, they.                                     | sing. f. <i>telle</i> , such.   |
| sing. m. <i>ceci</i> , this.   | sing. m. <i>rien</i> , nothing.   |
| sing. m. <i>cela</i> , that.   | sing. m. <i>personne</i> , no body.                                     |
|  | sing. m. <i>qui que ce soit</i> , who-soever.                           |
|  | sing. m. <i>quoi que ce soit</i> , what-soever.                         |
|  | sing. m. <i>qui que ce fut</i> , who-soever it was.                     |
|  | sing. m. <i>quoi que ce fut</i> , what-soever it was.                   |
|  | plur. m. <i>plusieurs</i> , many.                                       |
|  | sing. m. <i>que</i> , what.   |

N. B. *Qui* and *quoi* have *de qui*, *de quoi*, and *dont*, in their genitives.

*A list*



*A list of the Pronouns Adjective declined with the First Article.*

Sing. *Le même, la même*, the same; plur. *les mêmes*, the same.  
 Sing. *lequelle, laquelle*, who, whom, which; plur. *lesquels, lesquelles*, who, whom, which.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Pronouns.*

R U L E I.

*Le même, la même, les mêmes*, are always placed before nouns and adjectives, as *le même toit*, the same roof.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| The same sun 1.                | 1 <i>soleil</i> , n. m.                       |
| the same moon 1.               | 1 <i>lune</i> , n. f.                         |
| of the same stars 1.           | 1 <i>étoile</i> , n. f.                       |
| to the same churches 1.        | 1 <i>église</i> , n. f.                       |
| the same person 1.             | 1 <i>personne</i> , n. f.                     |
| the same little 1 boy 2.       | 1 <i>petit</i> , adj. 2 <i>garçon</i> , n. m. |
| of the same high 1 tree 2.     | 1 <i>grand</i> , adj. 2 <i>arbre</i> , n. m.  |
| of the same square 2 tables 1. | 1 <i>table</i> , n. f. 2 <i>quarré</i> , adj. |
| to the same green 2 pease 1.   | 1 <i>pois</i> , n. m. 2 <i>verd</i> , adj.    |
| to the same ripe 2 pears 1.    | 1 <i>poire</i> , n. f. 2 <i>mûr</i> , adj.    |

R U L E II.

*Même*, himself, herself, itself, very; and *mêmes*, themselves, very, are often placed immediately after nouns and most pronouns, to encrease their energy, as *le Roi même*, the King himself, &c.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Innocence 1 itself.        | <i>Innocence</i> , n. f.                 |
| virtue 1 itself.           | 1 <i>vertu</i> , n. f.                   |
| of vice 1 itself.          | 1 <i>vice</i> , n. m.                    |
| to truth 1 itself.         | 1 <i>vérité</i> , n. f.                  |
| the English 1 themselves.  | 1 <i>Anglois</i> , n. m.                 |
| of the Danes 1 themselves. | 1 <i>Danois</i> , n. m.                  |
| his 1 very friends 2.      | 1 <i>sés</i> . 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.      |
| of his very foes 1.        | 1 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m.                  |
| the laws 1 themselves.     | 1 <i>l-oi</i> , plur. <i>oix</i> , n. f. |

## R U L E III.

*Lequel, laquelle, lesquels and lesquelles*, must be placed alone, after their nouns, as *Les moutons à la dépouille desquels les hommes doivent leurs vêtements*, the sheep to whose wool-men owe their cloathing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| The Thames 1 in 2 the chan-<br>nel 3 of which many 4 ri-<br>vers 5 fall 6. | 1 <i>Tamise</i> , n. f. 2 <i>dans</i> . 3 <i>lit</i> ,<br>n. m. 4 <i>plusieurs</i> , adj. plur.<br>5 <i>rivière</i> . n. f. 6 <i>se jettent</i> . |
| the Lord 1 to whose protec-<br>tion 2 you 3 have recourse<br>3.            | 1 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>protection</i> ,<br>n. f. 3 <i>vous avez recours</i> .   |
| the sciences 1 to which you<br>2 apply yourselves 2.                       | 1 <i>science</i> , n. f. 2 <i>vous vous<br/>appliquez</i> .   |

*A list of the Pronouns Adjective declined with the Second Article.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Sing. m. <i>Mon</i> , f. <i>ma</i> , my;<br>plur. m. and f. <i>mes</i> , my.                          | these, those.   |
| sing. m. <i>ton</i> , f. <i>ta</i> , thy; plur.<br>m. and f. <i>tes</i> , thy.                        | sing. m. and f. <i>leur</i> , their;<br>plur. m. and f. <i>leurs</i> , their.   |
| sing. m. <i>son</i> , f. <i>sa</i> , his, her,<br>its; plur. m. and f. <i>ses</i> ,<br>his, her, its. | sing. m. <i>quel</i> , f. <i>quelle</i> , what,<br>which; plur. m. <i>quels</i> , f.<br><i>quelles</i> , what, which. |
| sing. m. and f. <i>notre</i> , our;<br>plur. m. and f. <i>nos</i> , our.                              | sing. <i>certain</i> , <i>certaine</i> , cer-<br>tain; plur. <i>certains</i> , <i>cer-<br/>taines</i> , certain.      |
| sing. m. and f. <i>votre</i> , your;<br>plur. m. and f. <i>vos</i> , your.                            | sing. m. and f. <i>autre</i> , other;<br>plur. m. and f. <i>autres</i> ,<br>other.                                    |
| sing. m. <i>ce</i> , <i>cet</i> , f. <i>cette</i> , this,<br>that; plur. m. and f. <i>ces</i> ,       |   |

*Exercises upon the foregoing Pronouns.*

## R U L E I.

Those Pronouns must always be placed before their nouns; as *ma tabatière*, my snuff-box.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| My grandfather 1.    | 1 <i>grand-père</i> , n. m.                 |
| to my uncle 1.       | 1 <i>oncle</i> , n. m.                      |
| thy brothers 1.      | 1 <i>frère</i> , n. m.                      |
| her sisters 1.       | 1 <i>sœur</i> , n. f.                       |
| to our house 1.      | 1 <i>maison</i> , n. f.                     |
| of your street 1.    | 1 <i>rue</i> , n. f.                        |
| this nobleman 1.     | 1 <i>seigneur</i> , n. m.                   |
| to this city 1.      | 1 <i>ville</i> , n. f.                      |
| of those reasons 1.  | 1 <i>raison</i> , n. f.                     |
| their relations 1.   | 1 <i>par-ent</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , n. m. |
| what discourse 1 !   | 1 <i>discours</i> , n. m.                   |
| a 1 certain 2 man 2. | 1 <i>un</i> . 2 <i>quidam</i> , n. m.       |

## R U L E II.

*Mon*, *ton*, and *son* may become feminine, and must always be used before such of the nouns feminine as begin with a vowel, or an *h* not founded, as *mon ame*, my soul ; *ton épingle*, thy pin.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| My plate 1.        | 1 <i>Assiette</i> , n. f.  |
| thy ewer 1.        | 1 <i>aiguière</i> , n. f.  |
| her almond 1.      | 1 <i>amande</i> , n. f.    |
| of my spouse 1.    | 1 <i>épouse</i> , n. f.    |
| of thy heiress 1.  | 1 <i>héritière</i> , n. f. |
| of her alliance 1. | 1 <i>alliance</i> , n. f.  |
| to thy needle 1.   | 1 <i>éguille</i> , n. f.   |
| to her emerald 1.  | 1 <i>émeraude</i> , n. f.  |

## R U L E III.

*Cet* must always be placed before nouns masculine beginning with a vowel, or an *h* not founded, as *cet animal*, this animal ; *cet homme-là*, that man.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                    |                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| This summer 1.     | 1 <i>été</i> , n. m.        |
| this work 1.       | 1 <i>ouvrage</i> , n. m.    |
| this bishop 1.     | 1 <i>évêque</i> , n. m.     |
| that archbishop 1. | 1 <i>archevêque</i> , n. m. |



|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| this gold 1.      | 1 <i>or</i> , n. m.                          |
| that encomium 1.  | 1 <i>éloge</i> , n. m.                       |
| that lover 1.     | 1 <i>amant</i> , n. m.                       |
| that ring 1.      | 1 <i>ann-eau</i> , plur. <i>eaux</i> . n. m. |
| this historian 1. | 1 <i>historien</i> , n. m.                   |
| that heretic 1.   | 1 <i>hérétique</i> , n. m.                   |

## R U L E IV.

The pronouns, declined with the second article, must always be placed before the other adjectives; as, *mon bel ange*, my pretty angel, &c.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| My dear 1 friend 2.       | 1 <i>Cher</i> , adj. 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m. or <i>amie</i> , n. f.              |
| your good 1 neighbours 2. | 1 <i>b-on, onne</i> , adj. 2 <i>voisin</i> , n. m. or <i>voisine</i> , n. f.  |
| his bad 1 wine 2.         | 1 <i>méchaut</i> , adj. 2 <i>vin</i> , n. m.                                  |
| our lovely 1 companion 2. | 1 <i>aimable</i> , adj. 2 <i>compagnon</i> , n. m. or <i>compagne</i> , n. f. |
| this fine 1 palace 2.     | 1 <i>b-eau, elle</i> , adj. 2 <i>palais</i> , n. m.                           |
| these long 1 walks 2.     | 1 <i>l-ong, ongue</i> , adj. 2 <i>promenade</i> , n. f.                       |
| their little 1 bitch 2.   | 1 <i>petit</i> , adj. 2 <i>chienne</i> , n. f.                                |
| what ugly 1 creature 2!   | 1 <i>vilain</i> , adj. 2 <i>créature</i> , n. f.                              |

## O F V E R B S.

There are six sorts of *French* verbs, viz. the Auxiliary, Active, Neuter, Passive, Impersonal and Reflected.

Four things may be distinguished in a *French* Verb, viz. its moods, tenses, numbers and persons.

There are four moods, viz. the infinitive, indicative, imperative, and conjunctive; besides two participles, viz. the active and the passive.

The infinitive has two tenses, viz. the present and its compound.

The indicative has ten, viz. the present, imperfect, preterite, future, conditional, and their five compounds.

The imperative has only one, viz. the present.

The

The conjunctive has four, viz. the present, the preterite, and their two compounds.

There are in most of the *French* tenses two numbers, viz. the singular, which speaks of one; and the plural, which speaks of more than one.

Each of these numbers commonly has three persons, called the first, second, and third person.

The *French* verbs are conjugated with the subjective pronouns *je*, I; *tu*, thou; *il*, he; *elle*, she; *on*, one; *nous*, we; *vous*, ye; *ils*, they; *elles*, they; *on*, they.

The first person of the singular is *je*, I; the second *tu*, thou; and the third *il*, he; *elle*, she; and *on*, one.

The first person of the plural is *nous*, we; the second *vous*, you; and the third *ils*, they; *elles*, they; and *on*, they.

All the *French* nouns belong to the third persons, either singular or plural, of the verbs; as,

The prince speaks.

*Le prince parle.*

his daughter is coming.

*sa fille vient.*

the learned deny it.

*les savans le nient.*

*The auxiliary verb Avoir, to have, conjugated in its single tenses.*

Infinitive. *Avoir*, to have.

Participle active. *Ayant*, having.

Participle passive. *Eu*, had.

*Indicative.*

Present. *J'ai*, I have.

*ils avoient*, they had.

*tu as*, thou hast.

Pret. *J'eus*, I had.

*il a*, he has.

*tu eus*, thou hadst.

*elle a*, she has.

*il eut*, he had.

*on a*, one has.

*nous eûmes*, we had.

*nous avons*, we have.

*vous eûtes*, ye had.

*vous avez*, ye have.

*ils eurent*, they had.

*ils ont*, they have.

Fut. *J'aurai*, I shall or will have.

*elles ont*, they have.

*on a*, they have.

Imp. *J'avois*, I had.

*tu auras*, thou shalt have.

*tu avois*, thou had'st.

*il aura*, he shall have.

*il avoit*, he had.

*nous aurons*, we shall have.

*nous avions*, we had.

*vous aurez*, ye shall have.

*vous aviez*, ye had.

*ils auront*, they shall have.

Conditional. *J'aurois*, I should, would, could, or might have ; *tu aurois*, thou shouldest have ; *il auroit*, he should have ; *nous aurions*, we should have ; *vous auriez*, ye should have ; *ils auroient*, they should have.

*Imperative.*

Pres. *Aie*, have.  
*qu'il ait*, let him have.  
*ayons*, let us have.

*ayez*, have.  
*qu'ils aient*, let them have.

*Conjunctive.*

Pres. *Que j'aie*, that I may have.

*que tu aies*, that thou mayest have;

*qu'il ait*, that he may have.

*que nous ayons*, that we may have.

*que vous ayez*, that ye may have.

*qu'ils aient*, that they may have.

Pret. *Que j'eusse*, that I might have.

*que tu eusses*, that thou mightest have.

*qu'il eût*, that he might have.

*que nous eussions*, that we might have.

*que vous eussiez*, that ye might have.

*qu'ils eussent*, that they might have.

*Use of this Verb.*

This Verb serves to form its own compounds, those of the auxiliary Verb *être*, to be, those of all the Verbs active and impersonal, and those of most Verbs neuter.

*Formation of the compounds of the Verb Avoir.*

Rule. To form these compounds, you need only add the participle passive *eu* after the foregoing parts of the infinitive, participle active, indicative, and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*, as,

Inf. *Avoir eu*, to have had.

Part. act. *Ayant eu*, having had.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *J'ai eu*, I have had ; *tu as eu*, thou hast had ; *il a eu*, he has had ; *nous avons eu*, we have had ; *vous avez eu*, ye have had ; *ils ont eu*, they have had.

Imp. *J'avois eu*, I had had ; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive.

*Formation*



*Formation of the compounds of the other foregoing Verbs.*

These compounds are formed, like those of the Verb *avoir*, viz. by adding the participle passive of the Verb you have a mind to conjugate after the single parts of the infinitive, participle active, indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*; as,

*Avoir été*, to have been; *ayant été*, having been; *j'ai été*, I have been; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*.

*Avoir porté*, to have carried; *ayant porté*, having carried; *j'ai porté*, I have carried; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*.

*Exercises upon the verb Avoir, to have; and the compounds of this verb, as well as those of the verb être, and those of the verbs active, impersonal and neuter.*

Before the learner sets about these and other Exercises upon the French Verbs, he must observe, first that the Pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, and *on*, are nominative cases to the French Verbs.

Secondly, that all the French Nouns, either singular or plural, may also become the Nominatives of the French Verbs.

Thirdly, that when we affirm or deny, the Nominative commonly comes before the Verb, as *la loi commande*, the law commands; *les écoliers n'étudient pas*, the scholars don't study.

Fourthly, that in the same cases the accusative commonly follows the Verb, as *il aime la vertu*, he loves virtue; *il n'aime pas le mensonge*, he does not love lying.

Fifthly, that the Adjectives must agree with their nouns in gender, number and case, as,

|                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>monstre affreux,</i>    | frightful monster. |
| <i>belle montre,</i>       | handsome watch.    |
| <i>des cheveux blonds,</i> | fair hair.         |
| <i>des prunes mûres,</i>   | ripe plums.        |

Sixthly, That the participles passive are declined like Adjectives; for we say, *donné, donnée, donnés, données*, given.

I have

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| I have some money 1.         | 1 argent, n. m.                                      |
| he has prudence 1.           | 1 prudence, n. f.                                    |
| Peter 1 has discretion 2.    | 1 Pierre, n. m. 2 discrétion, n. f.                  |
| we have bibles 1.            | 1 bible, n. f.                                       |
| ye have grammars 1.          | 1 grammaire, n. f.                                   |
| they have trees 1.           | 1 arbre, n. m.                                       |
| John 1 and Andrew 2 have     | 1 Jean, n. m. 2 André, n. m.                         |
| courage 3.                   | 3 courage, n. m.                                     |
| I had fine 1 tulips 2.       | 1 b-eau, elle, adj. 2 tulipe, n. f.                  |
| he had large 1 plumbs 2.     | 1 gr-os, offe, adj. 2 prune, n. f.                   |
| Mr. Dune had learning 1.     | 1 savoir, n. m.                                      |
| we had several 1 foes 2.     | 1 plusieurs, adj. plur. m. and<br>f. 2 ennemi, n. m. |
| ye had wealth 1.             | 1 bien, n. m.  |
| they had modesty 1.          | 1 modestie, n. f.                                    |
| I shall have a companion 1.  | 1 compagnon, n. m.                                   |
| my 1 master 2 will have a    | 1 mon, pron. adj. 2 maître,                          |
| fine garden 3.               | n. m. 3 jardin, n. m.                                |
| we shall have a 1 holyday 1. | 1 congé.   |
| he shall have your 1 reward  | 1 votre, pron. adj. 2 récom-                         |
| 2.                           | pense, n. f.   |
| they shall have the basti-   | -1 bastonnade, n. f.                                 |
| nado 1.                      |  |
| we should have the town 1.   | 1 ville, n. f.                                       |
| you might have that 1 coun-  | 1 ce, pron. adj. m. 2 pays,                          |
| try 2.                       | n. m.  |
| I have proposed 1 my 2 de-   | 1 proposé, p. p. 2 mon, pron.                        |
| sign 3.                      | adj. 3 dessein, n. m.                                |
| thou hast sung 1 a song 2.   | 1 chanté, p. p. 2 chanson, n. f.                     |
| he has comforted 1 the af-   | 1 consolé, p. p. 2 affligé, n. m.                    |
| flicted 2.                   |  |
| we have protected 1 the wi-  | 1 protégé, p. p. 2 veuve, n. f.                      |
| dow 2 and orphan 3.          | 3 orphelin, n. m.                                    |
| ye have accused 1 the guilty | 1 accusé, p. p. 2 coupable, n.                       |
| 2.                           | m.   |
| the English 1 have beat 2    | 1 Anglois, n. m. 2 battu, p. p.                      |
| the French 3.                | 3 François, n. m.                                    |
| I had begun 1 my exercise 2. | 1 commencé, p. p. 2 thème, n. m.                     |
| thou hadst done 1 thy 2 work | 1 fait, p. p. 2 ton, pron. adj.                      |
| 3.                           | m. 3 ouvrage, n. m.                                  |
| the king 1 of Prussia 2 had  | 1 roi, n. m. 2 Prusse, n. f. 3 dé-                   |
| defeated 3 the Austrians 4.  | fait, p. p. 4 Autrichien, n. m.                      |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| we had obtained 1 leave 2.                          | 1 obtenu, p. p. 2 permission.  |
| ye had followed 1 good 2 ex-<br>amples 3.           | 1 suivi, p. p. 2 bon, onne,<br>adj. 3 exemple, n. m.                         |
| ye had committed 1 great 2<br>faults 3.             | 1 commis, p. p. 2 grand, adj.<br>3 faute, n. f.                              |
| they had visited 1 several<br>countries 2.          | 1 visité, p. p. 2 plusieurs, adj.<br>plur. m. and f. 3 pays, n. m.           |
| I shall have dined 1.                               | 1 diné, p. p.  |
| thou wilt have built 1 thy 2<br>house 3.            | 1 bâti, p. p. 2 ta, pron. adj.<br>f. 3 maison, n. f.                         |
| Mr. 1 Duval will have end-<br>ed 2 his 3 journey 4. | 1 Monsieur, n. m. 2 achevé,<br>p. p. 3 son, pron. adj. m.<br>4 voyage, n. m. |
| we shall have conquered 1<br>our 2 enemies 3.       | 1 vaincu, p. p. 2 nos, pron.<br>adj. pl. 3 ennemi, n. m.                     |
| ye will have buried 1 your<br>2 mother 3.           | 1 enterré, p. p. 2 votre, pron.<br>adj. 3 mère, n. f.                        |
| they will have explained 1<br>their 2 meaning 3.    | 1 expliqué, p. p. 2 leur, pron.<br>adj. 3 pensée, n. f.                      |
| I should have discovered 1<br>his 2 shame 3.        | 1 découvert, p. p. 2 sa, pron.<br>adj. f. 3 honte, n. f.                     |
| ye would have asked 1 par-<br>don 2.                | 1 demandé, p. p. 2 pardon.   |
| we should have thought 1<br>otherwise 2.            | 1 pensé, p. p. 2 autrement,<br>adv.  |
| they should have spelled 1<br>this 2 word 3.        | 1 épellé, p. p. 2 ce, pron.<br>adj. m. 3 mot, n. m.                          |
| I might have refreshed 1 my<br>2 memory 3.          | 1 rafraîchi, p. p. 2 ma, pron.<br>adj. f. 3 mémoire, n. f.                   |
| you might have consulted 1<br>the bishop 2.         | 1 consulté, p. p. 2 évêque,<br>n. m.   |
| we might have avoided 1 his<br>2 snares 3.          | 1 évité, p. p. 2 ses, pron.<br>adj. pl. 3 piège, n. m.                       |
| they might have breakfasted 1.                      | 1 déjeuné, p. p.   |
| they might have listened 1.                         | 1 écouté, p. p.  |
| they would have paid 1 their<br>debts 2.            | 1 payé, p. p. 2 dette, n. f.   |

*The auxiliary verb Etre conjugated in its single Tenses.*

Infinitive, être, to be.

Part. act. étant, being.

Part. pas. été, been.

*Indicative.*



*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je suis*, I am.

*tu es*, thou art.

*il est*, he is.

*nous sommes*, we are.

*vous êtes*, ye are.

*ils sont*, they are.

Imp. *J'étois*, I was.

*tu étois*, thou wast.

*il étoit*, he was.

*nous étions*, we were.

*vous étiez*, ye were.

*ils étoient*, they were.

Pret. *Je fus*, I was.

*tu fus*, thou wast.

*il fut*, he was.

*nous fûmes*, we were.

*vous fûtes*, ye were.

*ils furent*, they were.

Fut. *Je serai*, I shall be.

*tu seras*, thou shalt be.

*il sera*, he shall be.

*nous serons*, we shall be.

*vous serez*, ye shall be.

*ils seront*, they shall be.

Cond. *Je serois*, I should be; *tu serois*, thou shouldest be; *il seroit*, he should be; *nous serions*, we should be; *vous seriez*, ye should be; *ils seroient*, they should be.

*Imperative.*

Pres. *Sois*, be.

*qu'il soit*, let him be.

*soyons*, let us be.

*soyez*, be.

*qu'ils soient*, let them be.

*Conjunctive.*

Pres. *Que je sois*, that I may be.

*que tu sois*, that thou mayest be.

*qu'il soit*, that he may be.

*que nous soyons*, that we may be.

*que vous soyez*, that ye may be.

*qu'ils soient*, that they may be.

Pret. *Que je fusse*, that I might be.

*que tu fusses*, that thou mightest be.

*qu'il fût*, that he might be.

*que nous fussions*, that we might be.

*que vous fussiez*, that ye might be.

*qu'ils fussent*, that they might be.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Tenses.*

To make the following Exercises, it is necessary to know, that the Noun or Adjective, denoting what the nominative of the Verb *être* is, must also be put in the nominative; as, *vous êtes sage*, you are wise, &c.

I am the Lord 1 your God 2. 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*, n. m.  
wisdom 1 is more precious 2 1 *sagesse*, n. f. 2 *précieux*,  
than rubies 3. *ieuse*, adj. 3 *rubis*, n. m.

the

|   |   |
|---|---|
| the fear 1 of the Lord is the beginning 2 of knowledge 3. | 1 <i>crainte</i> , n. f. 2 <i>commencement</i> , n. m. 3 <i>sagesse</i> , n. f.   |
| we are the children 1 of God.                             | 1 <i>enf-ant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m.   |
| you are good 1 and wise 2.                                | 1 <i>b-on</i> , <i>onne</i> , adj. 2 <i>sage</i> , adj.   |
| the 1 brave 1 are not cruel 2.                            | 1 <i>les hommes courageux</i> . 2 <i>cruel</i> , <i>elle</i> , adj.   |
| William 1 the Conqueror 1 was king 3 of England 4.        | 1 <i>Guillaume</i> , n. m. 2 <i>conquér-ant</i> , pl. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 3 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 4 <i>Angleterre</i> , n. f. |
| Adam was the first 1 man 2.                               | 1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.  |
| Solomon 1 was the wisest 2 of men.                        | 1 <i>Salomon</i> , n. m. 2 <i>sage</i> , adj.   |
| we were present 1 at 2 the ceremony 2.                    | 1 <i>prés-ent</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , adj. 2 <i>à</i> . 3 <i>cérémonie</i> , n. f.                                       |
| Cain and 1 Abel were brothers 2.                          | 1 <i>frère</i> , n. m.  |
| the 1 good 1 shall be rewarded 2.                         | 1 <i>les bons</i> . 2 <i>récompensé</i> , p. p.   |
| the wicked 1 shall be punished 2.                         | 1 <i>méch-ant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 2 <i>puni</i> , p. p.  |
| the poor 1 in 2 spirit 2 shall be blessed 3.              | 1 <i>pauvre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>d'esprit</i> . 3 <i>glorifié</i> , p. p.   |
| you should be more generous 1.                            | 1 <i>géné-eux</i> , <i>euse</i> , adj.  |
| you should be better 1.                                   | 1 <i>meilleur</i> , adj.  |
| he would be present 1.                                    | 1 <i>présent</i> , adj.   |

It will not be amiss to observe here, that the compounds of the Verb *être*, are liable to the same rules as its single tenses, as, *il a été plus riche qu'il n'est à présent*, he has been richer than he is now.

*Exercises.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| you have been useful 1.  | 1 <i>utile</i> , adj.  |
| he has been wicked 1.  | 1 <i>méch-ant</i> , pl. m. <i>ans</i> , adj.   |
| the children 1 have not been worse 2 than 3 their 4 fathers 5. | 1 <i>enf-ant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 2 <i>pire</i> , adj. 3 <i>que</i> . 4 <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. 5 <i>père</i> , n. m. |
| the prince 1 had been the defender 2 of his 3 country 4.       | 1 <i>prince</i> , n. m. 2 <i>défenseur</i> , n. m. 3 <i>sa</i> , pron. adj. f. 4 <i>patrie</i> , n. f.                           |

you

you would have been a pat- 1 *modèle*, n. m. 2 *vertu*, n. f.  
 tern 1 of virtue 2.  
 they might have been the 1 *maître*, n. m. 2 *son*, pron.  
 teachers 1 of his 2 sons 3. adj. m. 3 *fil*s, n. m.

### Use of the Verb Etre.

With the Verbs *avoir* and *être*, we form the compounds of all the *French* Verbs. The first, as I have already shewed, serves to form its own compounds, those of the Verb *être*, those of all the active and impersonal Verbs, and those of most Verbs neuter. The last, as I shall shew by-and-by, serves to form the compounds of the Verbs passive, the reflected Verbs, and few Verbs neuter.

#### Of VERBS PASSIVE.

To form a Verb passive, you need only add the participle passive of any Verb active after every single and compounded part of the Verb *être*; as,

Inf. *Etre aimé*, to be loved. Comp. *avoir été aimé*, to have been loved.

Part. act. *Etant aimé*, being loved. Comp. *ayant été aimé*, having been loved.

#### Indicative.

##### Single Tenses.

Pres. *Je suis aimé*, I am loved; *tu es aimé*, thou art loved; *il est aimé*, he is loved; *nous sommes aimés*, we are loved; *vous êtes aimés*, ye are loved; *ils sont aimés*, they are loved.

Imp. *J'étois aimé*, I was loved; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of the verb *être* \*.

##### Compounds.

Pres. *J'ai été aimé*, I have been loved; *tu as été aimé*, thou hast been loved; *il a été aimé*, he has been loved; *nous avons été aimés*, we have been loved; *vous avez été aimés*, ye have been loved; *ils ont été aimés*, they have been loved.

Imp. *J'avois été aimé*, I had been loved; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the verb *être* †.

\* See that verb, pages 39, 40.

† See pages 36, 37.



*Exercises upon the Verbs Passive.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| I am forsaken 1.                         | 1 <i>Abandonné</i> , p. p.   |
| thou art humbled 1.                      | 1 <i>humilié</i> , p. p.   |
| the tree 1 is pulled 2 down 2.           | 1 <i>arbre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>abattu</i> , p. p.   |
| we are detested 1.                       | 1 <i>détesté</i> , p. p.   |
| you are hated 1.                         | 1 <i>hâï</i> , p. p.   |
| they are killed 1.                       | 1 <i>tué</i> , p. p.   |
| the victims 1 were sacrificed 2.         | 1 <i>victime</i> , n. f. 2 <i>sacrifié</i> , p. p.                                     |
| the prophecies 1 were fulfilled 2.       | 1 <i>prophétie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>accompli</i> , p. p.                                   |
| your 1 advice 2 shall be followed 2.     | 1 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 2 <i>conseil</i> , n. m. 3 <i>sui-vi</i> , p. p.           |
| you shall be admonished 1.               | 1 <i>admonesté</i> , p. p.   |
| these 1 laws 2 should be repealed 3.     | 1 <i>ces</i> , pron. adj. pl. 2 <i>l.-oi</i> , pl. oix, n. f. 3 <i>révoqué</i> , p. p. |
| I have been esteemed 1.                  | 1 <i>estimé</i> , p. p.  |
| thou hast been believed 1.               | 1 <i>cru</i> , p. p.   |
| our 1 trespasses 2 have been forgiven 3. | 1 <i>nos</i> , pron. adj. pl. 2 <i>offense</i> , n. f. 3 <i>pardonné</i> , p. p.       |
| we have been forgotten 1.                | 1 <i>oublié</i> , p. p.  |
| you have been condemned 1.               | 1 <i>condamné</i> , p. p.  |
| the towns 1 have been demolished 2.      | 1 <i>ville</i> , n. f. 2 <i>démoli</i> , p. p.   |
| we had been sent 1.                      | 1 <i>envoyé</i> , p. p.  |
| they had been burnt 1.                   | 1 <i>brulé</i> , p. p.   |
| we shall have been imitated 1.           | 1 <i>imité</i> , p. p.   |
| we should have been purged 1.            | 1 <i>purgé</i> , p. p.   |

*Conjugation of the French Verbs.*

The Conjugation of a Verb consists in its various endings, denoting its moods, single tenses, numbers and persons.

We have six different Conjugations, all known by the ending of their respective infinitives.

The infinitive of the first conjugation ends in *er*, like *porter*, to carry.

That of the second ends in *ir*, like *finir*, to finish.

That of the third ends in *oir*, like *recevoir*, to receive.

The three others, ending in *e* not sounded, can only be distinguished from one another by the vowels and diphthongs coming immediately before the consonants of their respective endings.

1st. The

1st. The vowels *a, e, i, o, u*, help to form the endings of the fourth; as,

*B-attre*, to beat.

*m-ordre*, to bite.

*perm-ettre*, to permit.

*concl-ure*, to conclude.

*constru-ire*, to build.

2dly. The diphthongs *ai, oi, and ou*, help to form the endings of the fifth; as,

*Pl-aire*, to please.

*coudre*, to sew.

*b-oire*, to drink.

3dly. The nasal vowels *an, en, om, on, ain, ein, and oin*, help to form the endings of the last; as,

*Rép-andre*, to spill.

*cr-aindre*, to fear.

*déf-endre*, to defend.

*p-eindre*, to paint.

*r-ompre*, to break.

*j-oindre*, to join.

*rép-ondre*, to answer.

The infinitive is the root of the participles, and first persons singular of the single tenses; for from *aim-er*, to love, come

*Aim-ant*, loving.

*j'aim-erai*, I shall love.

*aim-é*, loved.

*j'aim-erois*, I should love.

*j'aim-e*, I love.

*que j'aim-e*, that I may love.

*j'aim-ois*, I did love.

*que j'aim-asse*, that I might

*j'aim-ai*, I loved.

love.

As to the other five persons of every single tense, they are commonly derived, even in the irregular Verbs, from the first person of the tense they belong to. Therefore from *j'aim-e*, I love, are formed,

*Tu aim-es*, thou lovest.

*vous aim-ez*, ye love.

*il aim-e*, he loves.

*ils aim-ent*, they love.

*nous aim-ons*, we love.

The imperative of a Verb of the first conjugation is formed, as will be shewn afterwards, of the present of the indicative. As to those of the other conjugations, they are formed of the present of the indicative, and that of the conjunctive; as,

Ind. *Finis*, finish.

Ind. *finissez*, finish.

Conj. *qu'il finisse*, let him finish.

Conj. *qu'ils finissent*, let

Ind. *finissons*, let us finish.

them finish.

First

*First Conjugation.*

Inf. *Porter*, to carry.

Part. act. *Portant*, carrying.

Part. pas. *Porté*, carried.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je porte*, I carry; *tu portes*, *il porte*, *nous portons*, *vous portez*, *ils portent*.

Pret. *Je portai*, I carried; *tu portas*, *il porta*, *nous portâmes*, *vous portâtes*, *ils portèrent*.

Imp. *Je portois*, I did carry; *tu portois*, *il portoit*, *nous portions*, *vous portiez*, *ils portoient*.

Fut. *Je porterai*, I shall or will carry; *tu porteras*, *il portera*, *nous porterons*, *vous porterez*, *ils porteront*.

Cond. *Je porterois*, I should, would, could, or might carry; *tu porterois*, *il porterait*, *nous porterions*, *vous porteriez*, *ils porteroient*.

*Imperative.*

*Porte*, carry.  
*qu'il porte*, let him carry.  
*portons*, let us carry.

*portez*, carry.  
*qu'ils portent*, let them carry.

*Conjunctive.*

Pres. *Que je porte*, that I may carry; *que tu portes*, *qu'il porte*, *que nous portions*, *que vous portiez*, *qu'ils portent*.

Pret. *Que je portasse*, that I might carry; *que tu portasses*, *qu'il portât*, *que nous portassions*, *que vous portassiez*, *qu'ils portassent*.

*Exercises upon this Conjugation.*

You keep 1 the commandments 2 of God 3.

1 *Garder*, v. 1. 2 *commandement*, plur. *ens*, n. m. 3 *Dieu*, n. m.

we avoid 1 the company 2 of the wicked 3.

1 *éviter*, v. 1. 2 *compagnie*, n. f. 3 *méch-ant*, pl. *ans*, n. m.

ye honour 1 the king 2.

1 *respecter*, v. 1. 2 *roi*, n. m.

they change 1 their 2 course 3 of life 3.

1 *changer*, v. 1. 2 *leur*, pron. adj. 3 *manière de vivre*.

we examined 1 their features 2.

1 *examiner*, v. 1. 2 *trait*, n. m.

Adam



|  |  |
|--|--|
| Adam eat 1 the forbidden 3 fruit 2.                | 1 <i>manger</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>fruit</i> , n. m. 3 <i>désenau</i> , p. p.                                      |
| ye sung 1 the praises 2 of the Lord 3.             | 1 <i>chanter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>louange</i> , n. f. 3 <i>seigneur</i> , n. m.                                  |
| David reigned 1 forty 2 seven 2 years 3.           | 1 <i>regner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>quarante sept</i> , adj. und. 3 <i>an</i> , n. m.                               |
| I shall praise 1 the Almighty 2.                   | 1 <i>louer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>tout-puissant</i> , n. m.  |
| God 1 will judge 2 the living 3 and the dead 4.    | 1 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m. 2 <i>juger</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>viv-ant</i> , pl, <i>ans</i> , n. m. 4 <i>mort</i> , n. m. |
| let him meditate 1 the precepts 2 of the gospel 3. | 1 <i>méditer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>précepte</i> , n. m. 3 <i>évangile</i> , n. m.                                 |
| let us hear 1 the voice 2 of truth 3.              | 1 <i>écouter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>voix</i> , n. f. 3 <i>vérité</i> , n. f.                                       |

*Irregularities of the first Conjugation.*

This conjugation has only three irregular verbs, viz. *aller*, to go; *envoyer*, to send; and *puer*, to stink. The irregularity of the last is only in the present indicative, where we say, *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*, instead of *je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*. The second has, *j'enverrai*, &c. in the future, and *j'enverrois*, &c. in the conditional, instead of *j'enverrai*, &c. and *j'enverrois*, &c. As to the first, it is thus conjugated:

*Aller*, to go. *Allant*, going. *Allé*, gone.

*Je vais*, or *je vas*, I go; *tu vas*, *il va*, *nous allons*, *vous allez*, *ils vont*.

*J'allois*, I did go; *J'allai*, I went. *J'irai*, I shall go. *J'irois*, I should go.

*Va*, go; *qu'il aille*, *allons*, *allez*, *qu'ils aillent*.

*Que j'aille*, that I may go; *que nous allions*, *que vous alliez*.

*Que j'allasse*, that I might go.

Such parts of the foregoing Verb, as I have designedly omitted, may easily be formed by any one who can conjugate the Verb *porter*.

The consonants *c* and *g*, having a harsh sound before the vowels *a* and *o*; when in this conjugation they come immediately before these vowels, a cedilla must be placed under *c*, and an *e* after *g*, to soften their pronunciation; as,

*Nous commençons*, we begin.

*nous commençâmes*, we began.

*nous commençassions*, we might begin.

*nous mangeons*, we eat.

*nous mangeâmes*, we ate.

*nous mangeassions*, we might eat.

*Exer-*

*Exercises upon the Irregularities of the Verbs of the first Conjugation.*

Thou shalt go.

we shall go.

they shall go.

he should go.

ye would go.

they should go.

that he may go.

that ye may go.

that they may go.

Thou beganst.

I began.

you began.

he began.

I might begin.

he might begin.

they might begin.

ye might begin.

He eat.

they eat.

you eat.

he might eat.

I might eat.

thou mightest eat.

they might eat.

ye might eat.

These, and such like exercises, are to be translated by the learner into French.

*Second Conjugation.*Inf. *Finir*, to finish.Part. act. *Finissant*, finishing.Part. pas. *Fini*, finished.*Indicative.*

Pref. *Je finis*, I finish; *tu finis*, il finit, nous finissons, vous finissez, ils finissent.

Imp. *Je finissois*, I did finish; *tu finissois*, il finissoit, nous finissions, vous finissiez, ils finissaient.

Cond. *Je finirois*, I should finish; *tu finirois*, il finiroit, nous finirions, vous finiriez, ils finiraient.

*Imperative.*

Pref. *Finis*, finish; *qu'il finisse*, finissons, finissez, qu'ils finissent.

*Conjunctive.*

Pref. *Que je finisse*, that I may finish; *que tu finisses*, qu'il finisse, que nous finissions, que vous finissiez, qu'ils finissent.

Pret.

Pret. *Que je finisse*, that I might finish; *que tu finisses*, qu'il vous finissiez, qu'ils finissent.

The Exercises which I might give upon this, and the four following Conjugations, being grounded upon the same principles with those I have given upon the first, I shall only exercise the learner upon some of the irregularities which are found in those conjugations; and since, as I have already observed, the five last persons of a tense are, even in the irregular Verbs, regularly derived from the first, it will be sufficient in the four last Conjugations, to set down the first persons of such of the tenses as are not excepted from the general rule.

*Irregularities of this Conjugation.*

The irregular Verbs of this Conjugation are,

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Bouillir</i> , to boil.              | 10. <i>couvrir</i> , to cover.            |
| 2. <i>sortir</i> , to go out, to come out. | 11. <i>cueillir</i> , to gather.          |
| 3. <i>dormir</i> , to sleep.               | 12. <i>tenir</i> , to hold, to keep.      |
| 4. <i>mentir</i> , to lie.                 | 13. <i>venir</i> , to come.               |
| 5. <i>sentir</i> , to feel.                | 14. <i>courir</i> , to run.               |
| 6. <i>mourir</i> , to die.                 | 15. <i>vêtir</i> , to cloath.             |
| 7. <i>offrir</i> , to offer.               | 16. <i>acquérir</i> , to acquire, to get. |
| 8. <i>souffrir</i> , to suffer.            | 17. <i>fuir</i> , to run away, to avoid.  |
| 9. <i>ouvrir</i> , to open.                |   |

and their compounds and derivatives, the irregular parts of which are thus conjugated:

1. *Bouillir*, to boil.

*Bouillant*, boiling. *Je bous*, I boil; *tu bous*, il bout, nous bouillons, vous bouillez, ils bouillent. *Je bouillois*, I did boil. *Que je bouille*, that I may boil.

2. *Sortir*, to go out, to come out.

*Sortant*, going out. *Je sors*, I go out; *tu sors*, il sort, nous sortons, vous sortez, ils sortent. *Je sortois*, I did go out. *Que je sorte*, that I may go out.

3. *Dormir*, to sleep.

*Dormant*, sleeping. *Je dors*, I sleep; *tu dors*, il dort, nous dormons, vous dormez, ils dorment. *Je dormois*, I did sleep. *Que je dorme*, that I may sleep.

4. *Mentir*.



4. *Mentir*, to lie.

*Mentant*, lying. *Je mens*, I lie; *tu mens*, *il ment*, *nous mentons*, *vous mentez*, *ils mentent*. *Je mentois*, I did lie. *Que je mente*, that I may lie.

5. *Sentir*, to feel.

*Sentant*, feeling. *Je sens*, I feel; *tu sens*, *il sent*, *nous sentons*, *vous sentez*, *ils sentent*. *Je sentois*, I did feel. *Que je sente*, that I may feel.

6. *Mourir*, to die.

*Mourant*, dying. *Mort*, dead. *Je meurs*, I die; *tu meurs*, *il meurt*, *nous mourons*, *vous mourez*, *ils meurent*. *Je mourais*, I did die. *Je mourus*, I died. *Je mourrai*, I shall die. *Je mourrois*, I should die. *Que je meure*, that I may die. *Que je mourusse*, that I might die.

7. *Offrir*, to offer.

*Offrant*, offering. *Offert*, offered. *J'offre*, I offer. *J'offrois*, I did offer. *Que j'offre*, that I may offer.

8. *Souffrir*, to suffer.

*Souffrant*, suffering. *Souffert*, suffered. *Je souffre*, I suffer. *Je souffrois*, I did suffer. *Que je souffre*, that I may suffer.

9. *Ouvrir*, to open.

*Ouvrant*, opening. *Ouvert*, opened. *J'ouvre*, I open. *J'ouvrais*, I did open. *Que j'ouvre*, that I may open.

10. *Couvrir*, to cover.

*Couvrant*, covering. *Couvert*, covered. *Je couvre*, I cover. *Je couvrois*, I did cover. *Que je couvre*, that I may cover.

11. *Cueillir*, to gather.

*Cueillant*, gathering. *Je cueille*, I gather. *Je cueillois*, I did gather. *Je cueillerai*, I shall gather. *Je cueillerois*, I should gather. *Que je cueille*, that I may gather.

12. *Tenir*, to hold.

*Tenant*, holding. *Tenu*, held. *Je tiens*, I hold; *tu tiens*, *il tient*, *nous tenons*, *vous tenez*, *ils tiennent*. *Je tenais*, I did hold. *Je tins*, I held. *Je tiendrai*, I shall hold. *Je tiendrois*, I should hold. *Que je tienne*, that I may hold; *que tu tiennes*, *qu'il tienne*, *que nous tenions*, *que vous teniez*, *qu'ils tiennent*. *Que je tinse*, that I might hold.

D

13. *Venir*.

13. *Venir*, to come.

*Venant*, coming. *Venu*, come. *Je viens*, I come; *tu viens*, il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent. *Je venois*, I did come. *Je vins*, I came. *Je viendrai*, I shall come. *Je viendrois*, I should come. *Que je vienne*, that I may come; *que tu viennes*, qu'il vienne, que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils viennent. • *Que je vinsse*, that I might come.

14. *Courir*, to run.

*Courant*, running. *Couru*, run. *Je cours*, I run; *tu cours*, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent. *Je courais*, I did run. *Je courus*, I ran. *Je courrai*, I shall run. *Je courrois*, I should run. *Que je coure*, that I may run. *Que je courusse*, that I might run.

15. *Vêtir*, to cloath.

*Vêtant*, cloathing. *Vêtu*, cloathed. *Je vêts*, I cloath; *tu vêts*, il vêt, nous vêtons, vous vêtez, ils vêtent. *Je vêtois*, I did cloath. *Que je vête*.

16. *Acquérir*, to acquire.

*Acquérant*, acquiring. *Acquis*, acquired. *J'acquiers*, I acquire; *tu acquiers*, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent. *J'acquérois*, I did acquire. *J'acquis*, I acquired. *J'acquerrai*, I shall acquire. *J'acquerois*, I should acquire. *Que j'acquière*, that I may acquire. *Que j'acquisse*, that I might acquire.

17. *Fuir*, to run away, to avoid.

*Fuyant*, running away. *Nous fuyons*, we run away, *vous fuyez*, ils fuient, *Je fuyois*, I did run away. *Que je fuye*, that I might run away.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Irregularities.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| The pot 1 boils very 2 fast 2.          | 1 Pot, n. m. 2 à gros bouillons.                       |
| I go out, go out with 1 me 2.           | 1 avec. 2 moi, pron. nom.                              |
| he sleeps like 1 a top 2.               | 1 comme. 2 sabot, n. m.                                |
| punish 1 your 2 children 3              | 1 punir, v. 2. 2 votre, pl. vos,                       |
| when 4 they lie.                        | pron. adj. m. and f. 3 enfant, pl. ans, n. m. 4 quand. |
| she feels great 1 pains 2.              | 1 grand, adj. 2 douleur, n. f.                         |
| my 1 uncle 2 is dead.                   | 1 mon, ma, pl. mes, pron. adj. 2 oncle, n. m.          |
| ye die with 1 grief 1.                  | 1 de douleur.  |
| he will die to-morrow 1.                | 1 demain, adv.   |
| I offer my services 1 to your friend 2. | 1 service, n. m. 2 ami, n. m. he                       |

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| he suffers the extravagant 1    | 1 <i>fou, olle</i> , adj. 2 <i>dépense</i> , n.    |
| expences 2 of his 3 son 4.      | f. 3 <i>son, sa</i> , pl. <i>sés</i> , pron.       |
|                                 | adj. 4 <i>fil</i> , n. m.                          |
| Christ 1 has suffered the death | 1 <i>Jésus Christ</i> , n. m. 2 <i>mort</i> ,      |
| 2 of the cross 3.               | n. f. 3 <i>croix</i> , n. f.                       |
| the way 1 is open.              | 1 <i>chemin</i> , n. m.                            |
| he opens the door 1 of her      | 1 <i>porte</i> , n. f. 2 <i>chambre</i> . n. f.    |
| chamber 2.                      |  |
| darkness 1 covers the face 2    | 1 <i>ténèbres</i> , n. f. plur. 2 <i>face</i> ,    |
| of the earth 3.                 | n. f. 3 <i>terre</i> , n. f.                       |
| I gather beautiful 1 flowers 2. | 1 <i>b-eau, elle</i> , adj. 2 <i>fleur</i> , n. f. |
| I hold the first 1 rank 2.      | 1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>rang</i> , n. m.      |
| I shall keep my word 1.         | 1 <i>parole</i> , n. f.                            |
| she shall come immediately 1.   | 1 <i>sur le champ</i> .                            |
| he has got a great 1 name 2.    | 1 <i>grand</i> , adj. 2 <i>réputation</i> , n. f.  |
| they avoid the company 1 of     | 1 <i>compagnie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>méch-ant</i> ,     |
| the wicked 2.                   | plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m.                           |

### Third Conjugation.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Recevoir</i> , to receive.                         | <i>je recevrais</i> , I should receive.      |
| <i>recevant</i> , receiving.                          | <i>que je reçoive</i> , that I may re-       |
| <i>reçu</i> , received.                               | ceive; <i>que tu reçoives</i> , qu'il        |
| <i>je reçois</i> , I receive; <i>tu reçois</i> ,      | <i>reçoive</i> , <i>que nous recevions</i> , |
| <i>il reçoit</i> : <i>nous recevons</i> , <i>vous</i> | <i>que vous receviez</i> , qu'ils            |
| <i>recevez</i> , <i>ils reçoivent</i> .               | <i>reçoivent</i> .                           |
| <i>je recevois</i> , I did receive.                   | <i>que je reçusse</i> , that I might re-     |
| <i>je reçus</i> , I received.                         | ceive.                                       |
| <i>je recevrai</i> , I shall receive.                 |  |

### Irregularities of this Conjugation.

The irregular verbs of this Conjugation are,

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Choir</i> , to fall.         | 7. <i>vouloir</i> , to be willing. |
| 2. <i>déchoir</i> , to decay.      | 8. <i>pouvoir</i> , to be able.    |
| 3. <i>échoir</i> , to expire.      | 9. <i>mouvoir</i> , to move.       |
| 4. <i>voir</i> , to see.           | 10. <i>savoir</i> , to know.       |
| 5. <i>s'asseoir</i> , to sit down. | 11. <i>ravoir</i> , to get again.  |
| 6. <i>valoir</i> , to be worth.    | 12. <i>pleuvoir</i> , to rain.     |

*Ravoir* is used only in the infinitive. *Choir*, *déchoir*, and *échoir*, want several tenses, and have in their participles passive *chu*, fallen; *déchu*, decayed; *échu*, expired; and in the preterite of the indicative, *je chus*, I fell; *je déchus*, I decayed; *j'échus*, I expired. The other foregoing verbs are thus conjugated.

D 2

1. *Voir*,



1. *Voir*, to see.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Voyant</i> , seeing.                           | <i>je verrai</i> , I shall see.         |
| <i>vu</i> , seen.                                 | <i>je verrois</i> , I should see.       |
| <i>je vois</i> , I see; <i>tu vois</i> , il voit, | <i>que je voie</i> , that I may see;    |
| <i>nous voyons</i> , <i>vous voyez</i> , ils      | <i>que tu voies</i> , qu'il voie, que   |
| <i>voient</i> .                                   | <i>nous voyions</i> , que vous voy-     |
| <i>je voyois</i> , I did see.                     | <i>iez</i> , qu'ils voient.             |
| <i>je vis</i> , I saw.                            | <i>que je visse</i> , that I might see. |

2. *S'asseoir*, to sit down.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>S'asseyant</i> , sitting down.           | <i>je m'asseyerai</i> , I shall sit down. |
| <i>je m'assieds</i> , I sit down; <i>tu</i> | <i>je m'asseyerai</i> , I should sit      |
| <i>s'assieds</i> , il s'assied, nous        | down.                                     |
| <i>nous asseyons</i> , <i>vous vous</i>     | <i>que je m'asseye</i> , that I may       |
| <i>asseyez</i> , ils s'asseyent.            | sit down.                                 |
| <i>je m'asseyois</i> , I did sit down.      | <i>que je m'assisse</i> , that I might    |
| <i>je m'assis</i> , I sat down.             | sit down.                                 |

This Verb being reflected, must not be learned before one is acquainted with the reflected Verbs. It is also conjugated in a very irregular manner by many.

3. *Valoir*, to be worth.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Valant</i> , being worth.           | <i>je vaudrai</i> , I shall be worth.   |
| <i>valu</i> , been worth.              | <i>je vaudrois</i> , I should be worth. |
| <i>je vaux</i> , I am worth; <i>tu</i> | <i>que je vaille</i> , that I may be    |
| <i>vaux</i> , il vaut, nous valons,    | worth.                                  |
| <i>vous valez</i> , ils valent.        | <i>que je valusse</i> , that I might    |
| <i>je valois</i> , I was worth.        | be worth.                               |
| <i>je valus</i> , I was worth.         |   |

4. *Vouloir*, to be willing.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>Voulant</i> , being willing.          | <i>je voudrais</i> , I should be willing |
| <i>voulu</i> , been willing.             | <i>que je veuille</i> , that I may be    |
| <i>je veux</i> , I am willing; <i>tu</i> | willing; <i>que tu veuilles</i> ,        |
| <i>veux</i> , il veut, nous voulons,     | qu'il veuille, que nous vou-             |
| <i>vous voulez</i> , ils veulent.        | lions, que vous vouliez,                 |
| <i>je voulois</i> , I was willing.       | qu'ils veussent.                         |
| <i>je voulus</i> , I was willing.        | <i>que je voulusse</i> , that I might    |
| <i>je voudrai</i> , I shall be willing.  | be willing.                              |

5. *Pouvoir*, to be able.

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Pouvant</i> , being able.                    | <i>tu peux</i> , il peut, nous pou- |
| <i>pu</i> , been able.                          | vons, vous pouvez, ils peu-         |
| <i>je peux</i> , or <i>je puis</i> , I am able; | vent.                               |

*je pouvois*, I was able.

*je pus*, I was able.

*je pourrai*, I shall be able.

*je pourrois*, I should be able.

*que je puisse*, that I may be able.

*que je pusse*, that I might be able.

6. *Mouvoir*, to move.

*Mouvant*, moving.

*mu*, moved.

*je meus*, I move; *tu meus*, il

*meut*, *nous mouvons*, *vous*

*mouvez*, *ils meuvent*.

*je mouvois*, I did move.

*je mus*, I move.

*je mouvrai*, I shall move.

*je mouvrais*, I should move.

*que je meuve*, that I may move.

*que je musse*, that I might move.

7. *Savoir*, to know.

*Sachant*, knowing.

*su*, known.

*je sais*, I know; *tu sais*, il

*fait*, *nous savons*, *vous sa-*

*vez*, *ils savent*.

*je savois*, I did know.

*je sus*, I knew.

*je saurai*, I shall know.

*je saurois*, I should know.

*que je sache*, that I may know.

*que je fusse*, that I might know.

8. *Pleuvoir*, to rain; a verb impersonal.

*il pleut*, it rains.

*il pleuvoit*, it did rain.

*il plut*, it rained.

*il pleuvra*, it will rain.

*il pleuvroit*, it would rain.

*il pleuve*, it may rain.

*il plût*, it might rain.

*Prévaloir*, to prevail; and *émouvoir*, to stir up, are conjugated like their single verbs.

*Fourth Conjugation.*

The three following conjugations, ending in *e* not founded, are distinguished from one another by the vowels and diphthongs coming immediately before the consonants of their endings.

The vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*, help to form the endings of the fourth conjugation; as,

1. *The vowel A in the ending.*

*Battre*, to beat.

*battant*, beating.

*battu*, beaten.

*je bats*, I beat; *tu bats*, il bat.

*nous battons*, *vous battez*,

*ils battent*.

*je battois*, I did beat.

*je battis*, I beat.

*je battrai*, I shall beat.

*je battrais*, I should beat.

*que je batte*, that I may beat.

*que je battisse*, that I might beat

2. E in the ending.

*Mettre*, to put.

*mettant*, putting.

*mis*, put,

*je mets*, I put; *tu mets*, il

*met*, *nous mettons*, *vous met-*

*tez*, *ils mettent*.

*je mettois*, I did put.

*je mis*, I put.

*je mettrai*, I shall put.

*je mettrois*, I should put.

*que je mette*, that I may put.

*que je misse*, that I might put.

3. I in the ending.

*Construire*, to build.

*construisant*, building.

*construit*, built.

*je construis*, I build; *tu con-*

*struis*, *il construit*, *nous con-*

*struisons*, *vous construisez*,

*ils construisent*.

*je construisois*, I did build.

*je construisis*, I built.

*je construirai*, I shall build.

*je construirais*, I should build.

*que je construisse*, that I may build.

*que je construisisse*, that I might build.

4. O in the ending.

*Mordre*, to bite.

*mordant*, biting.

*mordu*, bit.

*je mords*, I bite; *tu mords*, il

*mord*, *nous mordons*, *vous*

*mordez*, *ils mordent*.

*je mordois*, I did bite.

*je mordis*, I bit.

*je mordrai*, I shall bite.

*je mordrais*, I should bite.

*que je morde*, that I may bite.

*que je mordisse*, that I might bite.

5. U in the ending.

*Conclure*, to conclude.

*concluant*, concluding.

*conclu*, concluded.

*je conclus*, I conclude; *tu con-*

*clus*, *il conclut*, *nous concluons*,

*vous concluez*, *ils concluent*.

*je conclusois*, I did conclude.

*je conclus*, I concluded.

*je conclurai*, I shall conclude.

*je conclurais*, I should conclude

*que je conclue*, that I may conclude.

*que je conclusse*, that I might conclude.

Irregularities of this Conjugation.

The irregular Verbs of this Conjugation are, .

1. *Perdre*, to lose.

2. *Suivre*, to follow.

3. *Vivre*, to live.

4. *Lire*, to read.

5. *Clare*,



5. *clore*, to shut.                      7. *dire*, to say.  
6. *éclore*, to come to light.        8. *écrire*, to write.

1st, *Perdre*, *sui-vre*, *vivre*, and *lire*, have in their participle passive, *perdu*, *sui-vi*, *vécu*, and *lu*.

2dly, *Clore* and *éclore*, are not used in their single tenses, and have in their participles passive, *clos* and *éclos*.

3dly, *Dire* has *vous dites*, in the second person plural of the present indicative, and *je dis*, I told; *que je disse*, that I might tell; in the two preterites.

4thly, *Ecrire* is thus conjugated,

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Ecrire</i> , to write.                         | <i>j'écris</i> , I writ.              |
| <i>écriv-ant</i> , writiug.                       | <i>j'écrirai</i> , I shall write.     |
| <i>écrit</i> , written.                           | <i>j'écrirois</i> , I should write.   |
| <i>j'écris</i> , I write; <i>tu écris</i> , il    | <i>que j'écrive</i> , that I may      |
| <i>écrit</i> , <i>nous écrivons</i> , <i>vous</i> | write.                                |
| <i>écrivez</i> , <i>ils écrivent</i> .            | <i>que j'écrivisse</i> , that I might |
| <i>j'écrivois</i> , I did write.                  | write.                                |

### Fifth Conjugation.

The diphthongs *ai*, *oi*, and *ou*, help to form the endings of this conjugation; as,

#### 1. The diphthong *ai* in the ending.

|   |    |                                       |
|---|----|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Plaire</i> , to please.                          | 1. | <i>je plus</i> , I pleased.           |
| <i>plaisant</i> , pleasing.                         |    | <i>je plairai</i> , I shall please.   |
| <i>plu</i> , pleased.                               |    | <i>je plairois</i> , I should please. |
| <i>je plais</i> , I please; <i>tu plais</i> ,       |    | <i>que je plaise</i> , that I may     |
| <i>il plait</i> , <i>nous plaçons</i> , <i>vous</i> |    | please.                               |
| <i>plaisez</i> , <i>ils plaisent</i> .              |    | <i>que je plussse</i> , that I might  |
| <i>je plaisois</i> , I did please.                  |    | please.                               |

|  |    |   |
|--|----|---|
| <i>Faire</i> , to do.                                    | 2. | <i>je faisais</i> , I did do.           |
| <i>faisant</i> , doing.                                  |    | <i>je fis</i> , I did.                  |
| <i>fait</i> , done.                                      |    | <i>je ferai</i> , I shall do.           |
| <i>je fais</i> , I do; <i>tu fais</i> , <i>il fait</i> , |    | <i>je ferois</i> , I should do.         |
| <i>nous faisons</i> , <i>vous faites</i> , <i>ils</i>    |    | <i>que je fasse</i> , that I may do.    |
| <i>font</i> .  |    | <i>que je fissse</i> , that I might do. |

|                               |    |  |
|-------------------------------|----|--|
| <i>Naître</i> , to be born.   | 3. | <i>né</i> , born.                            |
| <i>naissant</i> , being born. |    | <i>je nais</i> , I am born; <i>tu nais</i> , |

*il nait, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent.*  
*je naissois, I was born.*  
*je naquis, I was born.*  
*je naîtrai, I shall be born.*

*je naîtrois, I should be born.*  
*que je naisse, that I may be born.*  
*que je naquisse, that I might be born.*

2. The diphthong *oi* in the ending.

*Boire, to drink.*  
*buvant, drinking.*  
*bu, drunk.*  
*je bois, I drink; tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.*  
*je buvois, I did drink.*  
*je bus, I drank.*

1.  
*je boirai, I shall drink.*  
*je boirois, I should drink.*  
*que je boive, that I may drink; que tu boives, qu'il boive, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent.*  
*que je busse, that I might drink.*

*Croire, to believe.*  
*croyant, believing.*  
*cru, believed.*  
*je crois, I believe; tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient.*  
*je croyois, I did believe.*

2.  
*je crus, I believed.*  
*je croirai, I shall believe.*  
*je croirois, I should believe.*  
*que je croie, that I may believe.*  
*que je crusse, that I might believe.*

*Connoître, to know.*  
*connoissant, knowing.*  
*connu, known.*  
*je connois, I know; tu connois, il connoît, nous connoissons, vous connoissez, ils connoissent.*  
*je connoissois, I did know.*

3.  
*je connus, I knew.*  
*je connoîtrai, I shall know.*  
*je connoîtrois, I should know.*  
*que je connoisse, that I may know.*  
*que je connusse, that I might know.*

3. The diphthong *ou* in the ending.

*Coudre, to sew.*  
*cousant, sewing.*  
*couju, sewed.*  
*je couds, I sew; tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent.*

1.  
*je cousois, I did sew.*  
*je cousus, I sewed.*  
*je coudrai, I shall sew.*  
*je condrois, I should sew.*  
*que je cose, that I may sew.*  
*que je coususse, that I might sew.*  
 2. *Moudre,*

2.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Moudre</i> , to grind.                          | <i>je mouls</i> , I grind.              |
| <i>moulant</i> , grinding.                         | <i>je moudrai</i> , I shall grind.      |
| <i>moulu</i> , ground.                             | <i>je moudrois</i> , I should grind.    |
| <i>je mouds</i> , I grind; <i>tu mouds</i> ,       | <i>que je moule</i> , that I may grind. |
| <i>il moud</i> , <i>nous moulons</i> , <i>vous</i> | <i>que je moulusse</i> , that I might   |
| <i>moulez</i> , <i>ils moulent</i> .               | grind.                                  |
| <i>je moulois</i> , I did grind.                   |   |

*Sixth Conjugation.*

This conjugation is divided into two branches; the first of which is made up of such verbs as take a vowel before the letter *n* in their ending, as *défendre*, to defend; and the other comprehends such verbs as have a diphthong before the same letter *n*, as *craindre*, to fear.

*First Branch.*

1.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Défendre</i> , to forbid.                    | <i>je défendis</i> , I forbid.          |
| <i>défendant</i> , forbidding.                  | <i>je défendrai</i> , I shall forbid.   |
| <i>défendu</i> , forbidden.                     | <i>je défendrois</i> , I should forbid. |
| <i>je défens</i> , I forbid; <i>tu défens</i> , | <i>que je défende</i> , that I may      |
| <i>il défend</i> , <i>nous défendons</i> ,      | forbid.                                 |
| <i>vous défendez</i> , <i>ils défendent</i> .   | <i>que je défendisse</i> , that I might |
| <i>je défendois</i> , I did forbid.             | forbid.                                 |

2.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Répondre</i> , to answer.                    | <i>je réponds</i> , I answered.         |
| <i>répondant</i> , answering.                   | <i>je répondrai</i> , I shall answer.   |
| <i>répondu</i> , answered.                      | <i>je répondrois</i> , I should answer. |
| <i>je répons</i> , I answer; <i>tu répons</i> , | <i>que je réponde</i> , that I may an-  |
| <i>il répond</i> , <i>nous répondons</i> ,      | swer.                                   |
| <i>vous répondez</i> , <i>ils répondent</i> .   | <i>que je répondisse</i> , that I might |
| <i>je répondois</i> , I did answer.             | answer.                                 |

*Irregularities of this Branch.*

The Verb *prendre*, to take, and its Compounds, are thus conjugated.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Prendre</i> , to take.                             | <i>je prenois</i> , I did take.           |
| <i>prenant</i> , taking.                              | <i>je pris</i> , I took.                  |
| <i>pris</i> , taken.                                  | <i>je prendrai</i> , I shall take.        |
| <i>je prens</i> , I take; <i>tu prens</i> , <i>il</i> | <i>je prendrois</i> , I should take.      |
| <i>prend</i> , <i>nous prenons</i> , <i>vous</i>      | <i>que je prenne</i> , that I may take.   |
| <i>prenez</i> , <i>ils prennent</i> .                 | <i>que je prisse</i> , that I might take. |



## Second Branch.

1.

*Craindre*, to fear.  
*craignant*, fearing.  
*craint*, feared.  
*je crains*, I fear; *tu crains*, il  
*craint*, nous *craignons*, vous  
*craignez*, ils *craignent*.  
*je craignois*, I did fear.

*je crainis*, I feared.  
*je craindrai*, I shall fear.  
*je craindrois*, I should fear.  
*que je craigne*, that I may  
 fear.  
*que je craignisse*, that I might  
 fear.

2.

*Peindre*, to paint.  
*peignant*, painting.  
*peint*, painted.  
*je peins*, I paint; *tu peins*, il  
*peint*, nous *peignons*, vous  
*peignez*, ils *peignent*.  
*je peignois*, I did paint.

*je peignis*, I painted.  
*je peindrai*, I shall paint.  
*je peindrois*, I should paint.  
*que je peigne*, that I may paint.  
*que je peignisse*, that I might  
 paint.

3.

*Joindre*, to join.  
*joignant*, joining.  
*joint*, joined.  
*je joins*, I join; *tu joins*, il  
*joint*, nous *joignons*, vous  
*joignez*, ils *joignent*.  
*je joignois*, I did join.

*je joignis*, I joined.  
*je joindrai*, I shall join.  
*je joindrois*, I should join.  
*que je joigne*, that I may join.  
*que je joignisse*, that I might  
 join.

*Exercises upon the Irregularities of the four last Conjugations.*

They 1 have lost 1 their 2  
 credit 3.

the time 1 of payment 2 is  
 expired 3.

I see men 1, women 2, and  
 3 children 4.

you will see wonderful 1  
 things 2.

the sword 1 is worth a hun-  
 dred 2 guineas 3.

he is willing to pay 1 his  
 debts 2.

I do 1 what I can 2.

I know my 1 lesson 2 by 3  
 heart 3.

1 *Ils sont déçus de*. 2 *leur*,  
 pron. adj. 3 *crédit*, n. m.

1 *tems*, n. m. 2 *payment*, n. m.  
 3 *échu*, p. p.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *femme*, n. f.  
 3 *et*, conj. 4 *enf-ant*, pl.  
*ans*, n. m.

1 *merveill-eux*, *euse*, adj. 2  
*chose*, n. f.

1 *épée*, n. f. 2 *cent*, adj. 3  
*guinée*, n. f.

1 *payer*, v. 1. 2 *dette*, n. f.

1 *faire*, v. 1. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3.

1 *mon*, *ma*, pl. *mes*, pron. adj.  
 2 *leçon*, n. f. 3 *par cœur*.

|                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| it rains very 1 hard 1.           | 1 à verse.                      |
| he has lost his 1 money 2 and     | 1 son, sa, pl. ses, pron. adj.  |
| 3 his reputation 4.               | 2 argent, n. m. 3 &, conj.      |
|                                   | 4 réputation, n. f.             |
| he has followed the army 1.       | 1 armée, n. f.                  |
| I have read the works 1 of        | 1 œuvre, n. f. 2 docteur, n. m. |
| doctor 2 Swift.                   |                                 |
| I write many 1 pages 2 every      | 1 plusieurs, adj. plur. m. and  |
| 3 day.                            | f. 2 page, n. f. 3 par jour.    |
| I have written all 1 my letters 2 | 1 tout, adj. 2 lettre, n. f.    |
| I approve 1 what 2 you say        | 1 approuver, v. 1. ce que,      |
| 3,                                | pron. nom. dire, v. 4.          |
| I drink 1 tea 2 every 3 morn-     | 1 prendre, v. 6. 2 thé, n. m.   |
| ing 3.                            | 3 tous les matins.              |

*N. B.* Such of the verbs as are not in the dictionary of these last exercises, will be found in their proper places.

### Of Verbs Neuter.

The Verbs Neuter and reflected belong to the above Conjugations, as well as the Active.

The reflected Verbs, as will be seen hereafter, are distinguished from the Verbs active, only by their being joined to, and conjugated with the conjunctive pronouns *me, nous, te, vous, and se*.

The easiest way to know whether a Verb is active or neuter, is to try whether *quelqu'un*, somebody; or *quelque chose*, something, may be placed after it. If one of these words may be placed after a Verb, it is a verb active; if not, it is a verb neuter. For instance, *donner*, to give, is a verb active, because I may say, *donner quelqu'un*, or *quelque chose*; and *dormir*, to sleep, is a verb neuter, because I cannot say, *dormir quelqu'un*, or *quelque chose*.

The compounds of most Verbs neuter, are formed with the verb *avoir*; but the following; viz.

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Accourir</i> , to run to; | <i>partir</i> , to set out; |
| <i>aller</i> , to go;        | <i>sortir</i> , to go out;  |
| <i>choir</i> , to fall;      | <i>tomber</i> , to fall;    |
| <i>décéder</i> , to die;     | <i>arriver</i> , to arrive; |
| <i>mourir</i> , to die;      | <i>venir</i> , to come;     |
| <i>naître</i> , to be born.  |                             |

and the compounds of these Verbs are conjugated with the Verb *être*; as, *je suis accouru*, I have run to, &c.

*Croître*, to grow, &c.

*monter*, to come up.

*descendre*, to come down,

D 6

may

may be conjugated with both the auxiliary verbs, as *je suis cru*, or *j'ai cru*, I am grown, &c.

A Verb impersonal is only a verb active conjugated in the third person singular only; as, *il éclaire*, it lightens.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Verbs.*

He is fallen.

they are dead.

he is born.

they are set out:

she is fallen.

you are arrived.

we are come.

he is grown.

she is come down.

they are come up.

they are gone out.

they were arrived.

you will be come down.

they would be grown.

*Remarks upon the undeclined Parts of Speech.*

I have hitherto avoided, as much as I could, to introduce into my Exercises, such of the *French* Parts of speech as I had not explained; but as on the one hand, the learner, by this time, may be supposed to have made some improvement, and on the other, it is very difficult to treat of our pronouns and verbs, without meddling with our adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions; I must here say of these last parts of speech, what is necessary for the understanding of the following Exercises.

An Adverb is a word denoting some circumstances of a verb, an adjective, or a participle; as,

*Marcher lentement,*

*un très long voyage,*

*un habit bien fait,*

to walk slowly.

a very long journey.

a well made suit of cloaths.

*French* Adverbs are placed in speech, 1<sup>st</sup>, before adjectives; as, *toujours mauvais*, always bad; *fort beau*, very fine.

2<sup>dly</sup>, After the single parts of a verb, as *il lit souvent*, he reads often.

3<sup>dly</sup>, In the compounds it is commonly placed between the auxiliary verb and the participle, as *j'ai bien mangé*, I have eat well.

Two Adverbs meet sometimes together in a sentence, as *vous allez bien vite*, you go very fast.

A Preposition is a word placed before other words, to shew the relation which one thing has with another, as, when



when I say, *je suis dans ma chambre*, I am in my room, *dans* shews a kind of relation between me and my room.

A Conjunction is a word serving to join the parts of a sentence or two sentences together; for instance, when I say, *mes freres, mes sœurs, & tous mes parens m'ont abandonné*, my brothers, sisters, and all my relations have forsaken me, *&* is a Conjunction, because it joins the parts of the sentence together; and when I say, *je partirai demain, mais je reviendrai après demain*; I shall set out to-morrow, but I shall return after to-morrow, *mais* is also a conjunction, because it joins two sentences together.

The better to enable the learners to make the remaining part of my Exercises upon the Pronouns and Verbs, I shall give them here some Exercises upon the undeclined parts of speech.

*Exercises upon the undeclined Parts of Speech.*

*Adverbs.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A good 1 servant 2 serves 3 his 5 master 6 faithfully 4. | 1 <i>B-on, onne</i> , adj. 2 <i>domestique</i> , n. m. 3 <i>servir</i> , v. 2. 4 <i>fidèlement</i> , adv. 5 <i>son, sa</i> , pl. <i>ses</i> , pron. adj. 6 <i>maître</i> , n. m. |
| the rain 1 sometimes 3 spoils 2 the corn 3.              | 1 <i>pluie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>gâter</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>quelquefois</i> , adv. 4 <i>bled</i> , n. m.  |
| we often 2 forget 1 the laws 3 of God 4.                 | 1 <i>oublier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>souvent</i> , adv. 3 <i>l-oi</i> , plur. <i>oix</i> , n. f. 4 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.  |
| the favours 1 of the wicked 2 are often hurtful 3.       | 1 <i>favor</i> , n. f. 2 <i>méch-ant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 3 <i>nuisible</i> , adj.   |
| good books 1 are very 2 useful 3 to 4 mankind 4.         | 1 <i>livre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>très</i> , adv. 3 <i>utile</i> , adj. 4 <i>au genre humain</i> .   |
| he has served 1 his prince 3 well 2.                     | 1 <i>servir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv. 3 <i>prince</i> , n. m.   |

*Prepositions.*

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Politeness 1 reigns 2 in 3 France 4. | 1 <i>Politesse</i> , n. f. 2 <i>régner</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>en</i> , prep. 4 <i>France</i> , n. f. |
| we live 1 under 2 a good prince 3.   | 1 <i>vivre</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>sous</i> , prep. 3 <i>prince</i> , n. m.                           |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| we are between 1 fear 2 and hope 3.                                  | 1 <i>entre</i> , prep. 2 <i>crainte</i> , n. f. 3 <i>espérance</i> , n. f.                           |
| the christian 1 lives according 2 to 2 the maxims 3 of the gospel 4. | 1 <i>Chrétien</i> , n. m. 2 <i>suiuant</i> , prep. 3 <i>maxime</i> , n. f. 4 <i>évangile</i> , n. m. |

## Conjunctions.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| He 1 has 1 neither 2 friends 3 nor 4 foes 5.             | 1 <i>Il n'a</i> . 2 <i>ni</i> , conj. 3 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 4 <i>ni</i> , conj. 5 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m.    |
| they will fight 1, provided 2 they 3 are paid 3.         | 1 <i>se battre</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>pourvu</i> , conj. 3 <i>qu'on les paye</i> .                              |
| the 1 lady 1 speaks 2 little 3, but 4 she speaks well 5. | 1 <i>madame</i> , n. f. 2 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>peu</i> , adv. 4 <i>mais</i> , conj. 5 <i>bien</i> . |

*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal, conjugated with the negative particles ne, pas, or point.*

## RULE I.

In the single parts of these Verbs, *ne* must be placed immediately before, and *pas* or *point* after the Verb; as,  
 Inf. *N'avoir pas*, or *n'avoir point*, not to have.  
 Part. act. *N'ayant pas*, not having.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je n'ai pas*, I have not; *tu n'as pas*, *il n'a pas*: *nous n'avons pas*, *vous n'avez pas*, *ils n'ont pas*.

Imp. *Je n'avois pas*, I had not; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of this Verb.

Inf. *N'être pas*, not to be.

*N'étant pas*, not being.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je ne suis pas*, I am not; *tu n'es pas*, *il n'est pas*: *nous ne sommes pas*, *vous n'êtes pas*, *ils ne sont pas*.

Imp. *Je n'étois pas*, I was not; and so on to the end of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of this Verb.

Inf. *Ne porter pas*, not to carry.

Part. act. *Ne portant pas*, not carrying.

*Indicative.*

*Indicative.*

Pref. *Je ne porte pas*, I don't carry; *tu ne portes pas*, *il ne porte pas*: *nous ne portons pas*, *vous ne portez pas*, *ils ne portent pas*.

Imp. *Je ne portois pas*, I did not carry; and so on to the end of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of this Verb.

*Indicative.*

Pref. *Il ne pleut pas*, it does not rain; *il ne pleuvoit pas*, it did not rain; and so on to the end of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of this Verb.

Observe, that in the infinitive of the Verbs active, neuter, and impersonal, we place also *ne* and *pas* or *point* before the Verb; as *ne pas porter*, not to carry.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Rule.*

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| You have not the fear 1 of      | 1 crainte, n. f. 2 Dieu, n. m.    |
| God 2 before 3 your 4 eyes 4.   | 3 devant, prep. 4 les yeux.       |
| you labour 1 not to 2 be 2      | 1 travailler, v. 1. 2 à être. 3   |
| rich 3.                         | riche, adj.                       |
| the rich 1 and 2 poor 3 don't   | 1 riche, n. m. 2 pauvre, n.       |
| meet 2 together 2.              | m. 3 s'assembler, v. 1.           |
| a good 1 Christian 2 is not     | 1 bon, onne, adj. 2 Chrétien, n.  |
| revengeful 3.                   | m. 3 vindicatif, ive, adj.        |
| the eclipse 1 of the sun 2 will | 1 éclipse, n. f. 2 soleil, n. m.  |
| not be visible 3.               | 3 visible, adj.                   |
| we shall not be your 1 ene-     | 1 votre, pl. vos, pron. adj.      |
| mies 2.                         | 2 ennemi, n. m.                   |
| be not unjust 1 towards 2       | 1 injuste, adj. 2 envers, prep.   |
| your neighbour 3.               | 3 prochain, n. m.                 |
| the sun does not shine 1 now 2. | 1 luire, v. 4. 2 à présent, adv.  |
| we did not lay 1 at 2 Paris.    | 1 coucher, v. 1. 2 à, prep.       |
| you did not forsake 1 evil 2.   | 1 abandonner, v. 1. 2 mal,        |
|                                 | plur. aux, n. m.                  |
| the ungodly 1 shall not in-     | 1 méch-ant, pl. ans, n. m. 2      |
| herit 2 the kingdom 3 of        | hériter, v. 1. 3 royaume, n.      |
| 4 heaven 4.                     | m. 4 des cieux.                   |
| you shall not steal 1.          | 1 dérober, v. 1.                  |
| you shall not commit 1 adul-    | 1 commettre, v. 4. 2 adultère,    |
| tery 2.                         | n. m.                             |
| do not despise 1 the poor 2.    | 1 mépriser, v. 1. 2 pauvre, n. m. |
|                                 | give                              |



- give 1 not what 2 is holy 3 1 *donner*, v. 1. 2 *ce qui*, pron.  
to the dogs 4. nom. 3 *saint*, adj. 4 *chien*,  
n. m.
- cast 1 not your pearls 2 be- 1 *jetter*, v. 1. 2 *perle*, n. f. 3  
fore 3 swine 4. *devant*, prep. 4 *pourc-eau*,  
plur. *eaux*, n. m.
- it did not hail 1 yesterday 2. 1 *grêler*, v. 1. 2 *hier*, adv.  
it will not snow 1 to-day 2. 1 *neiger*, v. 1. 2 *aujourd'hui*, adv.

## R U L E II.

To form the compounds of the foregoing Verbs, you must place their participles passive after the *pas* or *point* of the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively; as,

Inf. *N'avoir pas eu*, not to have had.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas eu*, not having had.

*Indicative.*

1. Comp. *Je n'ai pas eu*, I have not had; *tu n'as pas eu*, *il n'a pas eu*; *nous n'avons pas eu*, *vous n'avez pas eu*, *ils n'ont pas eu*.

2. Comp. *Je n'avois pas eu*, I had not had; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

Inf. *N'avoir pas été*, not to have been.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas été*, not having been.

*Indicative.*

1. Comp. *Je n'ai pas été*, I have not been; *tu n'as pas été*, *il n'a pas été*; *nous n'avons pas été*, *vous n'avez pas été*, *ils n'ont pas été*.

2. Comp. *Je n'avois pas été*, I had not been; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

Inf. *N'avoir pas porté*, not to have carried:

Part. act. *N'ayant pas porté*, not having carried:

*Indicative.*

1. Comp. *Je n'ai pas porté*, I have not carried; *tu n'as pas porté*, *il n'a pas porté*; *nous avons pas porté*, *vous n'avez pas porté*, *ils n'ont pas porté*.

2. Comp. *Je n'avois pas porté*, I had not carried; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

*Indicative.*

*Indicative.*

First Comp. *Il n'a pas plu*, it has not rained ; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| I have not had time 1.   | 1 <i>Tems</i> , n. m.   |
| you have not had your 1 share 2.                                       | 1 <i>voire</i> , pl. <i>vos</i> , pron. adj. 2 <i>part</i> , n. f.  |
| I have not been at 1 his house 1.                                      | 1 <i>chez lui</i> .   |
| I had not been with 1 him 2.   | 1 <i>avec</i> , prep. 2 <i>lui</i> , pron. nom.   |
| the Jews 1 have not acknowledged 2 Christ 3 as 4 the true 5 Messiah 6. | 1 <i>Juif</i> , n. m. 2 <i>reconnoître</i> , v. 5. 3 <i>Jésus-Christ</i> , n. m. 4 <i>pour</i> , prep. 5 <i>vrai</i> , adj. 6 <i>Messie</i> , n. m. |
| you have not done 1 your duty 2.                                       | 1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>devoir</i> , n. m.  |
| you have not called 1 upon 1 the Lord 2.                               | 1 <i>invoyer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m.  |
| they have not learned 1 their 2 lesson 3.                              | 1 <i>apprendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. 3 <i>leçon</i> , n. f.  |
| we have not waited 1 for 1 your brother 2.                             | 1 <i>attendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>frère</i> , n. m.  |
| I have not yet 1 written 2 my 3 letters 4.                             | 1 <i>encore</i> , adv. 2 <i>écrire</i> , v. 4. 3 <i>mon</i> , <i>ma</i> , pl. <i>mes</i> , pron. adj. 4 <i>lettre</i> , n. f.                       |
| I have not seen 1 my son 2.  | 1 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>fil</i> , n. m.  |
| I have not yet married 1 my daughters 2.                               | 1 <i>marier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>fil</i> , n. f.  |
| it had not thawed 1.   | 1 <i>dégeler</i> , v. 1.  |

*Of Verbs passive conjugated with the negative Particles, ne, pas, or point.*

## R U L E I.

To conjugate a Verb passive with the particles *ne*, *pas*, or *point*, you must add the participle passive of any Verb active after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être* conjugated negatively ; as,

Inf.

Inf. *N'être pas porté*, not to be carried.

Comp. *N'avoir pas été porté*, not to have been carried.

Part. act. *N'étant pas porté*, not being carried.

Comp. *N'ayant pas été porté*, not having been carried.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je ne suis pas porté*, I am not carried; *tu n'es pas porté*, *il n'est pas porté*; *nous ne sommes pas portés*, *vous n'êtes pas portés*, *ils ne sont pas portés*.

Imp. *Je n'étois pas porté*, I was not carried; and so on to the end of the single parts of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of the Verb *être*, conjugated negatively.

First Comp. *Je n'ai pas été porté*, I have not been carried; *tu n'as pas été porté*, *il n'a pas été porté*; *nous n'avons pas été portés*, *vous n'avez pas été portés*, *ils n'ont pas été portés*.

2. Comp. *Je n'avoit pas été porté*, I had not been carried; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *être*, conjugated negatively.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Bad 1 deeds 2 are not always 3 concealed 4.

virtue 1 is not always rewarded 2.

vice 1 is not always punished 2.

wealth 1, gotten 2 by 3 vanity 4, shall be diminished 5.

princes 1 should not be the foes 2 of honest 3 men 4.

you should not be so severe 1.

I have not been conquered 1.

bread 1 has not been given 2 to the poor 3.

bad things 1 have not been written 2.

America 1 has not been discovered 2 by the ancients 3.

1 *Mauvais*, adj. 2 *action*, n. f. 3 *toujours*, adv. 4 *cacher*, v. 1.

1 *vertu*, n. f. 2 *récompenser*, v. 1.

1 *vice*, n. m. 2 *punir*, v. 2.

1 *richesses*, n. f. pl. 2 *acquérir*, v. 2. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *vanité*, n. f. 5 *diminuer*, v. 1.

1 *prince*, n. m. 2 *ennemi*, n. m. 3 *bonnête*, adj. 4 *gens*, n. m. plur.

1 *sévère*, adj.

1 *vaincre*, v. 6.

1 *pain*, n. m. 2 *donner*, v. 1. 3 *pauvre*, n. m.

1 *chose*, n. f. 2 *écrire*, v. 4.

1 *Amérique*, n. f. 2 *découvrir*, v. 2. 3 *ancien*, n. m.



*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

### R U L E I.

In the single tenses the pronouns must be placed after the Verb; as,

#### *Indicative.*

Pres. *Ai-je ?* have I? *as-tu ? a-t-il ? avons-nous ? avez-vous ? ont-ils ?*

Imp. *Avois-je ?* had I? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Suis-je ?* am I? *es-tu ? est-il ? sommes-nous ? êtes-vous ? sont-ils ?*

Imp. *Etois-je ?* was I? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Porté-je ?* do I carry? *portes-tu ? porte-t-il ? portons-nous ? portez-vous ? portent-ils ?*

Imp. *Portois-je ?* did I carry? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Gèle-t-il ?* does it freeze? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Note, That when the Verb ends in *a* or *e*, a *t* between two hyphens must be inserted, as above, between the Verb and Pronoun, in order to soften the pronunciation.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Have you a dictionary 1 and<br>a grammar 2? | 1 <i>Dictionnaire</i> , n. m. 2 <i>gram-<br/>maire</i> , n. f.                  |
| has he sons 1 or 2 daughters<br>3?          | 1 <i>fil</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ou</i> , conj. 3 <i>fille</i> ,<br>n. f.              |
| have we curious 1 flowers<br>2?             | 1 <i>curieux</i> , <i>ieuse</i> , adj. 2 <i>fleur</i> ,<br>n. f.                |
| have they a fine 1 house 2?                 | 1 <i>b-eau</i> , <i>elle</i> , adj. 2 <i>maison</i> , n. f.                     |
| are we your 1 slaves 2?                     | 1 <i>votre</i> , pl. <i>vos</i> , pron. adj.<br>2 <i>esclave</i> , n. m. and f. |
| are you the first 1 of your<br>form 2?      | 1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>classe</i> , n. f.                                 |

is

|   |   |
|---|---|
| is he the son 1 of that 2 gentleman 3 ?   | 1 <i>filz</i> , n. m. <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. 3 <i>monseur</i> , n. m. |
| are they great 1 painters 2 ?             | 1 <i>grand</i> , adj. 2 <i>peintre</i> , n. m.                        |
| does he speak 1 the truth 2 ?             | 1 <i>dire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>vérité</i> , n. f.                         |
| does she love 1 study 2 ?                 | 1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>étude</i> , n. f.                         |
| do you speak 1 correctly 2 ?              | 1 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>correctement</i> , adv.                  |
| do they wish 1 for 1 peace 2 ?            | 1 <i>souhaiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>paix</i> , n. f.                      |
| shall we have a 1 holiday 1 ?             | 1 <i>congé</i> .  |
| shall we be in 1 your country 2 house 2 ? | 1 <i>dans</i> , prep. 2 <i>maison de campagne</i> , n. f.             |
| shall you go 1 to 2 Vauxhall ?            | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à</i> , prep.                             |
| would you forgive 1 the 2 rebels 2 ?      | 1 <i>pardonner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>aux rebelles</i> .                    |
| does it rain 1 ?                          | 1 <i>pleuvoir</i> , v. 3.   |
| does it snow 1 ?                          | 1 <i>neiger</i> , v. 1.   |
| does it hail 1 ?                          | 1 <i>grêler</i> , v. 1.   |

## R U L E II.

In the compounds of the foregoing Verbs, the participle must be placed after the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative; as,

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Ai je eu ?* have I had ? *as tu eu ? a-t-il eu ? avons nous eu ? avez vous eu ? ont ils eu ?*

*A-vois je eu ?* had I had ? and so on to the end of the indicative of the verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Ai je été ?* have I been ? *ai-je porté ?* have I carried ? *a-t-il gelé ?* has it freezed ? and so on to the end of the indicative of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Have you been at 1 Ranelagh ?      | 1 <i>à</i> , prep.   |
| has he spent 1 his 2 money 3 ?     | 1 <i>dépenser</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>son</i> , pron. adj. m. 3 <i>argent</i> , n. m. |
| has she married 1 her 2 cousin 3 ? | 1 <i>épouser</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>son</i> , pron. adj. m. 3 <i>cousin</i> , n. m.  |

have

|   |  |
|---|--|
| have we despised 1 your 2<br>counsels 3?              | 1 <i>mépriser</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>votre</i> , pl. <i>vos</i> ,<br>pron. adj. 3 <i>conseil</i> , n. m.       |
| have you relieved 1 the<br>needy 2?                   | 1 <i>soulager</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>indig-ent</i> ,<br>pl. <i>ens</i> , n. m.                                 |
| have they inherited 1 their<br>3 father's 4 estate 2? | 1 <i>hériter de</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>bien</i> , n.<br>m. 3 <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. 4 <i>pere</i> ,<br>n. m. |
| have they shed 1 innocent 3<br>blood 2?               | 1 <i>répandre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>sang</i> , n. m.<br>3 <i>innoc-ent</i> , pl. m. <i>ens</i> , adj.         |
| have you received 1 his 2<br>commands 3?              | 1 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>ses</i> , pron.<br>adj. pl. 3 <i>ordre</i> , n. m.                        |
| has he found 1 what 2 he<br>has lost 3?               | 1 <i>trouver</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ce que</i> , pron.<br>nom. 3 <i>perdre</i> , v. 4.                         |
| has he delivered 1 his friends<br>2?                  | 1 <i>délivrer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ami</i> , n.<br>m.  |
| have we forsaken 1 you 2?                             | 1 <i>abandonner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>vous</i> ,<br>pron. conj.   |
| have they forgot 1 that 2<br>law 3?                   | 1 <i>oublier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>cette</i> , pron.<br>adj. f. 3 <i>l-oi</i> , pl. <i>oix</i> , n. f.        |
| has it rained 1?                                      | 1 <i>pleuvoir</i> , v. 3.  |

## R U L E III.

When in asking a question affirmatively in the single and compound tenses, a Noun is the nominative case to the Verb, that Noun must be placed at the head of the phrase, and the pronoun kept, as *Pierre est-il sorti?* is Peter gone out? *le roi vient-il?* does the king come?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Has your 1 brother 2 any 3<br>children 3?            | 1 <i>votre</i> , pl. <i>vos</i> , pron. adj.<br>2 <i>frère</i> , n. m. 3 <i>des enfans</i> .                               |
| has this 1 lady 2 a daughter<br>3?                   | 1 <i>cette</i> , pron. adj. f. 2 <i>dame</i> ,<br>n. f. 3 <i>fille</i> , n. f.   |
| is Mr. Long here 1?                                  | 1 <i>ici</i> , adv.  |
| are the English 1 at 2 war 3<br>with 4 the French 5? | 1 <i>Anglois</i> , n. m. 2 <i>en</i> , prep. 3<br><i>guerre</i> , n. f. 4 <i>avec</i> , prep.<br>5 <i>François</i> , n. m. |
| will the duke 1 dine 2 with<br>us 3 to day 4?        | 1 <i>duc</i> , n. m. 2 <i>diner</i> , v. 1. 3<br><i>nous</i> , pron. nom. 4 <i>aujourd'hui</i> , adv.                      |

: has



|   |   |
|---|---|
| has Annibal defeated 1 the<br>Romans 2?                 | 1 <i>défaire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>Romain</i> , n. m.  |
| has the princess 1 breakfast-<br>ed 2 this 3 morning 4? | 1 <i>princesse</i> , n. f. 2 <i>déjeuner</i> ,<br>v. 1. 3 <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. m. 4<br><i>matin</i> , n. m. |
| have your scholars 1 seen 2<br>your library 3?          | 1 <i>écolier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>voir</i> , v. 3.<br>3 <i>bibliothèque</i> , n. f.                               |

*Of Verbs passive conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

### R U L E.

To conjugate these Verbs, you must add the participles passive of the Verbs active, after the single and compound parts of the Verb *être*, conjugated affirmatively; as,

#### *Indicative.*

Pres. *Suis-je porté?* am I carried? *es-tu porté?* *est-il porté?* *sommes-nous portés?* *êtes-vous portés?* *sont-ils portés?*

Imp. *Etois-je porté?* was I carried? and so on to the end of the single parts of the indicative of the Verb *être* conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

First Comp. *Ai-je été porté?* have I been carried? and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative of the Verb *être*, conjugated affirmatively.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Are you converted 1?                     | 1 <i>Convertir</i> , v. 2.  |
| is poverty 1 despised 2?                 | 1 <i>pauvreté</i> , n. f. 2 <i>mépriser</i> ,<br>v. 1.  |
| is this 1 gentleman 2 well 3<br>known 4? | 1 <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. m. 2 <i>monseigneur</i> ,<br>n. m. 3 <i>bien</i> , adv. 4 <i>con-</i><br><i>noître</i> , v. 5. |
| is the prisoner 1 acquitted<br>2?        | 1 <i>prisonnier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>renvoyer</i><br><i>absous</i> , v. 1.  |
| are they rewarded 1?                     | 1 <i>récompenser</i> , v. 1.  |
| have you been instructed 1?              | 1 <i>instruire</i> , v. 4.  |
| have the murderers 1 been<br>punished 2? | 1 <i>meurtrier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>punir</i> ,<br>v. 2.  |

*Of*

*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal,  
conjugated with an interrogation negative.*

R U L E I.

In the single tenses you must place the negative *ne* before any one of these Verbs, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, and *pas* or *point* after the pronouns; as,

*Indicative.*

Pres. *N'ai-je pas ?* have I not? *n'as-tu pas ? n'a-t-il pas ? n'avons-nous pas ? n'avez-vous pas ? n'ont-ils pas ?*

Imp. *N'avois-pas ?* had I not? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Ne suis-je pas ?* am I not? *n'es-tu pas ? n'est-il pas ? ne sommes-nous pas ? n'êtes-vous pas ? ne sont-ils pas ?*

Imp. *N'étois-je pas ?* was I not? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Ne porté-je pas ?* don't I carry? *ne portes-tu pas ? ne porte-t-il pas ? ne portons-nous pas ? ne portez-vous pas ? ne portent-ils pas ?*

Imp. *Ne portois-je pas ?* did I not carry? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Ne gèle-t-il pas ?* does it not freeze?

Imp. *Ne geloit-il pas ?* did it not freeze? and so on to the end of the indicative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Had I not your 1 consent 2? 1 *votre*, pl. *vos*, pron. adj. 2 *consentement*, n. m.

have you not your discharge 1? 1 *congé*, n. m.

am I not your brother 1? 1 *frère*, n. m.

are we not the children 1 of God 2? 1 *enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*, n. m.

does it 1 not rain 2? 1 *il*, pron. conj. 2 *pleuvoir*, v. 3.

did it not snow 1? 1 *neiger*, v. 1.

don't they expect 1 the judges 2? 1 *attendre*, v. 6. 2 *juge*, n. m.

shan't you ask 1 my 2 leave 3? 1 *demander*, v. 1. 2 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 3 *permission*, n. f.

shan't we receive 1 our 2 wages 3? 1 *recevoir*, v. 3. 2 *notre*, pl. *nos*, pron. adj. 3 *gage*, n. m.

R U L E

## R U L E II.

In the compounds you must place the participles passive of the foregoing Verbs after the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation negative; as,

*Indicative.*

Pres. *N'ai-je pas eu?* have I not had? *n'as-tu pas eu?*  
*n'a-t-il pas eu?* *n'avons-nous pas eu?* *n'avez-vous pas eu?*  
*n'ont-ils pas eu?* &c. *N'ai-je pas été?* have I not been?  
 &c. *N'ai-je pas porté?* have I not carried? &c. *N'a-t-il pas gelé?* has it not freezed? &c. and so on to the end of the single parts of the indicative of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Have I not given 1 my 2      | 1 <i>donner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ma</i> , pron.              |
| vote 3?                      | adj. f. 3 <i>voix</i> , n. f.                            |
| have I not sung 1 well 2?    | 1 <i>chanter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv.            |
| had he not reigned 1 in 2    | 1 <i>régner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep.            |
| Judea 3?                     | 3 <i>Judée</i> , n. f.                                   |
| hus he not anointed 1 Je-    | 1 <i>oindre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>Jéhu</i> , n. m.            |
| hu 2?                        |  |
| has he not diverted 1 the    | 1 <i>divertir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>ville</i> , n. f.         |
| town 2?                      |  |
| have we not kept 1 our 2     | 1 <i>tenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>notre</i> , pron.            |
| word 3?                      | adj. 3 <i>parole</i> , n. f.                             |
| have we not washed 1 your    | 1 <i>laver</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>votre</i> , pl. <i>vos</i> , |
| 2 feet 3?                    | pron. adj. 3 <i>pied</i> , n. m.                         |
| have you not said 1 your     | 1 <i>dire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>prière</i> , n. f.            |
| prayers 2?                   |  |
| have they not confessed 1    | 1 <i>avouer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>vérité</i> , n. f.          |
| the truth 2?                 |  |
| have they not received 1     | 1 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>leur</i> , pron.          |
| their 2 wages 3?             | adj. 3 <i>gage</i> , n. m.                               |
| has it not rained 1 a 2 long | 1 <i>pleuvoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>long-tems</i> ,           |
| time 2?                      | adv.   |

## R U L E III.

When in asking a question negatively in the single and compound tenses, a noun is the nominative case to the verb, that noun must be placed at the head of the phrase, and



and the pronoun kept, as *le duc ne viendra-t-il pas ? will not the duke come ?* *vos amis n'ont ils pas réussi ? have not your friends succeeded ?*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                         |            |         |   |
|-------------------------|------------|---------|---|
| Does not the king       | 1 love     | 2       | 1 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 3   |
| his                     | 3 subjects | 4 ?     | <i>ses</i> , pron. adj. pl. 4 <i>sujet</i> , n. m.  |
| does not your           | 1 master   | 2       | 1 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 2 <i>maître</i> , n. m. 3 <i>vous</i> , pron. conj. 4 <i>protéger</i> , v. 1. |
| protect                 | 4 you      | 3 ?     |   |
| do not his servants     | 1 mind     | 1       | 1 <i>domestique</i> , n. m. 2 <i>songer</i> à, v. 1. <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. <i>affaire</i> , n. f.      |
| 2 their                 | 3 business | 4 ?     |   |
| has not Samuel answered | 1          | 1       | 1 <i>répondre</i> à, v. 6. <i>Saül</i> , n. m.  |
| Saul                    | 2 ?        |         |   |
| had not the army        | 1 run      | 2 a-way | 2 ?   |
|                         |            |         | 1 <i>armée</i> , n. f. 2 <i>prendre la fuite</i> , v. 6.  |
| had not the Jews        | 1 forsaken | 1       | 1 <i>juif</i> , n. m. 2 <i>abandonner</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>seigneur</i> , n. m.                               |
| 2 the Lord              | 3 ?        |         |   |

*Of Verbs passive, conjugated with an interrogation negative.*

R U L E.

To conjugate these Verbs, you must add the participles passive of the verbs active, after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation negative; as,

*Indicative.*

Pref. *Ne suis-je pas porté ?* am I not carried ? *n'es-tu pas porté ? n'est il pas porté ? ne sommes-nous pas portés ? n'êtes-vous pas portés ? ne sont-ils pas portés ?*

Imp. *N'étois-je pas porté ?* was I not carried ? and so on to the end of the single parts of the indicative of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

First Comp. *N'ai-je pas été porté ?* have I not been carried ? *n'as-tu pas été porté ?* &c. and so on to the end of the compounded parts of the indicative of the verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

E

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Am I not cheated 1 ?             | 1 <i>Tromper</i> , v. 1.  |
| is not the son 1 of man 2        | 1 <i>fil</i> , n. m. 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.                       |
| glorified 3 ?                    | 3 <i>glorifier</i> , v. 1.  |
| are we not hated 1 ?             | 1 <i>hâir</i> , v. 2.   |
| are you not forsaken 1 ?         | 1 <i>abandonner</i> , v. 1.                                       |
| are not your 1 companions        | 1 <i>vo</i> tre, pl. <i>vos</i> , pron. adj.                      |
| 2 known 3 ?                      | <i>compagnon</i> , n. m. 2 <i>con-</i><br><i>noître</i> , v. 5.   |
| were you not favoured 1 by       | 1 <i>favoriser</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>fortune</i> ,                     |
| fortune 2 ?                      | n. f.   |
| have I not been admitted 1 ?     | 1 <i>admettre</i> , v. 4.   |
| has he not been turned 1         | 1 <i>chasser</i> , v. 1.  |
| out 1 ?                          |   |
| have not his 1 services 2        | 1 2 <i>son</i> , <i>sa</i> , pl. <i>ses</i> , pron. adj.          |
| been rewarded 3 ?                | 2 <i>service</i> , n. m. 3 <i>récom-</i><br><i>pen</i> ser, v. 1. |
| have they not been destroy-      | 1 <i>détruire</i> , v. 4.   |
| ed 1 ?                           |   |
| have not the rooms 1 been        | 1 <i>chambre</i> , n. f. 2 <i>embellir</i> , v.                   |
| embellished 2 ?                  | 2.  |
| have not his sons been sup-      | 1 <i>soutenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3                 |
| ported 1 in 2 their 3 rights 4 ? | <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. 4 <i>droit</i> , n. m.                   |

*Of reflected Verbs.*

The reflected Verbs differ from the active, only in their being joined to and conjugated with the conjunctive Pronouns *me*, myself, *te*, thyself, *se*, one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; *nous*, ourselves; and *vous*, yourselves; which Pronouns are sometimes not translated into *English*; for we say, *je me repens*, I repent, &c.

*Of reflected Verbs conjugated affirmatively.*

## R U L E I.

To form the single tenses of these Verbs, we must place the conjunctive pronouns immediately before the Verb; as,  
Inf. *S'aimer*, to love one's self.

Part. act. *S'aimant*, loving one's self.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je m'aime*, I love myself; *tu t'aimes*, thou lovest thyself; *il s'aime*, he loves himself; *nous nous aimons*, we love

love ourselves; *vous vous aimez*, ye love yourselves; *ils s'aiment*, they love themselves.

Imp. *Je m'aimois*, I did love myself; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| I forget 1 myself 1.                                    | 1 <i>s'oublier</i> , v. 1.   |
| he comes 1 near 1 the door 2.                           | 1 <i>s'approcher de</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>porte</i> , n. f.   |
| he sits 1 upon 2 a bench 3.                             | 1 <i>s'asseoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>sur</i> , prep. 3 <i>banc</i> , n. m.  |
| we love ourselves too 1 much 1.                         | 1 <i>trop</i> , adv.   |
| you flatter 1 yourselves 1 sometimes 2.                 | 1 <i>se flatter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>quelquefois</i> , adv.  |
| they forsake 1 their 2 ill 3 habits 4.                  | 1 <i>se corriger de</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. 3 <i>mauvais</i> , adj. 4 <i>habitude</i> , n. f.                 |
| he explained 1 himself 1 in 2 two 3 words 4.            | 1 <i>s'expliquer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>en</i> , prep. 3 <i>deux</i> , adj. pl. 4 <i>mot</i> , n. m.                               |
| we went 1 to 2 his 3 apartment 4.                       | 1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>à</i> , prep. 3 <i>son</i> , pron. adj. m. 4 <i>appartement</i> , n. m.                      |
| they seized 1 upon 2 his 3 most 4 valuable 4 effects 5. | 1 <i>se saisir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>ses</i> , pron. adj. pl. 4 <i>meilleur</i> , adj. 5 <i>effet</i> , n. m. |
| my 1 mother 2 will 3 marry again 3 in 4 a fortnight 4.  | 1 <i>ma</i> , pron. adj. f. 2 <i>mère</i> , n. f. 3 <i>se remarier</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>dans quinze jours</i> .                  |

R U L E II.

The imperative must be formed thus: *Aime-toi*, love thyself. *Qu'il s'aime*, let him love himself. *Aimons-nous*, let us love ourselves. *Aimez-vous*, love yourselves. *Qu'ils s'aiment*, let them love themselves.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Let us rise 1 quickly 2.                     | 1 <i>Se lever</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>promptement</i> , adv.  |
| present 1 yourselves 1 before 2 my 3 eyes 4. | 1 <i>se présenter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à</i> , prep. 3 <i>mon, ma</i> , pl. <i>mes</i> , pron. adj. 4 <i>œil</i> , plur. <i>yeux</i> , n. m. |
| retire 1 from 2 hence 3.                     | 1 <i>se retirer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>ici</i> , adv.  |
|  | E 2 amuse  |



- amuse 1 yourselves 1 in 2 1 *s'amuser*, v. 1. 2 *dans*, prep.  
my room 3. 3 *chambre*, n. f. .  
let them appear 1 immedi- 1 *se montrer*, v. 1. 2 *sur le*  
ately 2. *champ*.

## R U L E III.

To form the compounds of the reflected Verbs, conjugated affirmatively, you must place the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous*, immediately before the Verb *être*, with which these compounds ought to be formed; as,

Inf. *S'être aimé*, to have loved one's self.

Part. act. *S'étant aimé*, having loved one's self.

*Indicative.*

1 Comp. *Je me suis aimé*, I have loved myself; *tu t'es aimé*, thou hast loved thyself; *il s'est aimé*, he has loved himself; *nous nous sommes aimés*, we have loved ourselves; *vous vous êtes aimés*, ye have loved yourselves; *ils se sont aimés*, they have loved themselves.

2 Comp. *Je m'étois aimé*, I had loved myself; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the reflected Verb *s'aimer*, to love one's self.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I have got 1 rid 1 of 2 my 1 *Se défaire*, v. 5. 2 *de*, prep.  
3 mule 4. 3 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 4 *mule*, n. f.  
I have walked 1 in 2 the 1 *se promener*, v. 1. 2 *dans*,  
park 3. prep. 3 *parc*, n. m.  
I have yielded 1 to 2 their 3 1 *se rendre*, v. 6. à, prep. 3  
promises 4. *leur*, pron. adj. *promesse*,  
n. f.  
he has washed 1 himself 1 in 1 *se baigner*, v. 1. 2 *dans*, prep.  
2 the Thames 3. 3 *Tamise*, n. f.  
he has defended 1 himself 1 1 *se défendre*, v. 6. 2 *bien*,  
well 2. adv.  
he has talked 1 with 2 her 3 1 *s'entretenir*, v. 2. 2 *avec*,  
for 4 three 5 hours 6. prep. 3 *elle*, pron. nom. 4  
*durant*, prep. 5 *trois*, adj.  
6 *heure*, n. f.  
he has retired 1 into 2 the 1 *se retirer*, v. 1. 2 à, prep. 3  
country 3. *campagne*, n. f.

we have stopped 1 in 2 the way 2. 1 *s'arrêter*, v. 1. 2 *en chemin*.  
 we have 1 been merry 1. 1 *se réjouir*, v. 2.  
 they have waked 1 suddenly 2. 1 *se réveiller*, v. 1. 2 *en sur-  
 saut*.

*Of the reflected Verbs conjugated negatively.*

R U L E I.

To conjugate the single tenses of these Verbs negatively, you must place *pas* or *point* after the Verb, and *ne* between the two pronouns, or before the pronouns *te*, *nous*, *vous*, and *se*, when the pronouns in the nominative are omitted; as,  
 Part. act. *Ne s'aimant pas*, not loving one's self.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je ne m'aime pas*, I don't love myself; *tu ne t'aimes pas*, thou dost not love thyself; *il ne s'aime pas*, he does not love himself; *nous ne nous aimons pas*, we do not love ourselves; *vous ne vous aimez pas*, ye do not love yourselves; *ils ne s'aiment pas*, they do not love themselves.

Imp. *Je ne m'aimois pas*, I did not love myself; and so on to the end of the single tenses of this Verb.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| I don't complain 1.                   | 1 <i>Se plaindre</i> , v. 6.                             |
| I don't repent 1.                     | 1 <i>se repentir</i> , v. 2.                             |
| he does not get 1 drunk 1.            | 1 <i>s'enivrer</i> , v. 1.                               |
| she does not rise 1.                  | 1 <i>se lever</i> , v. 1.                                |
| we do not lose 1 patience 1.          | 1 <i>s'impatiser</i> , v. 1.                             |
| we do not recant 1.                   | 1 <i>se retracter</i> , v. 1.                            |
| you do not take 1 too much liberty 1. | 1 <i>s'émanciper</i> , v. 1.                             |
| you don't take 1 offence 1 easily 2.  | 1 <i>se scandaliser</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>aisément</i> , adv. |
| they do not make 1 haste 1.           | 1 <i>se dépêcher</i> , v. 1.                             |
| I shall not make 1 myself uneasy 1.   | 1 <i>se chagriner</i> , v. 1.                            |
| she will not vex 1 herself 1.         | 1 <i>s'affliger</i> , v. 1.                              |
| we shall not expose 1 ourselves 1.    | 1 <i>s'exposer</i> , v. 1.                               |

- they will not be 1 obstinate 1. 1 *s'obstiner*, v. 1.  
 don't apply 1 yourself 1 too 1 *s'appliquer*, v. 1. 2 *trop*,  
 2 much 2. adv.  
 let them fight 1 bravely 2. 1 *se battre*, v. 4. 2 *courageuse-*  
*ment*, adv.

Observe, that in the infinitive we say, *ne pas s'aimer*, or *ne s'aimer pas*, not to love one's self.

## R U L E II.

To conjugate the compounds of the reflected Verbs negatively, we must place the negative particle *ne*, before the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, and the particles *pas* and *point*, between the auxiliary Verb and the participle passive; as,

Inf. *Ne s'être pas aimé*, not to have loved one's self.

Part. act. *Ne s'étant pas aimé*, not having loved one's self.

*Indicative.*

1. Comp. *Je ne me suis pas aimé*, I have not loved myself; *tu ne t'es pas aimé*, thou hast not loved thyself; *il ne s'est pas aimé*, he has not loved himself; *nous ne nous sommes pas aimés*, we have not loved ourselves; *vous ne vous êtes pas aimés*, ye have not loved yourselves; *ils ne se sont pas aimés*, they have not loved themselves.

2. Comp. *Je ne m'étois pas aimé*, I had not loved myself; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the verb *s'aimer*, to love one's self, conjugated negatively.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I have not engaged 1 myself 1. 1 *S'engager*, v. 1.  
 thou hast not presented 1 1 *se présenter*, v. 1.  
 thyself 1.  
 he has not employed 1 him- 1 *s'occuper*, v. 1.  
 self 1.  
 she has not been 1 obstinate 1. 1 *s'opiniâtrer*, v. 1.  
 we have not refreshed 1 our- 1 *se rafraîchir*, v. 2.  
 selves 1.  
 you have not flattered 1 your- 1 *se flatter*, v. 1.  
 selves 1.  
 you have not been surprised 1. 1 *s'étonner*, v. 1.

they.



|                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| they have not boasted 1.           | 1 <i>se vanter</i> , v. 1.      |
| they have not grown 1 proud        | 1 <i>s'enorgueillir</i> , v. 2. |
| 1.                                 |                                 |
| they have not been disheartened 1. | 1 <i>se rebuter</i> , v. 1.     |

*Of the reflected Verbs conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

R U L E I.

To form the single tenses of these Verbs, we must place the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, before the Verbs active, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative; as,

*Indicative.*

Pres. *M'aimé-je?* do I love myself? *t'aimes-tu?* dost thou love thyself? *s'aime-t-il?* does he love himself? *nous aimons-nous?* do we love ourselves? *vous aimez-vous?* do ye love yourselves? *s'aiment ils?* do they love themselves?

Imp. *M'aimois-je?* did I love myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Dost thou take 1 shipping 1?        | 1 <i>S'embarquer</i> , v. 1.   |
| does he move 1 forward 1?           | 1 <i>s'avancer</i> , v. 1.   |
| does he stop 1?                     | 1 <i>s'arrêter</i> , v. 1.   |
| does he mistake 1?                  | 1 <i>se tromper</i> , v. 1.  |
| does he sit 1 down 1?               | 1 <i>s'asseoir</i> , v. 3.   |
| do you defend 1 yourselves 1?       | 1 <i>se défendre</i> , v. 6.   |
| do you surrender 1?                 | 1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6.   |
| do they grow 1 tired 1?             | 1 <i>se lasser</i> , v. 1.   |
| shall you be undeceived 1?          | 1 <i>se désabuser</i> , v. 1.  |
| will you allay 1 your passion 1?    | 1 <i>s'appaiser</i> , v. 1.  |
| do they go 1 away 1?                | 1 <i>s'en aller</i> , v. 1.  |
| do they cure 1 themselves 1?        | 1 <i>se guérir</i> , v. 2.   |
| will they appear 1 before 2 you 3?  | 1 <i>se présenter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>devant</i> , prep. 3 <i>vous</i> , pron. nom. |
| shall they make 1 use 1 of 2 him 3? | 1 <i>se servir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>lui</i> , pron. nom.         |

- they will not be 1 obstinate 1. 1 *s'obstiner*, v. 1.  
 don't apply 1 yourself 1 too 1 *s'appliquer*, v. 1. 2 *trop*,  
 2 much 2. adv.  
 let them fight 1 bravely 2. 1 *se battre*, v. 4. 2 *courageuse-*  
*ment*, adv.

Observe, that in the infinitive we say, *ne pas s'aimer*, or *ne s'aimer pas*, not to love one's self.

### R U L E II.

To conjugate the compounds of the reflected Verbs negatively, we must place the negative particle *ne*, before the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, and the particles *pas* and *point*, between the auxiliary Verb and the participle passive; as,

Inf. *Ne s'être pas aimé*, not to have loved one's self.

Part. act. *Ne s'étant pas aimé*, not having loved one's self.

#### Indicative.

1. Comp. *Je ne me suis pas aimé*, I have not loved myself; *tu ne t'es pas aimé*, thou hast not loved thyself; *il ne s'est pas aimé*, he has not loved himself; *nous ne nous sommes pas aimés*, we have not loved ourselves; *vous ne vous êtes pas aimés*, ye have not loved yourselves; *ils ne se sont pas aimés*, they have not loved themselves.

2. Comp. *Je ne m'étois pas aimé*, I had not loved myself; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the verb *s'aimer*, to love one's self, conjugated negatively.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

- I have not engaged 1 myself 1. 1 *S'engager*, v. 1.  
 thou hast not presented 1 thyself 1. 1 *se présenter*, v. 1.  
 he has not employed 1 himself 1. 1 *s'occuper*, v. 1.  
 she has not been 1 obstinate 1. 1 *s'opiniâtrer*, v. 1.  
 we have not refreshed 1 ourselves 1. 1 *se rafraîchir*, v. 2.  
 you have not flattered 1 yourselves 1. 1 *se flatter*, v. 1.  
 you have not been surprised 1. 1 *s'étonner*, v. 1.

they.

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| they have not boasted 1.                | 1 <i>se vanter</i> , v. 1.      |
| they have not grown 1 proud             | 1 <i>s'enorgueillir</i> , v. 2. |
| 1.                                      |                                 |
| they have not been disheart-<br>ened 1. | 1 <i>se rebuter</i> , v. 1.     |

*Of the reflected Verbs conjugated with an inter-  
rogation affirmative.*

R U L E I.

To form the single tenses of these Verbs, we must place the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, before the Verbs active, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative; as,

*Indicative.*

Pres. *M'aimé-je?* do I love myself? *t'aimes-tu?* dost thou love thyself? *s'aime-t-il?* does he love himself? *nous aimons-nous?* do we love ourselves? *vous aimez-vous?* do ye love yourselves? *s'aiment ils?* do they love themselves?

Imp. *M'aimois-je?* did I love myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Dost thou take 1 shipping 1?           | 1 <i>S'embarquer</i> , v. 1.  |
| does he move 1 forward 1?              | 1 <i>s'avancer</i> , v. 1.  |
| does he stop 1?                        | 1 <i>s'arrêter</i> , v. 1.  |
| does he mistake 1?                     | 1 <i>se tromper</i> , v. 1.   |
| does he sit 1 down 1?                  | 1 <i>s'asseoir</i> , v. 3.  |
| do you defend 1 yourselves 1?          | 1 <i>se défendre</i> , v. 6.  |
| do you surrender 1?                    | 1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6.  |
| do they grow 1 tired 1?                | 1 <i>se lasser</i> , v. 1.  |
| shall you be undeceived 1?             | 1 <i>se désabuser</i> , v. 1.   |
| will you allay 1 your passion<br>1?    | 1 <i>s'appaiser</i> , v. 1.   |
| do they go 1 away 1?                   | 1 <i>s'en aller</i> , v. 1.   |
| do they cure 1 themselves 1?           | 1 <i>se guérir</i> , v. 2.  |
| will they appear 1 before 2<br>you 3?  | 1 <i>se présenter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>devant</i> ,<br>prep. 3 <i>vous</i> , pron. nom. |
| shall they make 1 use 1 of 2<br>him 3? | 1 <i>se servir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>de</i> , prep.<br>3 <i>lui</i> , pron. nom.         |



## R U L E II.

To form the compounds of these verbs, we must place the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, and vous*, before the single tenses of the indicative of the verbs passive, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative; as,

*Indicative.*

1 Comp. *Me suis-je aimé ?* have I loved myself? *t'es-tu aimé ?* hast thou loved thyself? *s'est-il aimé ?* has he loved himself? *nous sommes nous aimés ?* have we loved ourselves? *vous êtes-vous aimés ?* have ye loved yourselves? *se sont-ils aimés ?* have they loved themselves?

2 Comp. *M'étois je aimé ?* had I loved myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the verb *être aimé*, to be loved, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Have I fallen 1 asleep 1 ?            | 1 <i>s'endormir</i> , v. 2.   |
| hast thou equipped 1 thyself 1 ?      | 1 <i>s'équiper</i> , v. 1.  |
| has he grown 1 bold 1 ?               | 1 <i>s'enhardir</i> , v. 2.   |
| has she grown 1 rich 1 ?              | 1 <i>s'enrichir</i> , v. 2.   |
| have you listed 1 ?                   | 1 <i>s'enrôler</i> , v. 1.  |
| have you made 1 yourselves hoarse 1 ? | 1 <i>s'enrouer</i> , v. 1.  |
| have you praised 1 yourselves 1 ?     | 1 <i>se louer</i> , v. 1.   |
| have they kneeled 1 down 1 ?          | 1 <i>se mettre à genoux</i> , v. 4.                                       |
| have they retired 1 ?                 | 1 <i>se retirer</i> , v. 1.   |
| have they behaved 1 well 2 ?          | 1 <i>se conduire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv.                         |
| have they parted 1 from 2 him 3 ?     | 1 <i>se séparer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>lui</i> , pron. nom. |
| have they fainted 1 away 1 ?          | 1 <i>s'évanouir</i> , v. 2.   |

*Of the same Verbs conjugated with an interrogation negative.*

## R U L E I.

To form the single tenses of the reflected Verbs with an interrogation negative, you must place the negative *ne* before the single tenses of the same verbs, conjugated with an

an interrogation affirmative, and *pas* or *point* after the pronouns in the nominative; as,

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Ne m'aimé-je pas?* don't I love myself? *ne t'aimes-tu pas?* dost thou not love thyself? *ne s'aime-t-il pas?* does he not love himself? *ne nous aimons-nous pas?* do we not love ourselves? *ne vous aimez-vous pas?* do ye not love yourselves? *ne s'aiment-ils pas?* do they not love themselves?

Imp. *Ne m'aimois-je pas?* did I not love myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the Verb *s'aimer*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Dost thou not get 1 strength 1? | 1 <i>se fortifier</i> , v. 1.                    |
| does not your 1 pulse 2         | 1 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 2 <i>pouls</i> ,     |
| grow 3 weak 3?                  | n. m. 3 <i>s'affoiblir</i> , v. 2.               |
| does he not untire 1 himself    | 1 <i>se délasser</i> , v. 1.                     |
| 1?                              |  |
| does he not deprive 1 him-      | 1 <i>se priver de</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>néces-</i>    |
| self 1 of the necessities 2     | <i>saire</i> , n. m.                             |
| of life 2?                      |  |
| does he not fall 2 asleep a-    | 1 <i>se rendormir</i> , v. 2.                    |
| gain 2?                         |  |
| don't we retire 1?              | 1 <i>se retirer</i> , v. 1.                      |
| don't you list 1 again 1?       | 1 <i>se rengager</i> , v. 1.                     |
| don't they defend 1 them-       | 1 <i>se défendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>bien</i> ,     |
| selves 1 well 2?                | adv.   |
| don't they remember 1 his       | 1 <i>se ressouvenir de</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>sa</i> , |
| 2 goodness 3?                   | pron. adj. f. 3 <i>bonté</i> , n. f.             |
| don't they enquire 1 about      | 1 <i>s'informer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de</i> , prep.  |
| 2 you 3?                        | 3 <i>vous</i> , pron. nom.                       |

R U L E II.

To form the compounds of the same Verbs, you must place the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, between the particle *ne*, and the auxiliary verb of the single tenses of the verbs passive, conjugated with an interrogation negative; as,

## Indicative.

Pres. *Ne me suis-je pas aimé ?* have I not loved myself ?  
*ne t'es-tu pas aimé ?* hast thou not loved thyself ? *ne s'est il*  
*pas aimé ?* has he not loved himself ? *ne nous sommes-nous*  
*pas aimés ?* have we not loved ourselves ? *ne vous êtes-vous*  
*pas aimés ?* have ye not loved yourselves ? *ne se sont-ils pas*  
*aimés ?* have they not loved themselves ?

Imp. *Ne m'étois-je pas aimé ?* had I not loved myself ?  
 and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of  
 the verb passive *être aimé*, conjugated with an interroga-  
 tion negative.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Have I not gone 1 out of<br>my way 1 for 2 you 3 ?<br>hast thou not rested 1 thyself<br>1 ? | 1 <i>Se détourner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pour</i> ,<br>prep. 3 <i>vous</i> , pron. nom.<br>1 <i>se reposer</i> , v. 1. |
| has he not sacrificed 1 him-<br>self 1 for his 2 mother 3 ?                                 | 1 <i>se sacrifier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>sa</i> , pron.<br>adj. f. 3 <i>mere</i> , n. f.                               |
| have we not behaved 1 well<br>2 ?   | 1 <i>se comporter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>bien</i> ,<br>adv.  |
| have you not tried 1 your-<br>selves 1 ?  | 1 <i>s'éprouver</i> , v. 1.  |
| has he not comforted 1 him-<br>self 1 ?   | 1 <i>se consoler</i> , v. 1.   |
| has he not thought 1 himself<br>1 undone 2 ?  | 1 <i>se croire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>perdu</i> , p. p.  |
| had we not met 1 together 1 ?   | 1 <i>s'assembler</i> , v. 1.   |
| had they not thrown 1 them-<br>selves 1 at 2 his 3 feet 4 ?                                 | 1 <i>se jeter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à</i> , prep. 3<br><i>ses</i> , pron. adj. pl. <i>pied</i> , n. m.                |
| had they not flattered 1 them-<br>selves 1 in 2 vain 2 ?                                    | 1 <i>se flatter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>envain</i> ,<br>adv.  |

## R U L E III.

When in asking a question, either affirmatively or nega-  
 tively, a noun is the nominative case to a reflected verb,  
 that noun must be placed at the head of the phrase, and  
 the pronoun, representing that noun, kept, as,

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <i>cette épée se dérouille-t-elle ?</i> | does this sword lose its rust ? |
| <i>les enfans ne se rendorment-ils</i>  | don't the children fall asleep  |
| <i>pas ?</i>                            | again ?                         |

cette



*cette épée s'est-elle dérouillée ?* has this sword lost its rust ?  
*les enfans ne se sont-ils pas* have not the children fallen  
*rendormis ?* asleep again ?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| will these 1 birds 2 grow       | 1 <i>ce, cet, cette, pl. ces, pron.</i>   |
| 3 tame 3 ?                      | adj. 2 <i>ois-eau, pl. eaux, n.</i>       |
|                                 | m. 3 <i>s'appri-voiser, v. 1.</i>         |
| will those balls 1 become 2     | 1 <i>balle, n. f. 2 s'arrondir,</i>       |
| round 2 ?                       | v. 2.                                     |
| shall the brothers 1 part 2     | 1 <i>frère, n. m. 2 se séparer, -v.</i>   |
| without 3 prattling 4 to-       | 1. 3 <i>sans, prep. 4 causer.</i>         |
| gether 5 ?                      | 5 <i>ensemble, adv.</i>                   |
| are the chickens 1 grown 2      | 1 <i>poulet, n. m. 2 s'engraisser,</i>    |
| fat 2 ?                         | v. 1.                                     |
| are the stars 1 grown 2 dark    | 1 <i>étoile, n. f. 2 s'obscurcir,</i>     |
| 2 ?                             | v. 2.                                     |
| has Milo 1 performed 2 his      | 1 <i>Milon, n. m. 2 s'acquitter</i>       |
| 3 promise 4 ?                   | de, v. 1. 3 <i>sa, pron. adj.</i>         |
|                                 | f. 4 <i>promesse, n. f.</i>               |
| does not our 1 army 2 gather    | 1 <i>notre, pron. adj. 2 armée,</i>       |
| 3 strength 3 ?                  | n. f. 3 <i>se renforcer, v. 1.</i>        |
| does not the enemy 1 surren-    | 1 <i>ennemi, n. m. 2 se rendre,</i>       |
| der 2 ?                         | v. 6.                                     |
| don't these cloths 1 grow 2     | 1 <i>drap, n. m. 2 se rétrécir,</i>       |
| straiter 2 ?                    | v. 2.                                     |
| has not this flower 1 blown 2 ? | 1 <i>fleur, n. f. 2 s'épanouir, v. 2.</i> |
| have not the prisoners 1        | 1 <i>prisonnier, n. m. 2 s'échap-</i>     |
| made 2 their escape 2 ?         | per, v. 1.                                |
| have not your 1 daughters 2     | 1 <i>votre, pl. vos, pron. adj. 2</i>     |
| endeavoured 3 to 4 please       | <i>filles, n. f. 3 s'étudier, v. 1.</i>   |
| 6 you 5 ?                       | 4 <i>à, prep. 5 vous, pron.</i>           |
|                                 | conj. 6 <i>plaire, v. 5.</i>              |

*Of French Verbs conjugated with conjunctive Pronouns.*

Besides the conjunctive Pronouns already taken notice of, *French Verbs* are conjugated with other pronouns, which are thus declined.

| Singular. |  | Plural. |  |
|-----------|--|---------|--|
| Gen.      | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} en, \text{ of me, of thee, of} \\ \text{you, of him, of} \\ \text{her, of it.} \end{array} \right.$  | Gen.    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} en, \text{ of us, of you, of} \\ \text{them.} \end{array} \right.$   |
| Dat.      | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} me, \text{ to me.} \\ te, \text{ to thee.} \\ lui, \text{ to him, to her,} \\ \text{to it.} \\ se, \text{ to one's self, to} \\ \text{himself, to herself,} \\ \text{to itself.} \\ y, \text{ to it, there, thi-} \\ \text{ther.} \end{array} \right.$ | Dat.    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} nous, \text{ to us.} \\ vous, \text{ to you.} \\ leur, \text{ to them.} \\ se, \text{ to one's self, to} \\ \text{themselves.} \\ y, \text{ to them.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| Acc.      | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} me, \text{ me.} \\ te, \text{ thee.} \\ vous, \text{ you.} \\ le, \text{ him, it.} \\ la, \text{ her, it.} \\ en, \text{ some, any.} \end{array} \right.$  | Acc.    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} nous, \text{ us.} \\ vous, \text{ you.} \\ les, \text{ them.} \\ en, \text{ some, any.} \end{array} \right.$   |
| Abl.      | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} en, \text{ from me, from} \\ \text{thee, from you,} \\ \text{from him, from} \\ \text{her, from it.} \end{array} \right.$  | Abl.    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} en, \text{ from us, from you,} \\ \text{from them.} \end{array} \right.$   |

These pronouns constantly keep, in *French* verbs, the same places which the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, and vous*, have in the reflected ones; so that whosoever can conjugate a reflected verb, knows how to place the conjunctive pronouns in *French* verbs. Let one example serve for all; we always say,

*Nous la tenons.*

*nous ne la tenons pas.*

*la tenons-nous ?*

*ne la tenons-nous pas ?*

we keep it.

we don't keep it.

do we keep it ?

don't we keep it ?

*Exercises upon these Pronouns.*

My 1 wife 2 loves 3 me.

don't you love him much 1 ?

this 1 tree 2 is dead 3 ; the  
fro<sup>d</sup> 4 has killed 5 it.

1 *mon, ma, pl. mes, pron. adj.*

2 *femme, n. f. 3 aimer, v. 1.*

1 *beaucoup, adv.*

1 *ce, cet, cette, pl. ces, pron.*

*adj. 2 arbre, n. m. 3 mourir, v. 2, 4 gelée, n. f. 5*

*faire mourir, v. 5. 2.*

come

come 1 into 2 our 3 room  
4; open 5 it 6.

this house 1 is too 2 little 3;  
fell 4 it.

I tell 1 the truth 2, and you  
won't believe 3 me.

I see 1 him, and speak 2 to  
him every 3 day 3.

my aunt 1 is in her 2 room;  
don't disturb 3 her.

my sister 1 is in 2 the coun-  
try 3, I shall write 4 to  
her to 5 morrow 5.

do you speak 1 to me, sir 2?  
I speak to you.

I hate 1 him as 2 much as 2  
I love them.

answer 1 me; don't answer  
them.

you say 1 it; I believe 2 you.  
won't you believe us?

why do you believe him?

your 1 daughter 2 repents 3,  
forgive 4 her her fault 5.

If I repent, will you forgive  
me?

here 1 is 1 a fine 2 book 3,  
shew 4 it.

I shan't shew you my buck-  
les 1.

may the Lord 1 hear 2 you,  
and defend 3 you.

honour 1 your father 2 and  
mother 3, and obey 4  
them.

correct 1 your son 2, and he  
shall give 3 you rest 4.

here is an excellent 1 letter  
2, have you written 3 it?

1 *entrer*, v. 1. 2 *dans*, prep.  
3 *notre*, pl. *nos*, pron. adj.  
4 *chambre*, n. f. 5 *ouvrir*,  
v. 2. 6 *la*, pron.

1 *maison*, n. f. 2 *trop*, adv. 3  
*petit*, adj. 4 *vendre*, v. 6.

1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *vérité*, n. f.  
3 *croire*, v. 5.

1 *voir*, v. 3. 2 *parler*, v. 1.  
3 *tous les jours*.

1 *tante*, n. f. 2 *son*, *sa*, pl.  
*ses*, pron. adj. f. 3 *inter-*  
*rompre*, v. 6.

1 *sœur*, n. f. 2 *à*, prep. 3 *cam-*  
*pagne*, n. f. 4 *écrire*, v. 4.  
5 *demain*, adv.

1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *monseigneur*. n.  
m.

1 *haïr*, v. 2. 2 *autant que*,  
conj.

1 *répondre*, v. 6.

1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *croire*, v. 5.

1 *votre*, pl. *vos*, pron. adj. 2  
*fille*, n. f. 3 *se repentir*, v. 2. 4  
*pardonner*, v. 1. 5 *faute*, n. f.

1 *voici*, adv. 2 *beau*, *elle*,  
adj. 3 *livre*, n. m. 4 *mon-*  
*trer*, v. 1.

1 *boucle*, n. f.

1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *entendre*,  
v. 6. 3 *défendre*, v. 6.

1 *honorer*, v. 1. 2 *père*, n. m.  
3 *mère*, n. f. 4 *obéir*, v. 2.

1 *corriger*, v. 1. 2 *fils*, n. m.  
3 *donner*, v. 1. 4 *repos*, n. m.

1 *excellent*, adj. 2 *lettre*, n. f.  
3 *écrire*, v. 4. I send



I send 1 you some 2 reflections 3 upon 4 the education 5 of children 6.

accustom 1 your 2 sons 3 to 4 study 5, and 6 take 7 them with 8 you 9, when 10 you visit 11 honest 12 men 12.

I do 1 him the justice 2 which 3 he deserves 4.

do you think 1 us fit 2 for 3 the bar 3?

I am sorry 1 to 2 find 4 you 3 so 5 sick 6.

will 1 you have 1 pears 2, I have some at 3 your service 4.  
you wish 1 to see 2 my 3 garden 4, let us go 5 there to-day 6.

these 1 men 2 are not virtuous 3, don't receive 4 them into 5 your 6 family 7.

here 1 are 1 beautiful 2 verses 3, I have learnt 4 them by 5 heart 5.

this 1 book 2 is full 3 of good 4 things 5, read 6 it.

I am always 1 angry 2, when 3 I see them.

If you like 1 it, take 2 it:

If you hate 1 them, don't buy 2 them.

these stockings 1 are very 2 good 3, shall I buy them? have you done 1 it?

1 *envoyer*, v. 1. 2 *quelque*, adj. 3 *réflexion*, n. f. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *éducation*, n. f. 6 *enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m.

1 *accoutumer*, v. 1. 2 *votre*, pl. *vos*, pron. adj. 3 *fil*, n. m. 4 *à*, prep. 5 *étude*, n. f. 6 *&*, conj. 7 *prendre*, v. 6. 8 *avec*, prep. 9 *vous*, pron. nom. 10 *quand*, conj. 11 *rendre visite* à, v. 6. 12 *des bonnes gens*,

1 *rendre*, v. 6. 2 *justice*, n. f. 3 *que*, pron. 4 *mériter*, v. 1.

1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *propre*, adj. 3 *au barreau*.

1 *fâché*, adj. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *vous*, pron. conj. 4 *trouver*, v. 1. 5 *si*, adv. 6 *malade*, adj.

1 *vouloir*, v. 3. 2 *poire*, n. f. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *service*, n. m.

1 *souhaiter*, v. 1. 2 *voir*, v. 3. 3 *mon*, *ma*, pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 4 *jardin*, n. m. 5 *aller*, v. 1. 6 *aujourd'hui*, adv.

1 *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, pl. *ces*, pron. adj. *gens*, n. m. pl. 3 *vertu-eux*, *euse*, adj. 4 *recevoir*, v. 3. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *votre*, pron. adj. 7 *famille*, n. f.

1 *voici*, adv. 2 *b-eau*, *elle*, adj. 3 *vers*, n. m. 4 *apprendre*, v. 6. 5 *par cœur*.

1 *ce*, pron. adj. 2 *livre*, n. m. 3 *plein*, adj. 4 *b-on*, *onne*, adj. 5 *chose*, n. f. 6 *lire*, v. 4.

1 *toujours*, adv. 2 *fâché*, adj. 3 *quand*, conj.

1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *prendre*, v. 6.

1 *haïr*, v. 2. 2 *acheter*, v. 1.

1 *bas*, n. m. 2 *fort*, adv. 3 *b-on*, *onne*, adj.

1 *faire*, v. 5.

he

he was 1 about 1 some pictures 2, has he finished 3 them?

you owed 1 a hundred 2 guineas 3, have you paid 4 them?

you have seen 1 her, has she pleased 2 you?

you have not consulted 1 me.

have you not employed 1 him with 2 success 3?

1 *travailler à*, v. 1. 2 *tableau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 3 *finir*, v. 2.

1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *cent*, adj. 3 *guinée*, n. f. 4 *payer*, v. 1.

1 *voir*, v. 3. 2 *plaire*, v. 5.

1 *consulter*, v. 1.

1 *employer*, v. 1. 2 *avec*, prep. 3 *succès*, n. m.

*Remarks upon the conjunctive Pronouns.*

R U L E I.

When a Verb is attended with the Pronouns *me*, *nous*, *te*, or *vous*, and the Pronouns *le*, *la*, or *les*, the Pronouns *me*, *nous*, *te*, or *vous*, must be placed before the Pronouns *le*, *la*, or *les*, as,

*il me la donne.*

*il ne nous le dit pas.*

*te les a-t-il envoyés?*

*ne vous les a-t-il pas pris?*

he gives it to me.

he does not tell it us.

has he sent them to thee?

has he not taken them from you?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I know 1 good 2 news 3, I shall tell 4 them to you.

I have found 1 your 2 fan 3, do you give 4 it me?

you shall have my 1 snuff-box. 2, I promise 3 it to you.

I have fine 1 carps 2, I shall send 3 them to you.

he has married 1 his 2 grand 3 daughter 3 to 4 my brother 5, and he had destined 6 her for 7 a wife 8 for me.

he has sold 1 his 2 trees 3, and yet 4 he had promised them to us.

1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *bon, onne*, adj. 3 *nouvelle*, n. f. 4 *dire*, v. 4.

1 *trouver*, v. 1. 2 *votre*, pron. adj. 3 *éventail*, n. m. 4 *donner*, v. 1.

1 *mon, ma*, pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 2 *tabatière*, n. f. 3 *promettre*, v. 4.

1 *b-eau, elle*, adj. 2 *carpe*, n. f. 3 *envoyer*, v. 1.

1 *marier*, v. 1. 2 *sa*, pron. adj. f. 3 *petite fille*, n. f. 4 *à*, prep. 5 *frère*, n. m. 6 *destiner*, v. 1. 7 *pour*, prep. 8 *femme*, n. f.

1 *vendre*, v. 6. 2 *ses*, pron. adj. pl. 3 *arbre*, n. m. 4 *cependant*, conj.

you

you have my horses 1; when 1 *che-val*, plur. aux, n. m.  
 2 will you send 3 them 2 *quand*, adv. 3 *renvoyer*,  
 back 3 to me? v. 1.

## R U L E H.

The Datives *lui* and *leur*, must be placed after the Accusatives *me*, *nous*, *te* and *vous*, as

|                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>nous les lui donnons.</i>        | we give them to him.      |
| <i>nous ne la leur donnons pas.</i> | we don't give it to them. |
| <i>les lui donnons-nous?</i>        | do we give them to her?   |
| <i>ne la leur donnons-nous pas.</i> | don't we give it to them? |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| If they ask 1 your 2 protection 3, will you refuse 4 it to them?              | 1 <i>demand</i> , v. 1: 2 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 3 <i>protection</i> , n. f. 4 <i>refuser</i> , v. 1.  |
| you have his 1 money 2, give 3 it him back 3.                                 | 1 <i>son</i> , <i>sa</i> , pl. <i>ses</i> , pron. adj. 2 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 3 <i>rendre</i> , v. 6.  |
| as 1 soon as 1 I knew 2 the death 3 of their 4 uncle 5, I told 6 it them.     | 1 <i>aussi</i> : <i>ôt</i> <i>que</i> , conj. 2 <i>apprendre</i> , v. 6. 3 <i>mort</i> , n. f. 4 <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. 5 <i>oncle</i> , n. m. 6 <i>faire savoir</i> , v. 5. 3. |
| they ask 1 for 1 my 2 friendship 3, I grant 4 it them.                        | 1 <i>demand</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>mon</i> , <i>ma</i> , pl. <i>mes</i> , pron. adj. 3 <i>amitié</i> , n. f. 4 <i>accorder</i> , v. 1.  |
| If he lends 1 me his horses 2, I shall send 3 them back 3 to him to-morrow 4. | 1 <i>prêter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>chev-al</i> , pl. aux, n. m. 3 <i>renvoyer</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>demain</i> , adv.  |
| If he comes 1 to see 2 my flowers 3, I shall sell 4 them to him.              | 1 <i>venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>fleur</i> , n. f. 4 <i>vendre</i> , n. 6.   |

## R U L E III.

The Pronouns *y* and *en*, must be placed after the other conjunctive Pronouns, as,

|                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Je vous en donnerai.</i> | I shall give you some. |
| <i>prêtez m'en.</i>         | lend me some.          |
| <i>ne vous y fiez pas.</i>  | don't trust him.       |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| You have bought 1 cherries 2, give 3 us some. | 1 <i>Acheter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>cérise</i> , n. f. 3 <i>donner</i> , v. 1. |
| when 1 I have money 2, I give you some.       | 1 <i>quand</i> , conj. 2 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 3 <i>je</i>               |



If 1 you have wine 2, give them some.

my 1 sister 2, who 3 had fine 4 peaches 5 in 6 her 7 garden 8, gave me some.

when you gather 1 your 2 grapes 3, send 4 me some.

when he has fruit 1, he gives 2 me some.

If you have too 1 much 1 wealth 2, give me some.

have 1 you got 1 too 2 many 2 guineas 3, lend 4 me some.

that 1 place 2 is too 3 unwholesome 4, don't send me to it.

your arguments 1 are convincing 2, I submit 3 to them.

this 1 grove 2 has many 3 windings 4, one 5 might lose one's self therein 5.

he hates 1 the park 2, don't take 3 him there.

these 1 conditions 2 are too 3 hard 4, I don't submit 4 to them.

1 *si*, conj. 2 *vin*, n. m.

1 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 2 *sœur*, n. f. 3 *qui*, pron. 4 *b-eau*, elle, adj. 5 *pêche*, n. f. 6 *dans*, prep. 7 *son*, pron. adj. m. 8 *jardin*, n. m.

1 *cueillir*, v. 2. 2 *vous*, pron. adj. pl. 3 *raisin*, n. m. 4 *envoyer*, v. 1.

1 *fruit*, n. m. 2 *donner*, v. r.

1 *trop de*, adv. and prep. 2 *bien*, m.

1 *avoir*, v. 3. 2 *trop de*, 3 *guinée*, n. f. 4 *prêter*, v. 1.

1 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 2 *l-ieu*, pl. *ieux*, n. m. 3 *trop*, adv. 4 *mal-sain*, adj.

1 *argum-ent*, pl. *ens*, n. m. 2 *convainc-ant*, pl. m. *ans*, adj. 3 *se rendre*, v. 6.

1 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 2 *bocage*, n. m. 3 *plusieurs*, adj. pl. 4 *détour*, n. m. 5 *on pourroit s'y perdre*.

1 *haïr*, v. 2. 2 *parc*, n. m. 3 *mener*, v. 1.

1 *ces*, pron. adj. 2 *condition*, n. f. 3 *trop*, adv. 4 *dur*, adj. 4 *se soumettre*, v. 4.

#### R U L E IV.

When the Pronouns *y* and *en* meet together in a sentence, *y* must be placed first, as *je vous y en porterai*, I shall carry some for you there.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

You have 1 no 2 fish 3 at 4 Hampstead, my 5 brother 6 will carry 7 some for you there.

1 *avoir*, v. 3. 2 *point de*. 3 *poisson*, n. m. 4 *à*, prep. 5 *mon*, pron. adj. m. 6 *frère*, n. m. 7 *porter*, v. 1.

they

they had no tea 1 at their 2 1 *thé*, n. m. 2 *leur*, pron.  
country 3 house 3, I have adj. 3 *maison de campagne*,  
sent 4 them some thither. n. f. 4 *envoyer*, v. 1.

### Of French Moods.

The Infinitive denotes any thing indefinitely without affirming, as *manger*, to eat.

The Indicative shews or affirms, as *il mange*, he eats.

The Imperative commands, prays or exhorts, as *mangez*, eat; *ne mangez pas*, don't eat.

The Conjunctive comes after the conjunction *que*, that; or such like words following a verb, as *il faut que je fasse un discours*, I must make a speech.

### Use of the French Tenses.

#### Single Tenses of the Indicative.

##### The Present.

This Tense denotes that a thing is, or is not done at the time wherein we speak, as *je marche*, I walk; *vous ne parlez pas*, you don't speak; it answers to the English present of the Indicative, *I walk*, *I do walk*, *I am walking*.

##### Exercises upon this Tense.

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Wisdom 1 is the principal 2   | 1 <i>Sagesse</i> , n. f. 2 <i>princip-al</i> , pl.        |
| thing 3.                      | m. aux, adj. 3 <i>chose</i> , n. f.                       |
| wisdom dwells 1 with 2 pru-   | 1 <i>habiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>avec</i> , prep.            |
| dence 3.                      | 3 <i>prudence</i> , n. f.                                 |
| hatred 1 stirreth 2 up 2      | 1 <i>haine</i> , n. f. 2 <i>causer</i> , v. 1.            |
| strifes 3.                    | 3 <i>dispute</i> , n. f.                                  |
| the labour 1 of the righteous | 1 <i>trav-ail</i> , pl. aux, n. m. 2                      |
| 2 tendeth 3 to 4 life 5.      | <i>juste</i> , n. m. 3 <i>tendre</i> , v. 6.              |
|                               | 4 <i>à</i> , prep. 5 <i>vie</i> , n. f.                   |
| the tongue 1 of the just 2 is | 1 <i>langue</i> , n. f. 2 <i>juste</i> , n. m.            |
| as 3 choice 4 silver 5.       | 3 <i>comme</i> , conj. 4 <i>pur</i> , adj.                |
| the righteous is 1 more 1     | 5 <i>argent</i> , n. m.                                   |
| excellent 1 than 2 his 3      | 1 <i>vaut mieux</i> . 2 <i>que</i> , conj. 3 <i>son</i> , |
| neighbour 4.                  | pron. adj. m. 4 <i>voisin</i> , n. m.                     |

##### The Imperfect.

This Tense is used, 1st. to denote that the thing we speak of was present in a past time specified, as *j'étudiois*,  
quand

*quand il entra*, I was studying, when he came in. When thus used, it answers to the *English* imperfect, *I was walking*.

2dly, It is used to express the inclinations and qualities a person had, or what he at certain times did, in a time entirely past, as,

*Hérode étoit cruel.*

Herod was a cruel man.

*mon père faisoit la même chose.* my father did the same thing.

3dly, It is used after the conjunction *si*, to denote the thing that should be, that another thing might happen, as *je lirois, si j'avois des livres*, I would read, if I had books.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| I was sick 1, when 2 he came  | 1 <i>malade</i> , adj. 2 <i>quand</i> , conj.            |
| 3.                            | 3 <i>venir</i> , v. 2.                                   |
| was you not at 1 home 1,      | 1 <i>au logis</i> . 2 <i>partir</i> , v. 2.              |
| when he sat 2 out 2 ?         |  |
| my 1 father 2 was abroad 3,   | 1 <i>mon</i> , <i>ma</i> , pl. <i>mes</i> , pron. adj.   |
| when my mother 4 died 5.      | 2 <i>père</i> , n. m. 3 <i>en ville</i> . 4              |
|                               | <i>mere</i> , n. f. 5 <i>mourir</i> , v. 2.              |
| this 1 woman 2 was hand-      | 1 <i>cette</i> , adj. f. 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.          |
| some 3 in 4 her 5 youth 6.    | 3 <i>beau</i> , <i>elle</i> , adj. 4 <i>dans</i> ,       |
|                               | prep. 5 <i>son</i> , <i>sa</i> , plur. <i>ses</i> ,      |
|                               | pron. adj. 6 <i>jeunesse</i> , n. f.                     |
| Boadicea 1 was a warlike 3    | 1 <i>Boadicée</i> , n. f. 2 <i>princesse</i> ,           |
| princess 2.                   | n. f. 3 <i>guerrier</i> , adj.                           |
| the late 1 king 2 was a good  | 1 <i>feu</i> , adj. 2 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 3 <i>b-on</i> , |
| 3 prince 4.                   | <i>anne</i> , adj. 4 <i>prince</i> , n. m.               |
| if he loved 1 my sister 2, he | 1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>sœur</i> , n. f. 3           |
| would marry 3 her.            | <i>épouser</i> , v. 1.                                   |
| should he fear 2 me 1, he     | 1 <i>me</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>craindre</i> ,            |
| would do 3 his duty 4.        | v. 6. 3 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 4 <i>de-</i>                |
|                               | <i>voir</i> , n. m.                                      |
| if he went 1 there 2, he      | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>y</i> . 3 <i>punir</i> ,     |
| would be punished 3.          | v. 2.  |

*The Preterite.*

This Tense is used to denote a thing past, in such a manner, that nothing remains of the time wherein it happened, as *je fus malade l'année dernière*, I was sick last year.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| I went 1 yesterday 2 to 3 the | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>hier</i> , adv. 3 |
| play 4.                       | <i>à</i> , prep. 4 <i>comédie</i> , n. f.     |

we



|  |  |
|--|--|
| we danced 1 the 2 day before yesterday 2 during 3 three 4 hours 5. | 1 <i>danſer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>avant-hier</i> , adv. 3 <i>pendant</i> , prep. 4 <i>trois</i> , adj. 5 <i>heure</i> , n. f. |
| we ſupped 1 laſt 3 week 2 at 4 Ranelagh.                           | 1 <i>ſouper</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>ſemaine</i> , n. f. 3 <i>dernier</i> , adj. 4 <i>à</i> , prep.                              |
| Alexander 1 conquered 2 Darius.                                    | 1 <i>Alexandre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>vaincre</i> , v. 6.  |
| Cæſar 1 came 2, ſaw 3, and 4 conquered 5.                          | 1 <i>Céſar</i> , n. m. 2 <i>venir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 4 <i>&amp;</i> , conj. 5 <i>conquérir</i> , v. 2.    |
| Pyrrhus 1 defeated 2 the Romans 3.                                 | 1 <i>Pirrus</i> , n. m. 2 <i>défaire</i> , v. 5. 3 <i>Romain</i> , n. m.   |

### The Future.

This Tenſe denotes a thing which is to be in a time not yet come, as *je parlerai*, I ſhall ſpeak, and answers to the *Engliſh* future, *I ſhall* or *will* walk, &c.

### Exerciſes upon this Tenſe.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| The expectation 1 of the wicked 2 ſhall periſh 3.  | 1 <i>eſpérance</i> , n. f. 2 <i>méch-ant</i> , pl. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 3 <i>périr</i> , v. 2.  |
| wealth 1 gotten 2 by 3 vanity 4 ſhall be diminished 5.   | 1 <i>richèſſes</i> , n. f. plur. 2 <i>acquérir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>par</i> , prep. 4 <i>vanité</i> , n. f. 5 <i>diminuer</i> , v. 1.   |
| the houſe 1 of the wicked ſhall be overthrown 2.   | 1 <i>maïſon</i> , n. f. 2 <i>renverſer</i> , v. 1.  |
| a falſe 1 witneſs 2 ſhall not be unpuniſhed 3.   | 1 <i>faux</i> , <i>auſe</i> , adj. 2 <i>témoin</i> , n. m. 3 <i>impuni</i> , adj.   |
| the ſluggard 1 will not plow 2 by 3 reaſon of the cold 3; therefore 4 he ſhall beg 5 in 6 harveſt 7, and have nothing 8. | 1 <i>pareſſeux</i> , n. m. 2 <i>labourer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>à cauſe du froid</i> . 4 <i>c'eſt-pourquoi</i> , conj. 5 <i>mendier</i> , v. 1. 6 <i>pendant</i> , prep. 7 <i>moïſſon</i> , n. f. 8 <i>rien</i> , n. m. |
| will the counteſs 1 ſpeak 2 to the queen 3 in 4 my 5 behalf 6?   | 1 <i>comteſſe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>reine</i> , n. f. 4 <i>en</i> , prep. 5 <i>ma</i> , pron. adj. f. 6 <i>fauteur</i> , n. f.   |

### The Conditional.

The conditional or uncertain time denotes a thing that would, ſhould or could be in an unſpecified and uncertain time.

time, and depends of another uncertain thing, as *je ferois votre fortune, si j'étois roi*, I should make your fortune, if I were a king.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| My 1 father 2 would love 3<br>my sister 4, if 5 she were<br>more 6 modest 7. | 1 <i>mon, ma</i> , pl. <i>mes</i> , pron. adj.<br>2 <i>pere</i> , n. m. <i>aimer</i> , v. 1.<br>4 <i>soeur</i> , n. f. 5 <i>si</i> , conj. 6<br><i>plus</i> , adv. 7 <i>modeste</i> , adj.  |
| I would marry 2 her 1, if she<br>were handsome 3.                            | 1 <i>la</i> , pron. conj. f. 2 <i>épouser</i> ,<br>v. 1. 3 <i>b-eau</i> , <i>elle</i> , adj.  |
| I would not go 1 to 2 Lon-<br>don 3, if I were in 4 your<br>5 place 6.       | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à</i> , prep. 3<br><i>Londres</i> , n. m. 4 <i>à</i> , prep.<br>5 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 6 <i>place</i> ,<br>n. f.   |
| I would give 2 you 1 a place<br>3, if you had done 4 your<br>duty 5.         | 1 <i>vous</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>donner</i> ,<br>v. 1. 3 <i>poste</i> , n. m. 4 <i>faire</i> ,<br>v. 5. 5 <i>devoir</i> , n. m.   |
| he would be 1 thankful 2, if<br>3 you did 5 him 4 that 6<br>service 7.       | 1 <i>être</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>reconnoissant</i> ,<br>adj. 3 <i>si</i> , conj. 4 <i>lui</i> , pron.<br>conj. 5 <i>rendre</i> , v. 6. 6 <i>ce</i> ,<br>pron. adj. m. 7 <i>service</i> ,<br>n. m. |

*Compounds of the Indicative.*

*The First Compound.*

This Tense denotes a thing that is past, but in such a manner, that a part still remains of the time wherein that thing has happened, as *j'ai perdu cette année-ci cent pistoles*, I have lost hundred pistoles this year. *J'ai perdu*, denotes a thing that is past; but it has happened this year; and there still remains a part of this year to slide away.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| How 1 many 1 guineas 2<br>have you won 3 to 4 day<br>4? | 1 <i>combien</i> , adv. 2 <i>guinée</i> , n. f.<br>3 <i>gagner</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>aujour-<br/>d'hui</i> , adv.                          |
| I have read 1 Telemachus 2<br>this 3 week 4.            | 1 <i>lire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>Télémaque</i> , n.<br>m. 3 <i>ce, cet, cette</i> , pl. <i>ces</i> ,<br>pron. adj. 4 <i>semaine</i> , n. f. |

I have

- I have seen 1 the prince 2 twice 3 this month 4.  
 the king 1 of Prussia 2 has defeated 3 the French 4 and 5 Austrians 6 this year 7.  
 our 1 age 2 has produced 3 great 4 poets 5.
- 1 voir, v. 3. 2 prince, n. m. 3 deux fois. 4 mois, n. m. 1 roi, n. m. 2 Prusse, n. f. 3 battre, v. 4. 4 François, n. m. 5 &, conj. 6 Autrichien, n. m. 7 année, n. f. 1 notre, pron. adj. 2 siècle, n. m. 3 produire, v. 4. 4 grand, adj. 4 poëte, n. m.

*Remarks upon the Preterite and first Compound.*

When the time wherein a thing has happened is entirely past, and is not specified, we may indifferently use these two Tenses, as *Alexandre fus*, or *a été un grand général*. Alexander was, or has been a great general.

*Exercises wherein the Preterite or first Compound may be indifferently used.*

- The duke 1 of Marlborough has often 2 beaten 3 the French 4.  
 the fruits 1 of the earth 2 have been the food 3 of the first 4 men 5.  
 Christ 1 has driven 2 the traders 3 out 4 of the temple 4.  
 water 1 was changed 2 into 3 wine 4 at 5 the wedding of Cana 5.  
 Joseph has interpreted 1 Pharaoh's 3 dreams 2.  
 Cain 1 killed 2 his 3 brother 4 Abel.
- 1 duc, n. m. 2 souvent, adv. 3 battre, v. 4. 4 François, n. m. 1 fruit, n. m. 2 terre, n. f. 3 nourriture, n. f. 4 premier, adj. 5 homme, n. m. 1 Jésus-Christ, n. m. 2 chasser, v. 1. 3 marchand, n. m. 4 du temple. 1 eau, pl. eaux, n. f. 2 changer, v. 1. 3 en, prep. 4 vin, n. m. 5 aux noces de Cana. 1 interpréter, v. 1. 2 songe, n. m. 3 Pharaon, n. m. 1 Caïn, n. m. 2 tuer, v. 1. 3 son, pron. adj. m. 4 frère, n. m.

*The Second Compound.*

This Tense is used to denote, that, in a certain specified time that is past, the thing spoken of was also past, as *j'avois fait mon thème, quand vous entrâtes*, I had done my exercise, when you came in.



*Exercises upon this Tense.*

The King 1 had ended 2 his  
3 speech 4, when 5 I en-  
tered 6 into 7 the house 8  
of lords 9.

you had sold 1 your 2 estate  
3, when I married 4.

the captain 1 had paid 2 his  
3 debts 4, when he sat 5  
out 5.

the duke 1 had left 2 the  
army 3 when we took 4  
Tournay 5.

the count 1 had bought 2 an  
estate 3, when 4 he died  
5.

1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *finir*, v. 2. 3 *son*,  
sa, pl. ses, pron. adj. 4 *dis-*  
*cours*, n. m. 5 *quand*, adv. 6  
*entrer*, v. 1. 7 *dans*, prep. 8  
*chambre*, n. f. 9 *pair*, n. m.

1 *vendre*, v. 6. 2 *votre*, pl.  
*vos*, pron. adj. 3 *bien*, n.  
m. 4 *se marier*, v. 1.

1 *capitaine*, n. m. 2 *payer*,  
v. 1. 3 *ses*, pron. adj. 4  
*dette*, n. f. 5 *partir*, v. 2.

1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *quitter*, v. 1.  
3 *armée*, n. f. 4 *prendre*,  
v. 6. 5 *Tournai*, n. m.

1 *comte*, n. m. 2 *acheter*, v.  
1. 3 *bien*, n. m. 4 *quand*,  
adv. 5 *mourir*, v. 2.

*The Third Compound.*

This Tense, like the Preterite, expresses a thing quite  
past, and is commonly construed with

*quand*, when.

*lorsque*, when.

*dèsque*, as soon as.

as *quand j'eus parlé*, *chacun se leva*; when I had spoken  
every one got up.

*aussitôtque*, as soon as.

*aprèsque*, when.

*àpeine*, scarce.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

When he had finished 1 his 2  
history 3, she began 4 her  
5 own 5.

when the king 1 was come 2,  
they began 3 the play 4.

as soon as Cæsar 1 was en-  
tered 2 into 3 the senate 4  
house 4, the conspirators 5  
fell 6 upon 7 him 8 and  
9 killed 11 him 10.

1 *finir*, v. 2. 2 *son*, pron. adj.  
3 *histoire*, n. f. 4 *commen-*  
*cer*, v. 1. 5 *la sienne*.

1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *venir*, v. 2. 3  
*commencer*, v. 1. 4 *comédie*,  
n. f.

1 *César*, n. m. 2 *entrer*, v. 1.  
3 *dans*, prep. 4 *sénat*, n. m.  
5 *conjuré*, n. m. 6 *tomber*,  
v. 1. 7 *sur*, prep. 8 *lui*,  
pron. nom. 9 *et*, conj. 10,  
*le*, pron. conj. 11 *tuer*, v. 1.

scarce

scarce was the queen 1 gone 1 *reine*, n. f. 2 *sortir*, v. 2. 3  
 2 out 2, but 3 I came 4 *que*. 4 *entrer*, v. 1.  
 in 4.

*The Fourth Compound.*

This Tense denotes a time to come, wherein the thing spoken of will be over, as *j'aurai fini mon ouvrage, quand vous commencerez le vôtre*, I shall have finished my work, when you begin your's.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

I shall have dined 1, when 2 1 *diner*, v. 1. 2 *quand*, adv.  
 you come 3. 3 *venir*, v. 2.  
 when I have done 1 my 2 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *ma*, pron.  
 task 3, I shall go 4 to 5 adj. f. 3 *tâche*, n. f. 4 *aller*,  
 my brother's 5. v. 1. 5 *chez mon frère*.  
 I shall study 1 my lesson 2, 1 *étudier*, v. 1. 2 *leçon*, n. f.  
 when I have finished 3 my 3 *finir*, v. 2. 4 *mon*, pron.  
 exercise 4. adj. m. 5 *thème*, n. m.  
 when I have written 1 my 2 1 *écrire*, v. 4. 2 *mes*, pron.  
 letters 3, I shall set 4 out adj. pl. 3 *lettre*, n. f. 4  
 4 for 5 my country- *partir*, v. 2. 5 *pour*, prep.  
 house 6. 6 *maison de campagne*, n. f.  
 I shall pay 2 you 1, when 1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *payer*,  
 you have done 3 my work v. 1. 3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *ou-*  
 4. *vrage*, n. m.

*The Fifth Compound.*

This Tense denotes a thing that would, could, or should have happened, had it not been for some other conditional thing, as *vous auriez réussi, si vous aviez suivi mon conseil*, you would have succeeded, if you had followed my advice.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

The prince 1 would have 1 *prince*, n. m. 2 *le*, pron.  
 preferred 3 him 2, if 4 he conj. 3 *avancer*, v. 1. 4  
 had behaved 5 better 6. *si*, conj. 5 *se comporter*, v.  
 1. 6 *mieux*, adv.  
 you would have won 1, if 1 *gagner*, v. 1. 2 *jouer*, v. 1.  
 you had played 2.  
 his 1 mistress 2 would not 1 *sa*, pron. conj. f. 2 *maî-*  
 have forgiven 4 him 3, had *treffe*, n. f. 3 *lui*, pron. conj.  
 5 she

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 5 she not been 5 a good 6 woman 7.   | 4 pardonner, v. 1. 5 si elle n'avoit point été. 6 b-on, onne, adj. 7 femme, n. f.  |
| he would have finished 1 his 2 business 3, if 4 you had not interrupted 5 him. | 1 finir, v. 2. 2 son, pron. adj. 3 affaire, n. f. 4 si, conj. 5 interrompre, v. 6. |

*Single Tenses of the Conjunctive.*

*The Present.*

This Tense is used, when the Verb, coming before it, is either in the present or future, as

- |                                      |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Croyez vous qu'ils viennent ?</i> | Do you think that they will come ? |
| <i>il faudra que je le fasse.</i>    | I shall be obliged to do it.       |

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Do they think 1 that 2 the soldiers 3 will do 4 their 5 duty 6 ? | 1 croire, v. 5. 2 que, conj. 3 soldat, n. m. 4 faire, v. 4. 5 leur, pron. adj. 6 devoir, n. m. |
| we must 1 come 2 to 2 a resolution 3.                            | 1 Il faut, v. imp. 3. 2 prendre, v. 6. 3 résolution, n. f.                                     |
| you must repeat 1 your 2 lesson 3.                               | 1 répéter, v. 1. 2 votre, pron. adj. 3 leçon, n. f.  |
| they must write 1 their letters 2.                               | 1 écrire, v. 4. 2 lettre, n. f.  |
| you 1 will be obliged 1 to sell 2 your estate 3.                 | 1 il faudra. 2 vendre, v. 6. 3 bien, n. m.   |
| will they not be obliged to help 2 him 1 ?                       | 1 le, pron. conj. 2 secourir, v. 2.  |

*The Preterite.*

This Tense is used, when the Verb, coming before it, is in any one of the past, or conditional Tenses, as

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Je voulois qu'il entrât.</i>                | I was willing he should enter.      |
| <i>il ordonna qu'on le mît à mort.</i>         | he ordered him to be put to death.  |
| <i>elle voudroit que vous y allassiez.</i>     | she wished you would go there.      |
| <i>j'ai ordonné qu'on le laissât aller.</i>    | I have commanded to let him go.     |
| <i>vous aviez empêché qu'on ne m'insultât.</i> | you had hindered my being insulted. |



*auriez-vous voulu qu'il accusât son frère?*

would you have had him accuse his brother?

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

We were 1 not willing 1 that  
2 he should expose 3 his 4  
life 5.

would 1 you have him 1 run  
2 the risk 3 of 4 losing 4  
his 5 estate 6?

he ordered 1 them 2 to be  
hanged 3 immediately 4.

I 1 wish 1 you would study  
2 more 3 than 4 you 5 do  
5.

we 1 wish 1 your 2 master 3  
would teach 5 you 4 the  
first 6 principles 7 of the  
French 9 tongue 8.

I have ordered him 1 to be  
punished 2.

I have hindered 1 your 2  
being imposed upon 2.

would 1 you have had 1 us  
lose 2 our 3 time 4?

1 *Vouloir*, v. 3. 2 *que*, conj.  
3 *exposer*, v. 1. 4 *sa*, pron.  
adj. f. 5 *vie*, n. f.

1 *voudriez vous qu'il*. 2 *courir*, v. 2. 3 *risque*, n. m. 4  
*de perdre*. 5 *son*, pron. adj.  
m. 6 *bien*, n. m.

1 *ordonner*, v. 1. 2 *les*, pron.  
conj. pl. 3 *pendre*, v. 6. 4  
*sur-le-champ*, adv.

1 *je voudrois*. 2 *étudier*, v. 1.  
3 *plus*, adv. 4 *que*, conj. 5  
*vous ne faites*.

1 *nous voudrions*. 2 *votre*, pron.  
adj. 3 *maître*, n. m. 4  
*vous*, pron. conj. 5 *ensei-*  
*gner*, v. 1. 6 *premier*, adj.  
7 *principe*, n. m. 8 *langue*,  
n. f. 9 *François*, adj.

1 *le* pron. conj. m. 2. *punir*,  
v. 2.

1 *empêcher*, v. 1. 2 *qu'on ne*  
*vous trompât*.

1 *auriez vous voulu*. 2 *perdre*,  
v. 4. 3 *notre*, pron. adj. 4  
*tems*, n. m.

*Compounds of the Conjunctive.*

*The first Compound.*

This Tense is used, when the Verb, coming before it is either in the present, first compound, or future of the indicative, as

*Je doute qu'aucun philosophe ait jamais connu l'origine des vents.*

I doubt whether any of the philosophers ever knew the cause of the winds.

*il a fallu que j'aie sollicité mes juges.*

*je n'entreprendrai rien que je n'aie consulté mon avocat.*

I have been obliged to wait upon my judges.

I shall undertake nothing before I have consulted my lawyer.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

Do you doubt 1 his 2 having behaved well 2 ?

I don't doubt but 1 he has done 2 his 3 duty 4.

I have 1 been 1 obliged 1 to reconcile 3 them 2.

I shall say 1 nothing 2 before 3 you have spoken 3.

I shall not forgive 2 you 1 before you have asked 3 pardon 4.

1 *Douter*, v. 1. 2 *qu'il se soit bien comporté*.

1 *que*, conj. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *son*, pron. adj. m. 4 *devoir*, n. m.

1 *il a fallu*, v. imp. 3. 2 *les*, pron. conj. pl. 3 *reconcilier*, v. 1.

1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *rien*, n. m. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *parler*, v. 1.

1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *pardonner*, v. 1. 3 *demander*, v. 1. 4 *pardon*, n. m.

*The Second Compound.*

This Tense is used after the imperfect, preterite, conditional, and the first, second, and fifth Compounds, as

*J'ignorois, que vous eussiez appris l'Arithmétique.*

*il ne crut pas qu'on lui eût tendu un piège.*

*vous trouveriez mauvais, que nous eussions contrevenu à vos ordres.*

*il n'a pas cru qu'on lui en eût imposé.*

*nous avions ignoré que le Roi vous eût accordé cette grâce.*

*vous auriez trouvé mauvais, que nous eussions contrevenu à vos ordres.*

I did not know that you had learned Arithmetic.

he did not believe that they had laid a snare for him.

you would take it ill, if we had disobeyed your orders.

he did not believe that they had imposed upon him.

we did not know that the King had granted you that favour.

you would have taken it ill, if we had disobeyed your orders.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- I did not know 1 that 2 you  
had taught 3 philosophy  
4. 1 *Savoir*, v. 3. 2 *que*, conj.  
3 *enseigner*, v. 1. 4 *philos-*  
*sophie*, n. f.
- he did not believe 1 that they  
had discovered 2 where 3  
he was. 1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *découvrir*,  
v. 2. 3 *où*, adv.
- I should have taken 1 it ill  
1, if 2 you had not assisted  
3 your 4 countryman 5. 1 *trouver mauvais*, v. 1. and  
adj. 2 *que*, conj. 3 *assister*,  
v. 1. 4 *votre*, pron. adj. 5  
*compatriote*, n. m.
- we did not believe that he  
had done 2 it 1. 1 *le* or *la*, pron. conj. 2 *faire*,  
v. 5.
- we did not know that the  
Dutchess 1 had rewarded  
2 that 3 lady 4. 1 *Duchesse*, n. f. 2 *récom-*  
*penser*, v. 1. 3 *cette*, pron.  
adj. f. 4 *dame*, n. f.
- we should have taken it ill,  
if you had not improved  
1 your 2 mind 3. 1 *orner*, v. 1. 2 *votre*, pron.  
adj. 3 *esprit*, n. m.

The French and English imperative denoting the same thing, and answering exactly to each other, there need no remarks upon them.

*Tenses of the Infinitive.**The Present.*

The Present of the Infinitive denotes the present, past, and future time, as

*Vous me voyez danser.*

*vous m'avez entendu parler.*

*vous m'entendrez chanter.*

You see me dance,

you have heard me speak.

you will hear me sing.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- Are 1 you willing 1 to go 2  
to 3 York 4? 1 *Vouloir*, v. 3. 2 *aller*, v. 1.  
3 *à*, prep. 4 *Yorke*, n. m.
- can 1 you speak 2 French 3? 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *parler*, v. 1.  
3 *François*, n. m.
- we expect 1 to have 2 a good  
3 crop 4. 1 *compter*, v. 1. 2 *avoir*, v.  
3. 3 *b-on, onne*, adj. 4 *re-*  
*colte*, n. f.

I am



|   |   |
|---|---|
| I am 1 to receive 2 my 3 rents 4.               | 1 <i>dé-voir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>mes</i> , pron. adj. pl. 4 <i>rente</i> , n. f. |
| we are to dance 1 this 2 evening 3.             | 1 <i>danſer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. m. 3 <i>ſoir</i> , n. m.                               |
| be 1 pleased 1 to grant 3 me 2 a favour 4.      | 1 <i>daigner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>me</i> , pron. conj. 3 <i>accorder</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>ſaveur</i> , n. f.    |
| have you ſeen 2 him 1 write 3 yeſterday 4?      | 1 <i>le</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>écrire</i> , v. 4. 4 <i>hier</i> , adv.            |
| have you not heard 1 him recite 2 the verſes 3? | 1 <i>entendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>réciter</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>vers</i> , n. m.                                |
| you will ſee us 1 go 2 to church 3.             | 1 <i>nous</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>église</i> , n. f.                              |

*Compounds of the Preſent.*

This tenſe denotes a time paſt, relatively to the tenſe of the verb coming before it, as

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Vous paroiffez avoir perdu votre argent.</i> | You look as if you had loſt your money. |
| <i>j'ai cru être arrivé trop tard.</i>          | I thought I was come too late.          |

*Exerciſes upon this Tenſe.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| They look 1 as 2 if they had a mind 2 to 3 ſucceed 3 in 4 their 5 undertakings 6. | 1 <i>Parôître</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>avoir envie</i> , 3 <i>de réuſſir</i> . 4 <i>dans</i> , prep. 5 <i>leur</i> , pron. adj. 6 <i>entreprise</i> , n. f. |
| ſhe pretends 1 that ſhe has loſt 2 her 3 money 4 at 5 play 5.                     | 1 <i>prétendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>perdre</i> , v. 4. 3 <i>ſon</i> , pron. adj. m. 4 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 5 <i>au jeu</i> .                           |
| he thought 1 he was gone 2 out 2 too 3 ſoon 4.                                    | 1 <i>croire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>ſortir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>trop</i> , adv. 4 <i>tôt</i> , adv.  |

*Uſe of the Participle Active.*

You muſt obſerve, firſt, that this Participle is always undeclined, as

|                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Un homme craignant Dieu.</i>   | A man fearing God.         |
| <i>une femme aimant ſon mari.</i> | a wife loving her huſband. |

Secondly, that when it denotes a paſt time, it takes a Participle paſſive after it, as *ayant cherché*, having ſought.

Thirdly, that when *en* is placed before it, this word ſignifies *as*, *when*, or *whilſt*, as

*En me parlant, il pensoit à autre chose.* When or whilst he was speaking to me, he was thinking of other things.  
*je vous le dirai, en allant.* I shall tell it you, as we go.

*Exercises upon this Participle.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| They 1 are 1 people 2 fearing 3 God 4.   | 1 <i>Ce sont.</i> 2 <i>gens</i> , n. m. pl. 3 <i>craindre</i> , v. 6. 4 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.   |
| philosophers 1, knowing 2 the truth 3, ought 4 not to conceal 6 it 5.              | 1 <i>philosophe</i> , n. m. 2 <i>connoître</i> , v. 5. 3 <i>vérité</i> , n. f. 4 <i>devoir</i> , v. 3. 5 <i>la</i> , pron. conj. f. 6 <i>cacher</i> , v. 1.             |
| Alexander 1, having defeated 2 Darius, seized 3 upon 3 his 4 kingdom 5.            | 1 <i>Alexandre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>défaire</i> , v. 5. 3. <i>se rendre maître de</i> , v. 6. 4 <i>son</i> , pron. adj. m. 5 <i>royaume</i> , n. m.                         |
| the Prince 1, having given 2 some necessary 4 orders 3, fat 5 out 5 for 6 Italy 7. | 1 <i>Prince</i> , n. m. 2 <i>donner</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>ordre</i> , n. m. 4 <i>nécessaire</i> , adj. 5 <i>partir</i> , v. 2. 6 <i>pour</i> , prep. 7 <i>Italie</i> , n. f. |
| he spoke 2 to me 1 several 3 times 4, as he walked 5.                              | 1 <i>me</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>plusieurs</i> , adj. plur. m. and f. 4 <i>fois</i> , n. f. 5 <i>marcher</i> , v. 1.                              |
| he died 1, as he was speaking 2.   | 1 <i>mourir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>parler</i> , v. 1.   |

*Use of the Participle Passive.*

This Participle is sometimes declined, and sometimes undeclined.

It is declined, first, in the verbs passive, as

|                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Il est chéri.</i>       | He is beloved.    |
| <i>elle est chérie.</i>    | she is beloved.   |
| <i>nous sommes chéris.</i> | we are beloved.   |
| <i>elles sont chéries.</i> | they are beloved. |

Secondly, in the compounds of the reflected verbs, as

|                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Il s'est caché.</i>          | He has hid himself.       |
| <i>elle s'est cachée.</i>       | she has hid herself.      |
| <i>nous nous sommes cachés.</i> | we have hid ourselves.    |
| <i>elles se sont cachées.</i>   | they have hid themselves. |

Thirdly,

Thirdly, after the Verb *avoir*, when this verb has a pronoun in the accusative before it, as

*Les vers que j'ai faits, je vous les donne.* I give you the verses which I have made.

Fourthly, after the same verb *avoir*, if even its nominative comes after this participle, as

*La peine que les savans ont prise. } The trouble which the learn-  
la peine qu'on prise les savans. }* ed have taken.

It is undeclined, first, after the Verb *avoir*, when this verb has no pronoun in the accusative before it, as

*J'ai lu Gil-Blas.* I have read Gil-Blas.  
*vous avez fait votre thème.* you have done your exercise.

Secondly, when it governs, and is placed before an infinitive without a preposition between them, as

*Les femmes que j'ai entendu chanter.* The women whom I heard sing.

Thirdly, after a Verb conjugated in its compounds with the Verb *être*, and governing a conjunctive pronoun in the dative, as

*Elle s'est prescrit cette règle.* She has made this her rule.

Fourthly, when in the same sentence it is followed by *que* or *qui*, as

*Les raisons qu'il a cru que j'approuvois.* The reasons which he thought I approved of.

Fifthly, in the Verbs impersonal, as

*La pluie qu'il a fait.* The rain which has fallen.

*Exercises upon the declined Participle Passive.*

Having already given several Exercises upon this Participle, when I treated of the passive and reflected Verbs, I shall now content myself with setting down here a few Exercises upon the third Remark.

The peace 1, which 2 we 1 *paix*, n. f. 2 *que*, pron. 3  
have made I disapprove 3. *désapprouver*, v. 1.  
the epigram 1 which he has 1 *épigramme*, n. f. 2 *faire*, v.  
made 2 I 3 find 3 in 4 5. 3 *je la trouve*. 4 *entre*,  
every 6 body's 6 hands 5. prep. 5 *main*, n. f. 6. *de tout*  
*le monde*.



- the horses 1, which he has bought 2, I find very 3 beautiful 4.
- the sums 1, which I have borrowed 2, I return 3 back 3.
- the cause 1, which I have defended 2, I forsake 3.
- do you know 1 the trouble 2, which 3 my 5 brother 6 has taken 4, to 7 serve you 7?
- 1 chev-al, pl. aux, n. m. 2 acheter, v. 1. 3 très, adv. 4 b-eau, elle, pl. m. eaux, adj. 1 somme, n. f. 2 emprunter, v. 1. 3 rendre, v. 6. 1 cause, n. f. 2 défendre, v. 6. 3 abandonner, v. 1. 1 savoir, v. 3. 2 peine, n. f. 3 que, pron. 4 prendre, v. 6. 5 mon, pron. adj. m. 6 frère, n. m. 7 pour vous servir.

*Exercises upon the undeclined Participle Passive.*

- have you not yet 1 read 2 the history 3 of England 4.
- here 1 is 1 the child 2 whom 3 I have heard 4 speak 5.
- I have made 1 several 2 rules 3 to 1 myself 1.
- I have read the books 1, which 2 you thought 3 I approved 4 of 4.
- the wind 1, which 2 has blown 2 for 3 two days 3, has unrooted 4 several trees 5.
- 1 Encore, adv. 2 lire, v. 4. 3 histoire, n. f. 4 Angleterre, n. f. 1 voici, adv. 2 enfant, pl. ans, n. m. 3 que. 4 entendre, v. 6. 5 parler, v. 1. 1 se prescrire, v. 4. 2 plusieurs, adj. plur. m. and f. 3 règle, n. f. 1 livre, n. m. 2 que. 3 croire, v. 5. 4 approuver, v. 1. 1 vent, n. m. 2 qu'il a fait. 3 pendant deux jours. 4 déraciner, v. 1. 5 arbre, n. m.

## Of A D V E R B S.

What has been said before, concerning the undeclined Participles, is to be understood only of such as are met with in the foregoing Exercises; I must now treat of them in a more particular manner.

First, the French Adverbs may be divided into eight classes, viz. Adverbs of manner, order, place, distance, time, quantity, distribution, and motive.

### *Adverbs of Manner.*

The Adverbs of manner are formed from their respective adjectives, by adding *ment* after each of them, as

*Fortement,*

*Fortement*, strongly.  
*tendrement*, tenderly.  
*promptement*, quickly.

*Aisément*, easily.  
*hardiment*, boldly.  
*absolument*, absolutely.

And several others, to which we must add,

*En vain*, in vain.  
*exprès*, purposely.  
*mal*, badly.

*bien*, well.  
*ainsi*, thus.  
*demême*, so, thus.

The Adverbs of manner are compared, like adjectives, with the words

*Plus*, more.  
*le plus*, the most.  
*aussi*, as.  
*si*, so.

*Moins*, less.  
*très*, very.  
*fort*, very.

But the Adverb *mieux*, better, is the comparative of the adverb *bien*, well; and *pis*, worse, is that of *mal*, badly.

The Adverbs of manner are seldom placed before any other adverbs, but sometimes take adverbs of quantity before them, as

*Cet homme traite bien fièrement ses inférieurs.*  
*vous parlez peu décemment des femmes.*

This man uses his inferiors in a very proud manner.  
 you speak with little decency of women.

These Adverbs are placed first, before the adjectives, as

*Parfaitement belle.*

Perfectly handsome.

Secondly, after the single Tenses of the Verbs, as

*Il parle modestement de lui-même.*

He speaks modestly of himself.

Thirdly, in the Compounds, between the auxiliary and participle, as

*Vous vous êtes bien comporté.*

You have behaved well.

*Exercices upon these Adverbs.*

She behaves 1 more politely  
 2 than 3 her 4 sister 5.

1 *se comporter*, v. 1. 2 *poliment*, adv. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *sa*, pron. adj. f. 5 *sœur*, n. f.

he speaks 1 more judiciously  
 2 than the other 3.

1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *sensément*, adv. 3 *autre*, pron. nom.

your 1 country-man 2 has  
 served 4 me 3 the most  
 faithfully 5 in 6 the world  
 6.

1 *votre*, pron. adj. 2 *compatriote*, n. m. 3 *me*, pron. conj. 4 *servir*, v. 2. 5 *fidèlement*, adv. 6 *du monde*.

F 5

he

he composes 1 verses 2 as easily 3 as 4 Voltaire.

don't behave so impudently 1.

we are lodged 1 less conveniently 2 than 3 you 4.

he has served 1 his 2 King 3 very faithfully 4.

you don't work 1 better than I 2.

you speak 1 very 2 indifferently 3.

this 1 lady 2 is perfectly 3, handsome 4, and 5 speaks 6 modestly 7 of 8 herself 8.

I have strongly 1 opposed 2 his 3 designs 4.

1 *composer*, v. 1. 2 *vers*, n. m. 3 *facilement*, adv. 4 *que*, conj.

1 *effrontément*, adv.

1 *loger*, v. 1. 2 *commôdément*, adv. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *vous*, pron. nom.

1 *servir*, v. 2. 2 *son*, pron. adj. m. 3 *Roi*, n. m. 4 *fidèlement*, adv.

1 *travailler*, v. 1. 2 *moi*, pron. nom.

1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *bien*, adv. 3 *imprudemment*, adv.

1 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 2 *dame*, n. f. 3 *parfaitement*, adv. 4 *b-eau*, elle, adj. 5 *et*, conj. 6 *parler*, v. 1. 7 *modestement*, adv. 8 *d'elle-même*.

1 *fortement*, adv. 2 *s'opposer à*, v. 1. 3 *ses*, pron. adj. pl. 4 *desssein*, n. m.

### Adverbs of Order.

These Adverbs being

*Premièrement*, first.

*secondement*, secondly.

*troisièmement*, thirdly.

*quatrièmement*, fourthly, &c.

*d'abord*, at first.

*après*, after.

*Devant*, before.

*derrière*, behind.

*ensuite*, afterwards, then.

*auparavant*, before.

*enfin*, at last.

are never used with Adjectives, and are placed before or after the Verb, as the smoothness of the sentence requires it. When they come after it, they are not to be separated from it; whereas, when they come before it, they may be placed at the head of the sentence. All this will appear by the following examples:

*Parlez d'abord à mon frère; ensuite je lui dirai ce que je pense.*

*Dieu créa d'abord l'homme ensuite il créa la femme.*

Speak first to my brother, I shall tell him afterwards what I think.

God created the man first, and afterwards he created the woman.

Ex-



*Exercises upon those Adverbs.*

We must 1 first do 2 our 3 duty 4; secondly, we 5 must only take 5 lawful 7 pleasures 6.

You ought 1 first to love 2 God 3 above 4 all 5 things 6; secondly, you ought to love your 7 neighbour 8, as 9 yourself 10.

First, the King 1 is not absolute 2 in 3 England 4; secondly, we have the happiness 5 to live 6 under 7 a good 8 prince 9.

Our 1 eyes 2 admire 3 at first beauty 4, then our senses 5 covet 7 it 6, and 8 our heart 9 gives 11 itself over 11 to 10 it 10 afterwards.

1 *Il faut*, v. imp. 3. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *notre*, pron. adj. 4 *devoir*, n. m. 5 *nous ne devons prendre que*. 6 *plaisir*, n. m. 7 *permis*, adj.

1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *aimer*, v. 1. 3 *Dieu*, n. m. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *tout*, adj. 6 *chose*, n. f. 7 *votre*, pron. adj. 8 *prochain*, n. m. 9 *comme*, conj. 10 *vous-même*, pron. nom.

1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *absolu*, adj. 3 *en*, prep. 4 *Angleterre*, n. f. 5 *bonheur*, n. m. 6 *vivre*, v. 4. 7 *sous*, prep. 8 *b-on*, onne, adj. 9 *prince*, n. m.

1 *notre*, pl. nos, pron. adj. 2 *œil*, pl. yeux, n. m. 3 *admirer*, v. 1. 4 *beauté*, n. f. 5 *sens*, n. m. 6 *la*, pron. conj. f. 7 *désirer*, v. 1. 8 *Et*, conj. 9 *cœur*, n. m. 10 *y*, pron. conj. 11 *se livrer*, v. 1.

*Adverbs of Place.*

These Adverbs are

*Où*, where.

*ici*, here.

*là*, there.

*dedans*, within.

*déhors*, without, out.

*dessus*, upon.

*Dessous*, under.

*partout*, every where.

*autour*, round.

*deçà* on this side.

*delà*, off, from thence.

*au-delà*, beyond.

You must observe, first, that they are placed after the Verb, except *où*, that comes before it, as

*Je suis ici.*

*où allez vous?*

I am here.

where are you going?

Secondly, that except *partout* and *autour*, they may be governed by prepositions, as

*Allez par ici.*

*passer par là.*

Go this way.

pass that way.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Where shall we go 1?        | 1 <i>Aller</i> , v. 1.                 |
| we are 1 here.              | 1 <i>être</i> , v. 4.                  |
| shall you stay 1 there?     | 1 <i>se tenir</i> , v. 2.              |
| he has been turned 1 out 1. | 1 <i>mettre dehors</i> , v. 4.         |
| God 1 is every where.       | 1 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.                  |
| let us go this 1 way 1.     | 1 <i>par ici</i> .                     |
| from 1 whence 1 come 2 you? | 1 <i>d'où</i> , 2 <i>venir</i> , v. 2. |

*Adverbs of Distance.*

Observe first, that these adverbs being *loin*, far, and *près*, near, may be compared and placed after other adverbs, as *approchez-vous plus près*, come nearer.

Secondly, that they may come either before or after prepositions, as

*il demeure loin de moi.*

he lives far from me.

*Cette maison paroît bien petite de loin.*

This house seems very small at a distance.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Of all 1 the courtiers 2 you are he 3 who 4 approach 5 the nearest the King's 7 person 6.  | 1 <i>Tout</i> , plur. m. <i>ous</i> , adj. 2 <i>courtisan</i> , n. m. 3 <i>celui</i> , pron. nom. m. 4 <i>qui</i> , pron. 5 <i>approcher de</i> , v. 1. 6 <i>personne</i> , n. f. 7 <i>Roi</i> , n. m. |
| this 1 village 2 is neither 3 too 4 far, nor 5 too near the 6 city of Dublin 6.            | 1 <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. m. 2 <i>village</i> , n. m. 3 <i>ni</i> , conj. 4 <i>trop</i> , adv. 5 <i>ni</i> , conj. 6 <i>de la ville de Dublin</i> .   |
| sometimes 1 what 2 appears 3 handsome 4 at 5 a distance 5, is 6 not so 6 near 7 at hand 7. | 1 <i>quelquefois</i> , adv. 2 <i>ce qui</i> , pron. nom. m. 3 <i>paroître</i> , v. 5. 4 <i>b-eau</i> , <i>elle</i> , adj. 5 <i>de loin</i> . 6 <i>ne l'est pas</i> . 7 <i>de près</i> .                |
| near 1 you 2 I study 3, far 4 from 4 you 1 play 5.   | 1 <i>près de</i> . 2 <i>vous</i> , pron. nom. 3 <i>étudier</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>loin de</i> . 5 <i>jouer</i> , v. 1.   |

*Adverbs of Time.*

These adverbs are seven in number, viz.  
*Tantôt*, presently, by and by. *Tôt*, soon.

*demain*,

*demain*, to-morrow.

*tard*, late.

*hier*, yesterday.

*matin*, early.

*aujourd'hui*, to-day, this day.

You must observe first, that the four first may be governed by a preposition, as *pour demain*, for to-morrow, &c.

Secondly, that they are placed either before or after the Verb, according as the smoothness of the sentence, or the speaker's or writer's fancy requires it, as

*Demain je prendrai*, or *je prendrai demain médecine*. I shall take physick to-morrow.

*aujourd'hui je vais*, or *je vais aujourd'hui à la comédie*. I shall go this day to the play.

Thirdly, that they must not be placed in the compounds between the auxiliary verb and participle, as

*Il a aujourd'hui fait beau tems*. It has been fine weather to-day.

But that they must come after those compounds, as

*Il a fait aujourd'hui beau tems*. It has been fair weather to-day.

Fourthly, that the three last may be compared, as *plus tard*, later, &c.

Fifthly, that they may take other adverbs before them, as *il est trop tôt*, it is too soon, &c.

Sixthly, that they must always be placed after the Verb, as *je me lève matin*, I get up early, &c.

*Exercises upon tantôt, demain, hier, and aujourd'hui.*

We have enough 2 of 1 them 1 *en*, pron. conj. 2 *assez*, adv. 3 *pour*, prep.

I know 1 this 2 news 3 since 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 3 *nouvelle*, n. f. 4 *depuis*, prep.

I keep 1 this pear 2 for to-morrow. 1 *garder*, v. 1. 2 *poire*, n. f.

you put 2 us 1 off 2 from 3 to-morrow, to another to-morrow 3. 1 *nous*, pron. conj. pl. 2 *re-mettre*, v. 4. 3 *de demain en demain*.

to-morrow I shall go 1 to 2 the play 3; and 4 to-night 5 I sup 6 abroad 7. 1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep. 3 *comédie*, n. f. 4 *et*, conj. 5 *ce soir*. 6 *souper*, v. 1. 7 *en ville*.

I saw



*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Where shall we go 1?        | 1 <i>Aller</i> , v. 1.                 |
| we are 1 here.              | 1 <i>être</i> , v. 4.                  |
| shall you stay 1 there?     | 1 <i>se tenir</i> , v. 2.              |
| he has been turned 1 out 1. | 1 <i>mettre dehors</i> , v. 4.         |
| God 1 is every where.       | 1 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.                  |
| let us go this 1 way 1.     | 1 <i>par ici</i> .                     |
| from 1 whence 1 come 2 you? | 1 <i>d'où</i> . 2 <i>venir</i> , v. 2. |

*Adverbs of Distance.*

Observe first, that these adverbs being *loin*, far, and *près*, near, may be compared and placed after other adverbs, as *approchez-vous plus près*, come nearer.

Secondly, that they may come either before or after prepositions, as

*il demeure loin de moi.*

he lives far from me.

*Cette maison paroît bien petite de loin.*

This house seems very small at a distance.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Of all 1 the courtiers 2 you are he 3 who 4 approach 5 the nearest the King's 7 person 6.  | 1 <i>Tout</i> , plur. m. <i>ous</i> , adj. 2 <i>courtisan</i> , n. m. 3 <i>celui</i> , pron. nom. m. 4 <i>qui</i> , pron. 5 <i>approcher de</i> , v. 1. 6 <i>personne</i> , n. f. 7 <i>Roi</i> , n. m. |
| this 1 village 2 is neither 3 too 4 far, nor 5 too near the 6 city of Dublin 6.            | 1 <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. m. 2 <i>village</i> , n. m. 3 <i>ni</i> , conj. 4 <i>trop</i> , adv. 5 <i>ni</i> , conj. 6 <i>de la ville de Dublin</i> .   |
| sometimes 1 what 2 appears 3 handsome 4 at 5 a distance 5, is 6 not so 6 near 7 at hand 7. | 1 <i>quelquefois</i> , adv. 2 <i>ce qui</i> , pron. nom. m. 3 <i>paroître</i> , v. 5. 4 <i>b-eau</i> , <i>elle</i> , adj. 5 <i>de loin</i> . 6 <i>ne l'est pas</i> . 7 <i>de près</i> .                |
| near 1 you 2 I study 3, far 4 from 4 you 1 play 5.   | 1 <i>près de</i> . 2 <i>vous</i> , pron. nom. 3 <i>étudier</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>loin de</i> . 5 <i>jouer</i> , v. 1.   |

*Adverbs of Time.*

These adverbs are seven in number, viz.

*Tantôt*, presently, by and by. *Tôt*, soon.

*demain*,

*demain*, to-morrow.

*tard*, late.

*hier*, yesterday.

*matin*, early.

*aujourd'hui*, to-day, this day.

You must observe first, that the four first may be governed by a preposition, as *pour demain*, for to-morrow, &c.

Secondly, that they are placed either before or after the Verb, according as the smoothness of the sentence, or the speaker's or writer's fancy requires it, as

*Demain je prendrai*, or *je prendrai demain médecine*. I shall take physick to-morrow.

*aujourd'hui je vais*, or *je vais aujourd'hui à la comédie*. I shall go this day to the play.

Thirdly, that they must not be placed in the compounds between the auxiliary verb and participle, as

*Il a aujourd'hui fait beau tems*. It has been fine weather to-day.

But that they must come after those compounds, as

*Il a fait aujourd'hui beau tems*. It has been fair weather to-day.

Fourthly, that the three last may be compared, as *plus tard*, later, &c.

Fifthly, that they may take other adverbs before them, as *il est trop tôt*, it is too soon, &c.

Sixthly, that they must always be placed after the Verb, as *je me lève matin*, I get up early, &c.

*Exercises upon tantôt, demain, hier, and aujourd'hui.*

We have enough 2 of 1 them 1 *en*, pron. conj. 2 *assez*, adv. 3 *pour*, prep.

I know 1 this 2 news 3 since 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 3 *nouvelle*, n. f. 4 *depuis*, prep.

I keep 1 this pear 2 for to-morrow. 1 *garder*, v. 1. 2 *poire*, n. f.

you put 2 us 1 off 2 from 3 to-morrow, to another to-morrow 3. 1 *nous*, pron. conj. pl. 2 *re-mettre*, v. 4. 3 *de demain en demain*.

to-morrow I shall go 1 to 2 the play 3; and 4 to-night 5 I sup 6 abroad 7. 1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep. 3 *comédie*, n. f. 4 *et*, conj. 5 *ce soir*. 6 *souper*, v. 1. 7 *en ville*.

I saw

I saw 1 my 2 friend 3 yester-  
day 4.

I shall speak 2 to him 1 to-  
morrow 3.

it has 1 been 1 fine 3 wea-  
ther 4 to-day 2.

1 voir, v. 3. 2 mon, pron. adj.  
m. 3 ami, n. m. 4 hier, adv.

1 lui, pron. conj. 2 parler, v.  
1. 3 demain, adv.

1 il a fait. 2 aujourd'hui. 3  
beau, adj. m. 4 tems, n. m.

*Exercises upon tot, tard, and matin.*

It is later than 1 I thought 2.  
come 1 another 2 time 2  
sooner.

I get 1 up 1 every 2 day 2  
earlier than you 3.

you come very 1 late.

did he not embark 1 very 2  
early?

it 1 is in vain that 1 you got  
up early, you shall not set  
2 out 2 sooner.

1 que, conj. 2 croire, v. 5.

1 venir, v. 2. 2 une autre  
fois.

1 se lever, v. 1. 2 tous les  
jours. 3 vous, pron. nom.

1 bien, adv.

1 s'embarquer, v. 1. 2 bien,  
adv.

1 c'est en vain que. 2 partir,  
v. 2.

*Adverbs of Quantity.*

These Adverbs are

*Assez*, enough.

*trop*, too much, too.

*peu*, little, few.

*beaucoup*, much, a great deal.

*bien*, much, very.

*fort*, much, very.

*autant*, at all.

*plus*, more.

*moins*, less.

*autant*, as much.

*tant*, so much.

*presque*, almost.

*Encore*, once more.

*très*, most.

*quelque*, some, little.

*si*, so much.

*aussi*, as much.

*tout*, quite, entirely.

*d'avantage*, over and above,  
more.

*dumoins*, at least.

*auplus*, at most.

*aumoins*, at least.

*tout-à-fait*, quite.

Adverbs of quantity are placed in speech before the adjective and adverb. As to the Verb, if it be single, they come after it; and if compounded, they are commonly placed between the auxiliary and participle, altho' they may sometimes be placed after it. This place must even always be given to *d'avantage*. All this will be made plain by the following examples.

*Elle*



*Elle est bien pauvre.*

*Je suis presque entièrement convaincu de mon erreur.*

*j'en ai autant que vous.*

*j'en ai trop mangé.*

*le drap bleu m'a plu d'avantage que le verd.*

She is very poor.

I am almost entirely convinced of my error.

I have as much as you.

I have eat too much.

the blue cloth has pleased me more than the green.

*Exercises upon these Ad-verbs.*

She is too rich 1 to 2 become 3 your 4 wife 5.

we are more 1 than half 1 persuaded 2.

our 1 pond 2 is almost empty 3.

I don't know 1 much the governor 2 of the city 3.

I write 1 more 2 pages 2 in 3 a day 4, than 5 you do 5 in a week 6.

I have read 1 more books 2 than 3 you 4.

this 1 house 2 is almost entirely 3 destroyed 4.

he is more 1 than half 1 dead 2.

I have quite 2 finished 1 my 3 task 4.

I 1 have 1 ten 2 at 3 most 3. we were twenty 1 at 2 least 2. you have a 1 great deal 1 of malice 2, and 3 he 4 has 4 more 5.

1 Riche, adj. 2 pour, prep. 3. devenir, v. 2. 4 votre, pron. adj. 5 femme, n. f.

1 plus d'à moitié. 2 persuader, v. 1.

1 notre, pron. adj. 2 étang, n. m. 3 vuide, adj.

1 connoître, v. 5. 2 gouverneur, n. m. 3 ville, n. f.

1 écrire, v. 4. 2 plus de pages. 3 dans, prep. 4 jour, n. m. 5 que vous ne faites. 6 semaine, n. f.

1 lire, v. 4. 2 livre, n. m. 3 que, conj. 4 vous, pron. nom.

1 cette, pron. adj. f. 2 maison, n. f. 3 entièrement, adv. 4. détruire, v. 4.

1 plus d'à demi. 2 mourir, v. 2.

1 finir, v. 2. 2 tout-à-fait, adv. 3 ma, pron. adj. f. 4 tâche, n. f.

1 j'en ai. 2 dix. adj. 3 au plus. 1 vingt, adj. 2 au moins.

1 beaucoup de, adv. and, art. 2 malice, n. f. 3 &, conj. 4 il en a. 5 d'avantage.

*Ad-verbs*

*Adverbs of Distribution.*

|                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Quelquefois</i> , sometimes.      | <i>jamais</i> , never, ever.    |
| <i>d'autrefois</i> , at other times. | <i>d'ordinaire</i> , commonly.  |
| <i>souvent</i> , often.              | <i>dorenavant</i> , henceforth. |
| <i>toujours</i> , always, ever.      |                                 |

are the adverbs of *distribution*. *Souvent* may be compared ; *jamais* is sometimes joined to the preposition *à*, for ; and *toujours* to the preposition *pour*, for.

The adverbs of distribution may, in the single tenses be placed either before or after the Verb ; and in the compounds they are commonly placed between the auxiliary and participle. All this will be made plain by the following Examples.

|                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Venez chez moi le plus souvent</i> | Come to my house as often      |
| <i>que vous pourrez.</i>              | as you can.                    |
| <i>soyez à jamais heureux.</i>        | be for ever happy.             |
| <i>quelquefois je me tais.</i>        | I sometimes hold my tongue.    |
| <i>j'écris souvent.</i>               | I write often.                 |
| <i>j'ai toujours aimé ma sœur.</i>    | I have always loved my sister. |

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| He comes 1 the 2 oftenest 2<br>with 3 his 4 friends 5.       | 1 <i>Venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>le plus souvent</i> .<br>3 <i>avec</i> , prep. 4 <i>ses</i> , pron.<br>adj. pl. 5 <i>ami</i> , n. m. |
| let the name 1 of the Lord 2<br>be for 3 ever 3 glorified 4. | 1 <i>nom</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Seigneur</i> , n.<br>m. 3 <i>pour toujours</i> . 4 <i>glo-</i><br><i>rifier</i> , v. I.                |
| don't engage 1 yourself 1 for<br>ever.                       | 1 <i>s'engager</i> , v. I.   |
| sometimes I breakfast 1 at 2<br>nine o'clock 2.              | 1 <i>déjeuner</i> , v. I. 2 <i>à neuf</i><br><i>heures</i> .   |
| I often dine 1 at 2 two<br>o'clock 2.                        | 1 <i>diner</i> , v. I. 2 <i>à deux heures</i> .  |
| I have always respected 2<br>him 1.                          | 1 <i>le</i> , pron. conj. m. <i>respecter</i> ,<br>v. I.   |
| he has never loved 1 his 2<br>son 3.                         | 1 <i>aimer</i> , v. I. 2 <i>son</i> , prop.<br>adj. m. 3 <i>filz</i> , n. m.   |

*Adverbs*

*Adverbs of Motive.*

These adverbs are *pourquoi*, why; and *a-cause*, on account, for the sake, because. The last always takes after it the preposition *de*, or the conjunction *que*, as *je marche a-cause de vous*, I walk for your sake; *je parle, a-cause qu'il le faut*, I speak, because it is necessary to do it.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Why 1 do you endeavour 2<br>to 3 deceive 5 me 4?   | 1 <i>Pourquoi</i> . 2 <i>tâcher</i> , v. 1. 3<br><i>de</i> , prep. 4 <i>me</i> , pron. conj.<br>5 <i>tromper</i> , v. 1.   |
| why have you abandoned 1<br>your 2 old 3 friends 4?  | 1 <i>abandonner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>votre</i> ,<br>pl. <i>vos</i> , pron. adj. 3 <i>an-</i><br><i>c-ien</i> , <i>ienne</i> , adj. 4 <i>ami</i> ,<br>n. m.                     |
| I shall do 1 it on 2 your ac-<br>count 2?  | 1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>a-cause de</i><br><i>vous</i> .  |
| grant 1 him 2 this 3 favour<br>4 for 5 my sake 5?  | 1 <i>accorder</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>lui</i> , pron.<br>conj. 3 <i>cette</i> , pron. adj. f.<br>4 <i>fauteur</i> , n. f. 5 <i>a-cause de</i><br><i>moi</i> .                     |
| I wait 1 upon 1 the judges 2,<br>because 3 your 4 interests<br>are concerned 4 in 5 this<br>cause 6. | 1 <i>solliciter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>juge</i> , n. m.<br>3 <i>a-cause que</i> . 4 <i>il s'agit de</i><br><i>vos intérêts</i> . 5 <i>dans</i> , prep.<br>6 <i>cause</i> , n. f. |

To rank, *pour le présent*, for the present, *tour à tour*, by turn, *à l'exception*, if we except, *à la bonne heure que*, let us suppose that, and many other such expressions amongst the Adverbs, Prepositions, or Conjunctions, is, methinks, to confound the ideas we ought to have of the parts of speech. *Pour*, in the first example, is a preposition; *le* an article; and *présent* a noun. It is true, that these three words joined together denote a circumstance, and consequently form an adverbial expression; but as children are not commonly able to judge when words, joined together, denote or don't denote a circumstance, we ought, in books destined for their use, to leave every part of speech in its respective class.



## OF PREPOSITIONS.

*French* Prepositions may be divided into seven classes, viz. the Prepositions of *place*, *order*, *union*, *separation*, *opposition*, and *specification*. Those of the six first classes, being used in the same manner in *French* as in *English*, need not be exemplified.

*Prepositions of Place.*

These Prepositions are

*Chez*, in, at, to, amongst.  
*dans*, into.  
*sous*, under.  
*sur*, upon, over.

*devant*, before.  
*derrière*, behind.  
*parmi*, amongst.  
*vers*, towards.

*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

It is not always 1 true 2, that  
 3 every one is 3 master 4  
 in 5 his own house 5.  
 the consuls 1 had a great 2  
 power 3 amongst the Ro-  
 mans 4.  
 politeness 1 reigns 2 more 3  
 in the capital 4 than 5 in  
 6 the provinces 7.

we imagine 1 that 2 our 3  
 antipodes 4 are under us  
 5, and 6 they perhaps 7  
 think 8 that we are under  
 them 9.

the bottle 1 is upon the table  
 2.

docility 1 is a virtue 2, but  
 3 the power 4 one 5 gives  
 5 over one's self 6 is  
 weakness 7.

shall I always have before me  
 1 a hateful 3 object 2 ?

1 *Toujours*, adv. 2 *vrai*, adj.  
 3 *que chacun soit*. 4 *maître*,  
 n. m. 5 *chez soi*.

1 *consul*, n. m. 2 *grand*, adj.  
 3 *pouvoir*, n. m. 4 *Romain*,  
 n. m.

1 *politesse*, n. f. 2 *regner*, v. 1.  
 3 *plus*, adv. 4 *capitale*, n.  
 f. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *dans*, prep.  
 7 *province*, n. f.

1 *s'imaginer*, v. 1. *que*, conj. 3  
*nos*, pron. adj. pl. 4 *antipode*,  
 n. m. 5 *nous*, pron. nom. 6  
*&*, conj. 7 *peut-être*, adv. 8  
*croire*, v. 5. 9 *eux*, pron. nom.

1 *bouteille*, n. f. 2 *table*, n. f.

1 *docilité*, n. f. 2 *vertu*, n. f.  
 3 *mais*, conj. 4 *ascendant*,  
 n. m. 5 *qu'on donne*. 6 *soi*,  
 pron. nom. 7 *foiblesse*, n. f.

1 *moi*, pron. nom. 2 *objet*, n.  
 m. 3 *hassable*, adj.

the

|   |   |
|---|---|
| the ambitious 1 man 1 never<br>3 looks 2 behind himself<br>4.         | 1 <i>ambitieux</i> , n. m. 2 <i>regarder</i> ,<br>v. 1. 3 <i>jamais</i> , adv. 4 <i>lui</i> ,<br>pron. nom.                                   |
| there 1 are 1 amongst men 2<br>many 3 fools 4.                        | 1 <i>il y a</i> . 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m. 3<br><i>plusieurs</i> , adj. plur. 4 <i>soit</i> ,<br>n. m.  |
| it 1 was 1 towards the river<br>2 that 3 I saw 4 your 5<br>brother 6. | 1 <i>c'est</i> . 2 <i>rivière</i> , n. f. 3 <i>que</i> ,<br>conj. 4 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 5 <i>votre</i> ,<br>pron. adj. 6 <i>frère</i> , n. m. |

*Prepositions of Order.*

These Prepositions are

*Avant*, before.*après*, after.*entre*, between.*depuis*, since, from.*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| We see 1 nothing 2 now 3 a<br>days 3, but 4 what others<br>have seen 4 before us 5.              | 1 <i>Voir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>rien</i> , n. m.<br>3 <i>aujourd'hui</i> , adv. 4 <i>que</i><br><i>d'autres n'aient vu</i> . 5 <i>nous</i> ,<br>pron. nom. pl.           |
| I have done 2 it 1 before<br>you was 3 born 3.   | 1 <i>le</i> , pron. conj. m. 2 <i>faire</i> ,<br>v. 5. 3 <i>naître</i> , v. 5.  |
| Noah 1 lived 2 before and 3<br>after the flood 4.  | 1 <i>Noé</i> , n. m. 2 <i>vivre</i> , v. 4.<br>3 <i>&amp;</i> , conj. 4 <i>déluge</i> , n. m.   |
| we are between hope 1 and<br>fear 2.   | 1 <i>espérance</i> , n. f. 2 <i>crainte</i> ,<br>n. f.  |
| some 1 books 2 are 3 from<br>the beginning to the end,<br>nothing but 3 a heap 4 of<br>errors 5. | 1 <i>quelque</i> , adj. 2 <i>livre</i> , n. m.<br>3 <i>ne sont depuis un bout</i><br><i>jusqu'à l'autre que</i> . 4 <i>tissu</i> ,<br>n. m. 5 <i>erreur</i> , n. f. |

*Prepositions of Union.*

These Prepositions are

*Avec*, with.*selon*, according to.*suiuant*, according to.*par*, upon, by.*outré*, besides.*durant*, during.*pendant*, during.*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| The great 1 travel 2 with<br>"numerous 3 attendants 4. | 1 <i>Grand</i> , n. m. 2 <i>voyager</i> ,<br>v. 1. 3 <i>nombr-eux</i> , euse, adj.<br>4 <i>cortège</i> , n. m. |
|--|--|

a good

a good 1 Christian 2 ought  
3 to live 4 according to  
the maxims 5 of the gos-  
pel 6.

we must 1 distrust 2 those 3  
who 4 swear 5 easily 6  
upon 7 what 8 is most sa-  
cred 8.

we may 1 displease 2 by 3  
our 4 good 5 qualities 6,  
and 7 please 8 by 9 our  
bad ones 9.

how 1 much 1 have you to 2  
spend 3 every 4 day 4?

to 1 succeed 2 at 3 court 3,  
besides 4 merit, one must  
have 4 a powerful 5 pro-  
tection 6.

the enemies 1 have remained  
2 in 3 their 4 camp 5,  
during 6 the campaign 7.

the ant 1 makes 2 during 3  
the summer 4, the provi-  
sions 5 she 6 wants 6 dur-  
ing the winter 7.

1 *b-on, onne*, adj. 2 *Chrétien*,  
n. m. 3 *devoir*, v. 3. 4  
*vivre*, v. 4. 5 *maxime*, n.  
f. 6 *évangile*, n. m.

1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *se méfier de*,  
v. 1. 3 *ceux*, pron. nom.  
m. and plur. 4 *qui*. 5 *ju-  
rer*, v. 6 *aisément*, adv. 7  
*par*, prep. 8 *ce qu'il y a de  
plus sacré*.

1 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 2 *déplaire*, v.  
5. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *nos*, pron.  
adj. pl. 5 *b-on, onne*, adj.  
6 *qualité*, n. f. 7 *et*, conj.  
8 *plaire*, v. 5. 9 *par nos  
mauvaises*.

1 *combien*, adv. 2 *à*, prep. 3  
*dépenser*, v. 1. 4 *par jour*.

1 *pour*, prep. 2 *réussir*, v. 2.  
3 *à la cour*. 4 *il faut, outre  
le mérite, avoir*. 5 *puissant*,  
adj. 6 *protection*, n. f.

1 *ennemi*, n. m. 2 *demeurer*, v.  
1. conjugated with *être* in  
its comp. 3 *dans*, prep. 4  
*leur*, pron. adj. 5 *camp*,  
n. m. 6 *durant*, prep. 7  
*campagne*, n. f.

1 *fourni*, n. f. 2 *faire*, v. 5.  
3 *pendant*, prep. 4 *été*, n.  
m. 5 *provision*, n. f. 6 *dont  
elle a besoin*. 7 *hiver*, n. m.

### *Prepositions of Separation.*

*Sans*, without.

*excepté*, except, save.

*hors*, except.

*hormis*, except.

are the prepositions of separation.

*Exercices*.



*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

- People 1 of quality 2 seldom  
3 go out 3 without a ser-  
vant 4.
- a woman 1 may 2 please 3  
without beauty 4, but 5  
not 5 without sense 6.
- all 1 is conjectural 2, except  
3 the geometrical 5 de-  
monstrations 4.
- the law 1 of Mahomet per-  
mits 2 every 3 thing 3,  
except 4 wine 5.
- except 1 you 2, all 3 is in-  
different 5 to 4 me 4.
- 1 gens, n. m. plur. 2 distinc-  
tion, n. f. 3 ne sortent guè-  
res. 4 domestique.
- 1 femme, n. f. 2 pouvoir, v. 3.  
3 plaire, v. 5. 4 beauté, n. f.  
5 mais non pas, 6 raison,  
n. f.
- 1 tout, n. m. 2 conjectural,  
adj. 3 excepté. 4 démon-  
stration, n. f. 5 géométrique,  
adj.
- 1 l-oï, plur. oix, n. f. 2 per-  
mettre, v. 4. 3 tout, n. m.  
4 hors. 5 vin, n. m.
- 1 hormis. 2 vous, pron. nom.  
3 tout, n. m. 4 me, pron.  
conj. 5 indifférent, adj.

*Prepositions of Opposition.**Contre*, against.*nonobstant*, notwithstanding.*malgré*, in spite of.

are the prepositions of opposition.

*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

- The honest 1 man 2 does  
not speak 3 against truth 4.
- in spite of my 1 care 2, I  
have lost 3 my law-suit 4.
- the wicked 1 does not respect  
2 the churches 3; he com-  
mits 4 wickedness 5 there-  
in 6, notwithstanding the  
sacredness 7 of those 8  
places 9.
- 1 honnête, adj. 2 homme, n. m.  
3 parler, v. 1. 4 vérité, n. f.
- 1 mon, ma, pl. mes, pron. adj.  
2 soins, n. m. pl. 3 perdre,  
v. 4. 4 procès, n. m.
- 1 méchant, n. m. 2 respecter,  
v. 1. 3 église, n. f. 4 com-  
mettre, v. 4. 5 crime, n. m.  
6 y, pron. conj. 7 sainteté,  
n. f. 8 ces, pron. adj. 9  
l-ieu, plur. ieux, n. m.

*Prepositions of End.**Envers*, towards.*pour*, for.*touchant*, about.

are the prepositions of end.

*Exercises*

# 118      E X E R C I S E S      upon the

## *Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Good 1 education 2 teaches<br>3 how 4 to behave 4 to-<br>wards every 5 body 5. | 1 <i>b-on, ònne</i> , adj. 2 <i>éducation</i> ,<br>n. f. 3 <i>enseigner</i> , v. 1. 4 à<br><i>se bien comporter</i> . 5 <i>tout le</i><br><i>monde</i> . |
| what 1 have you written 2<br>about religion 3?                                 | 1 <i>que</i> , pron. nom. m. 2 <i>écrire</i> ,<br>v. 4. 3 <i>religion</i> , n. f.  |
| I am come 1 to 2 see 4 you<br>3.   | 1 <i>venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>pour</i> , prep. 3<br><i>vous</i> , pron. conj. 4 <i>voir</i> , v. 3.  |
| he passes 1 for 2 the eldest 3.  | 1 <i>passer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pour</i> , prep. 3<br><i>aîné</i> , n. m.   |

## *Prepositions of Specification.*

These Prepositions are *à*, *de*, and *en*. To shew all their different uses is not a very easy matter; they are sometimes englished by a preposition, and sometimes without. I shall treat here of each of them separately, taking care to exemplify them, before I give exercises upon them.

### *The preposition à englished without a preposition.*

|                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Un lit à colonnes.</i>     | A four-posted bed.   |
| <i>un pays à pâturages.</i>   | a pasture country.   |
| <i>un moulin à poudre.</i>    | a powder-mill.       |
| <i>une arme à feu.</i>        | a fire-arm.          |
| <i>une figure à genou.</i>    | a kneeling figure.   |
| <i>une fille à marier.</i>    | a marriageable girl. |
| <i>aller à grands pas.</i>    | to walk very fast.   |
| <i>un bonnet à la Turque.</i> | a Turkish bonnet.    |
| <i>un pot à l'eau.</i>        | a water-pot.         |

### *Exercises.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| England 1 is a corn 3 coun-<br>try 2.                         | 1 <i>Angleterre</i> , n. f. 2 <i>pays</i> ,<br>n. m. 3 <i>bled</i> , n. m.   |
| I have bought 1 this 2 morn-<br>ing 3 some tea 5 spoons<br>4. | 1 <i>acheter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ce</i> , pron.<br>adj. m. 3 <i>matin</i> , n. m. 4<br><i>cuillère</i> , n. f. 5 <i>thé</i> , n. m. |
| hand 2 mills 1 are very 3<br>useful 4.                        | 1 <i>moulin</i> , n. m. 2 <i>bras</i> , n. m.<br>3 <i>fort</i> , adv. 4 <i>utile</i> , adj.                                      |
| it 1 is 1 a dispute 2 never 3<br>to be ended 3.               | 1 <i>c'est</i> . 2 <i>dispute</i> , n. f. 3 <i>à ne</i><br><i>jamais finir</i> .   |

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| I have lent 2 him 1 two 3   | 1 <i>lui</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>prêter</i> , v.                                 |
| Chinese 5 designs 4.        | 1. 3 <i>deux</i> , adj. pl. 4 <i>dessain</i> ,<br>n. m. 5 <i>Chinois</i> , adj. |
| do you love 1 onion 3 sauce | 1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>sauce</i> , n. f.                                   |
| 2 ?                         | 3 <i>oignon</i> , n. m.   |
| where 1 have you put 2 the  | 1 <i>où</i> , adv. 2 <i>mettre</i> , v. 4. 3                                    |
| ink 4 bottle 3 ?            | <i>bouteille</i> , n. f. 4 <i>encre</i> , n. f.                                 |

*à englished by to.*

*Chambres à louer.*

Rooms to let.

*bois à couper.*

wood to cut down.

*bon à manger.*

good to eat.

*vendre à l'enchère.*

to sell to the best bidder.

*Exercises.*

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| There 1 is 1 a house 2 to 3  | 1 <i>Il y a</i> . 2 <i>maison</i> , n. f. 3 <i>à</i>                        |
| be fold 3 in 4 our 5 street  | <i>vendre</i> . 4 <i>dans</i> , prep. 5                                     |
| 6.                           | <i>notre</i> , pron. adj. 6 <i>rue</i> , n. f.                              |
| is 1 there 1 a garden 2 to   | 1 <i>y a-t-il</i> . 2 <i>jardin</i> , n. m. 3                               |
| let 3 here 4 ?               | <i>louer</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>ici</i> , adv.                                    |
| are you inclined 1 to help 3 | 1 <i>porter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>me</i> , pron.                                 |
| me 2 ?                       | conj. 3 <i>aider</i> , v. 1.  |
| he is disposed 1 to serve 3  | 1 <i>disposer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>vous</i> , pron.                             |
| you 2.                       | conj. 3 <i>servir</i> , v. 2.   |
| I shall go 1 soon 2 to my 3  | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>bientôt</i> , adv.                              |
| country-house 4 ?            | 3 <i>ma</i> , pron. adj. f. 4 <i>mai-</i><br><i>son de campagne</i> , n. f. |

*à englished by for.*

*Un carrosse à six places.*

A coach for six people.

*crier à l'aide.*

to cry for help.

*Exercises.*

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| There 1 is 1 in 2 this 3 inn  | 1 <i>Il y a</i> . 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>cette</i> , |
| 4 a stable 5 for thirty 6     | pron. adj. f. 4 <i>auberge</i> , n.                      |
| horses 7.                     | f. 5 <i>écurie</i> , n. f. 6 <i>trente</i> ,             |
|                               | adj. und. 7 <i>chev-al</i> , plur.                       |
|                               | <i>aux</i> , n. m.                                       |
| we keep 1 a table 2 for twen- | 1 <i>tenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>tables</i> , n. f. 3         |
| ty 3 people 4.                | <i>vingt</i> , adj. und. 4 <i>couvert</i> ,              |
|                               | n. m.  |

*à englished*



à *englished* by after.*Pardonner à l'Italienne.*

to forgive after the Italian manner.

*vivre à l'Angloise.*

to live after the English way.

*Exercises.*

I have ordered 1 my 2 tailor 3 to 4 make 6 me 5 a cap 7 after 8 the Turkish manner 8.

1 *ordonner* à, v. 1. 2 *mon*, pron. adj. m. 3 *tailleur*, n. m. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *me*, pron. conj. 6 *faire*, v. 5. 7 *bonnet*, n. m. 8 *à la Turque*.

they live 1 after 2 the French way 2.

1 *vivre*, v. 4. 2 *à la Française*.

à *englished* by on.*Route à droite.*

Road on the right.

*une maison à gauche.*

a house on the left.

*Exercises.*

To 1 go 2 to Putney, you 3 must take 3 the road 4 on 5 the left 5.

1 *Pour*, prep. 2 *aller*, v. 1. 3 *il faut que vous preniez*.

go 1 straight along 1, and 2 turn 3 on 4 the right 4.

4 *chemin*, n. m. 5 *à gauche*. 1 *allez tout droit*. 2 *&*, conj. 3 *tourner*, v. 1. 4 *à droite*.

à *englished* by at.*Il est à Oxford.*

He is at Oxford.

*demeurez vous à Cambridge?*

do you live at Cambridge?

*Exercises.*

The scene 1 is at Paris.

1 *Scène*, n. f.

I have staid 1 six 2 months 3 at Lyons 4.

1 *demeurer*, v. 1. 2 *six*, adj. und. 3 *mois*, n. m. 4 *Lyons*, n. m.

where 1 did he end 2 his 3 days 4? at Rome.

1 *où*, adv. 2 *finir*, v. 2. 3 *ses*, pron. adj. pl. 4 *jour*, n. m.

à *englished* by with.*Une table à tiroirs.*

A table with drawers.

*une canne à lorgnette.*

a cane with a spying-glass.

*Exercises.*

*Exercises.*

- I have a cap 1 with 2 a 1 *Bonnet*, n. m. 2 à *aigrette*.  
 plume of feathers on it 2.  
 why 1 do you despise 2 my 3 1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *mépriser*,  
 house 4; it 5 is 5 a house v. 1. 3 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 4  
 with 6 a yard, inner yard *maison*, n. f. 5 *c'est*. 6 à  
 and a garden 6. *cour*, *basse cour* & *jardin*.

à englished by in.

- Un procureur à la cour du* An attorney in the court of  
*banc du Roi.* King's bench.  
*un chapeau à la mode.* a hat in the mode.

*Exercises.*

- My 1 sister 2 is married 3 to 1 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 2 *sœur*, n.  
 4 Mr. Durel, a counsellor f. 3 *marier*, v. 1. 4 à, prep.  
 5 in 6 the court of King's 5 *avocat*. 6 à *la cour du*  
 bench 6. *banc du Roi*.  
 all 1 my 2 cloaths 3 are in 1 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj. 2  
 the mode 4. *mes*, pron. adj. pl. 3 *habit*,  
 n. m. 4 *mode*, n. f.

à englished by the preposition by.

- Deux à deux.* Two by two.  
*pas à pas.* step by step.

*Exercises.*

- We went 1 to 2 meet him 2, 1 *Aller*, v. 1. 2 *au devant de*  
 and 3 walked 4 two by *lui*. 3 *&*, conj. 4 *marcher*,  
 two. v. 1.  
 when 1 we met 3 them 2, 1 *quand*, adv. 2 *les*, pron.  
 they were walking three conj. pl. 3 *rencontrer*, v. 1.  
 4 by three. 4 *trois*, adj. und.  
 I shall follow 2 you 1 step 3 1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *suivre*,  
 by step. v. 4. 3 *pas*, n. m.

The preposition de englished without a preposition.

- Quelque chose de bon.* Something good.  
*rien de mauvais.* nothing bad.

*Exercises.*

- He has always 1 something 2 wonderful 3 to 4 tell 6 us 5 ?  
 1 *Toujours*, adv. 2 *quelque chose*, pron. nom. m. 3 *de merveilleux*. 4 *à*, prep. 5 *nous*, pron. conj. 6 *dire*. v. 4.
- is 1 there 1 any 2 one 2 wife 3 amongst 4 them 5 ?  
 1 *y a-t-il*. 2 *quelqu'un*, pron. nom. m. 3 *de sage*. 4 *parmi*, prep. 5 *eux*, pron. nom. m.
- have you nothing 1 good 2 to tell us ?  
 1 *rien*, pron. nom. m. 2 *b-on, onne*, adj.
- this 1 room 2 is five 3 feet 3 longer 4 than 5 the other 6.  
 1 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 2 *chambre*, n. f. 3 *de cinq pieds*. 4 *l-ong, ongue*, adj. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *autre*, pron. nom. m. and f.
- he is more 1 than half 1 dead 2.  
 1 *plus d'à demi*. 2 *mourir*, v. 2.

*De englished by the preposition by.*

*Voyager de nuit.*  
*plus grand d'un pouce.*

To travel by night.  
 taller by an inch.

*Exercises.*

- I am shorter 1 than 2 he 3 by 4 two inches 4.  
 1 *Moins grand*. 2 *que*, conj. 4 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 4 *de deux pouces*.
- I love 1 to 2 travel 3 by night 4.  
 1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep. 3 *voyager*, v. 1. 4 *nuit*, n. f.

*De englished by with.*

*Donner de mauvaise grace.*  
*courir de toutes ses forces.*

To give with a bad grace.  
 to run with all one's might.

*Exercises.*

- Do 1 these 2 things 3 with a good 4 grace 5.  
 1 *Faire*, v. 5. 2 *ces*, pron. adj. pl. 3 *chose*, n. f. 4 *b-on, onne*, adj. 5 *grace*, n. f.
- why 1 do you point 2 at 2 me 3 with 4 your hand 4?  
 1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *me*, pron. conj. 3 *montrer*, v. 1. 4 *de la main*.

he



- he has had the impudence 1 1 *impudence*, n. f. 2 *de*, prep.  
 to 2 strike 4 me 3 with 5 3 *me*, pron. conj. 4 *frapper*,  
 his cane 5. v. 1. 5 *de sa canne*, n. f.  
 I beckoned 2 him 1 with 3 1 *lui*, pron. conj. 2 *faire*  
 my head 3. *signe*, v. 5. 3 *de la tête*.

*De englished by for.*

*Mourir de chagrin.*  
*crier de peur.*

To die for grief.  
 to cry for fear.

*Exercises.*

- If 1 you fall 2 sick 3, I shall 1 *Si*, conj. 2 *tomber*, v. 1. 3  
 die 4 for grief 5. *malade*, adj. 4 *mourir*, v.  
 2. 5 *chagrin*, n. m.  
 I thought 1 that 2 he was 3 1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *que*, conj. 3  
 willing 3 to strike 5 me 4, *vouloir*, v. 3. 4 *me*, pron.  
 and 6 I cried 7 for fear 8. conj. 5 *frapper*, v. 1. 6 &  
 conj. 7 *crier*, v. 1. 8 *peur*, n. f.

*De englished by out of and from.*

*Briser de dépit.*  
*d'un bout à l'autre.*  
*du bien au mal.*

To break out of spite.  
 from one end to the other.  
 from good to evil.

*Exercises.*

- He has broke 1 all 2 my 3 1 *Casser*, v. 1. 2 *tout*, adj. 3  
 china 4 out of spite 5. *ma*, pron. adj. f. 4 *porce-*  
*laine*, n. f. 5 *dépit*, n. m.  
 I have read 1 your 2 book 3 1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *votre*, pron.  
 from one end to the other. adj. 3 *livre*, n. m.  
 our 1 ambassador 2 is come 1 *notre*, pron. adj. 2 *ambas-*  
 3 back 3 from 4 Rome. *sadeur*, n. m. 3 *revenir*, v.  
 2. 4 *de*, prep.  
 when 1 will your sister 2 re- 1 *quand*, adv. 2 *sœur*, n. f.  
 turn 3 from her 4 country- 3 *revenir*, v. 2. 4 *sa*, pron.  
 house 5 ? adj. f. 5 *maison de cam-*  
*pagne*, n. f.

*De englished by of.*

*avoir de plaisir.*  
*avoir de manger.*

Desire of pleasing.  
 want of eating.

G 2

*Exercises.*

*Exercises.*

- The king 1 has formed 2 the design 3 of making 4 war 5 against 6 the French 6.  
 I have a great 1 desire 2 of travelling 3.  
 he has the art 1 of pleasing 2 every 3 body 3.
- 1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *former*, v. 1. 3 *dessein*, n. m. 4 *faire*. 5 *guerre*, n. f. 6 *aux François*.  
 1 *grand*, adj. 2 *désir*, n. m. 3 *voyager*, v. 1.  
 1 *art*, n. m. 2 *plaire à*, v. 5. 3 *tout le monde*.

*The Preposition en englished without a Preposition.*

- Une femme en couche.* A lying-in woman.  
*un bonnet en broderie.* an embroidered cap.  
*une cheminée en marbre.* a marble chimney.  
*un maître en fait d'armes.* a fencing-master.  
*une carpe en étuvée.* a stewed carp.  
*un ornement en or.* a gold ornament.

*Exercises.*

- We have bought 1 a 2 damask suit of hangings 2.  
 there 1 are 1 twelve 2 marble chimnies in 3 my 4 new 5 house 6.  
 is the fencing-master come 1?  
 do you love 1 stewed carps?
- 1 *Achetter*, v. 1. 2 *une tenture en damas*.  
 1 *il y a*. 2 *douze*, adj. und. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 5 *neu-f*, *ve*, adj. 6 *maison*, n. f.  
 1 *venir*, v. 2.  
 1 *aimer*, v. 1.

*En englished by the Preposition in.*

- Un mot en usage.* A word in use.  
*une vigne en fleur.* a vine in blossom.  
*une troupe en quatre colonnes.* a troop in four columns.  
*un ouvrage en six volumes.* a work in six volumes.  
*un pied en longueur.* a foot in length.  
*un magistrat en robe.* a magistrate in his robes.

*Exercises.*

- You have revived 1 words 2 that 3 were no 4 more 4 in use 5.
- 1 *Faire revivre*, v. 5. 4 1 *mot*, n. m. 3 *qui*, pron. 4 *plus*, adv. 5 *usage*, n. m.

- I saw 1 yesterday 2 many 3 apple-trees 4 in blossom 5.  
 he has composed 1 a comedy 2 in five 3 acts 4.  
 this 1 table 2 is two 3 feet 4 in length, and 5 a foot and a half 6 in breadth 7.  
 he is a doctor 1 in divinity 2.
- 1 voir, v. 3. 2 hier, adv. 3 plusieurs, adj. plur. 4 pom-  
 mier, n. m. 5 fleur, n. f.  
 1 composer, v. 1. 2 comédie,  
 n. f. 3 cinq, adj. und. 4  
 acte, n. m.  
 1 cette, pron. adj. f. 2 table,  
 n. f. 3 deux, adj. und. 4  
 pied, n. m. 5 &, conj. 6  
 demi, adj. 7 largeur, n. f.  
 1 docteur, n. m. 2 théologie,  
 n. f.

En *englished* by as and like.

- Se conduire en étourdi.* To behave as a rash man.  
*penfer en Anglois.* to think as an English man.  
*se comporter en honnête homme.* to behave like an honest man.

*Exercises.*

- Go 1 to war 2, and behave 3 like a man 4 of courage 5.  
 what 1 opinion 2 can 3 one have of a man who 4 be-  
 hases every 5 where 5 like a fool 6.
- 1 Aller à, v. 1. 2 guerre, n. f. 3 se comporter, v. 1. 4  
 homme, n. m. 5 courage, n. m.  
 1 qu-el, elle, pron. adj. 2  
 opinion, n. f. 3 pouvoir, v. 3.  
 4 qui, pron. 5 partout, adv. 6  
 insensé, n. m.

En *englished* by into.

- Traduire en François.* To translate into French.

*Exercises.*

- The Bible 1 has been trans-  
 lated 2 into Welch 3.  
 the 1 Septuagint 1 have translated the Holy 2 Bi-  
 ble into Greek 3.
- 1 Bible, n. f. 2 traduire, v. 4.  
 3 Gallois, n. m.  
 1 les Septante. 2 saint, adj. 3  
 Grec, n. m.

En *before the French Participle active.*

- Tomber, en courant.* To fall, as one runs.  
*se sauver, en fuyant.* to make one's escape by  
 running away.  
*rêver, en dormant.* to dream in one's sleep.

G 3

*Exercises.*



*Exercices.*

- I dream 1 every 2 night 2 in 3 my sleep 3, but 4 you dream, when 5 you are awake 5. 1 *Rêver*, v. 1. 2 *toutes les nuits*. 3 *en dormant*. 4 *mais*, conj. 5 *en veillant*.
- I love 1 to 2 read 2, as 3 I dine 3. 1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *à lire*. 3 *en dinant*.
- you may 1 tell 3 me 2 your 4 reasons 5, as 6 you go 6. 1 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 2 *me*, pron. conj. 3 *dire*, v. 4. 4 *vos*, pron. adj. pl. 5 *raison*, n. f. 6 *en marchant*.
- in speaking 1 thus, 2, she wept 3 bitterly 4. 1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *ainsi*, adv. 3 *pleurer*, v. 1. 4 *amèrement*, adv.
- will you tell 1 me her 2 history 3, when 4 we go away 4? 1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *son*, pron. adj. 3 *histoire*, n. f. 4 *en nous en allant*.
- he caught 1 cold 1, when 2 he bathed himself 2. 1 *s'enrhumer*, v. 1. 2 *en se baignant*.
- I have lost 1 my 2 handkerchief 3, as 4 I was coming 4. 1 *perdre*, v. 4. 2 *mon*, pron. adj. m. 3 *mouchoir*, n. m. 4 *en venant*.
- I have improved 1 by 2 my studies 2. 1 *faire des progrès*, v. 5. 2 *en étudiant*.
- he was very 1 much 1 surprised 2 to 3 see me again 3. 1 *bien*, adv. 2 *surprendre*, v. 6. 3 *en me renvoyant*.

## OF CONJUNCTIONS.

We have about fifty-three Conjunctions, which may be divided into conjunctions copulative, augmentative, alternate, hypothetical, adversative, extensive, periodical, motivational, conclusive, explicative, transitive, and conductive.

*Conjunctions copulative.*

These Conjunctions are *et*, and; and *ni*, nor, neither. The last is always repeated in the sentence, and the first is never multiplied but when it is placed at the head of a sentence, as

David

*David étoit roi et prophete.*

David was a king and a prophet.

*et le pere, & la mere, et le fils,  
& la fille, & tous les pa-  
rens sont riches.*

the father, the mother, the son, the daughter, and all the relations are rich.

*vous n'avez ni amis, ni enne-  
mis.*

you have neither friends, nor foes.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

His 1 father 2 and 3 mother  
3 have forsaken 5 him 4.

1 *Son*, pron. adj. m. 2 *père*,  
n. m. 3 *& sa mère*, 4 *le*,  
pron. conj. 5 *abandonner*,  
v. 1.

correct 1 thy 2 son 3, and he  
shall give 5 thee 4 rest 6.

1 *corriger*, v. 1. 2 *ton*, pron.  
adj. m. 3 *filz*, n. m. 4 *te*,  
pron. conj. 5 *donner*, v. 1.  
6 *repos*, n. m.

one 1 generation 2 passés 3  
away 3, and another 4 ge-  
neration cometh 5, but 6  
the earth 7 abideth 8 for  
9 ever 9.

1 *un*, adj. 2 *génération*, n. f.  
3 *passer*, v. 1. 4 *une autre*.  
5 *venir*, v. 2. 6 *mais*, conj.  
7 *terre*, n. f. 8 *demeurer*, v.  
1. 9 *pour toujours*.

his 1 friends 1 and 2 foes 2  
laugh 3 at 3 him 4.

1 *& ses amis*. 2 *& ses ennemis*.  
3 *se moquer de*, v. 1. 4 *lui*,  
pron. nom.

his 1 brothers 1, sisters 2,  
cousins 3, and all 4 his 5  
relations 6, are indiffe-  
rent 8 to 7 him 7.

1 *& ses frères*. 2 *& ses sœurs*.  
3 *& ses cousins*. 4 *t-out*,  
plur. m. ous, adj. 5 *ses*,  
pron. adj. pl. 6 *par-ent*,  
pl. ens, n. m. 7 *lui*, pron.  
conj. 8 *indiffé-ent*, pl. m.  
ens, adj.

neither beauty 1 nor money  
2 moves 3 you 3.

1 *beauté*, n. f. 2 *argent*, n. m.  
3 *ne vous touche*.

he 1 has 1 neither vices 2  
nor virtues 3.

1 *il n'a*. 2 *vices*, n. m. 3  
*vertu*, n. f.

*Conjunctions Augmentative.*

\*These Conjunctions are *deplus*, besides; and *d'ailleurs*, besides, otherwise; both of which may sometimes be placed after

after the Verb, but commonly appear at the head of the words they connect with those that precede, as

*Il l'a beaucoup loué ; de plus  
il l'a récompensé.*

He has praised him much;  
besides he has rewarded  
him.

*tous vos amis vous en prient ;  
d'ailleurs votre honneur y  
est intéressé.*

all your friends beg it of  
you ; besides your honour  
is concerned therein.

*c'est un avare, qui a d'ailleurs  
quelques bonnes qualités.*

he is a covetous man, but  
has otherwise some good  
qualities.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

You have beauty 1, wit 2,  
learning 3 ; besides you  
are of a good 4 family 5 ;  
with 6 all 7 these 8 ad-  
vantages 9 you 10 cannot  
well miss making 10 your  
11 fortune 12.

1 *Beauté*, n. f. 2 *esprit*, n. m.  
3 *savoir*, n. m. 4 *b-on,*  
*onne*, adj. 5 *famille*, n. f.  
6 *avec*, prep. 7 *t-out*, plur.  
m. ous, adj. 8 *ces*, pron.  
adj. pl. 9 *avantage*, n. m.  
10 *vous ne pouvez manquer*  
*de faire*. 11 *votre*, pron.  
adj. 12 *fortune*, n. f.

he will certainly 1 succeed  
2 ; for 3 he is rich 4, and  
of one 5 of the best 6 fa-  
milies 7 in 8 the 8 king-  
dom 9 : besides he has  
10 many 11 powerful 12  
friends 13.

1 *certainement*, adv. 2 *réussir*,  
v. 2. 3 *car*, conj. 4 *riche*,  
adj. 5 *un*, adj. 6 *meilleur*,  
adj. 7 *famille*, n. f. 8 *du*.  
9 *royaume*, n. m. 10 *avoir*,  
v. 3. 11 *plusieurs*, adj. pl.  
m. and f. 12 *puissant*, adj.  
13 *ami*, n. m.

he fell 1 in a passion 1 a-  
gainst 2 him 3 without 4  
reason 5 ; besides he struck  
7 him 6.

1 *s'emporter*, v. 1. 2 *contre*,  
prep. 3 *lui*, pron. nom. m.  
4 *sans*, prep. 5 *raison*, n. f.  
6 *le*, pron. conj. m. 7  
*frapper*, v. 1.

he 1 is 1 a blunt 3 man 2,  
but 4 otherwise has a 5  
great deal 5 of probity 6.

1 *c'est*. 2 *homme*, n. m. 3  
*brusque*, adj. 4 *qui*, pron. 5  
*beaucoup*, adv. 6 *probité*, n. f.

*Conjunctions Alternate.*

These Conjunctions are *ou*, or ; *sinon*, else, otherwise ;  
and *tantôt*, sometimes. As they answer almost in every  
respect.



respect to their English, it seems to me needless to exemplify them.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Grant 1 me 2 this 3, favour<br>4, or refuse 6 it 5 me<br>quickly 7.                               | 1 <i>Accorder</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>moi</i> , 3<br><i>cette</i> , pron. adj. f. 4 <i>fa-<br/>veur</i> , n. f. 5 <i>la</i> , pron.<br>conj. f. 6 <i>refuser</i> , v. 1. 7<br><i>promptement</i> , adv. |
| come 1 to 2 day 2, or don't<br>come at 3 all 3.   | 1 <i>venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>aujourd'hui</i> ,<br>adv. 3 <i>dutout</i> , adv.   |
| tell 1 me yes 2, or no 3.   | 1 <i>dire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>oui</i> , adv. 3<br><i>non</i> , adv.   |
| give 1 me those 2 verses 3,<br>or give 4 me leave 4 to<br>copy 5 them 6.                          | 1 <i>donner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ces</i> , pron.<br>conj. pl. 3 <i>vers</i> , n. m. 4<br><i>permettre</i> , v. 4. 5 <i>les</i> , pron.<br>conj. pl. 6 <i>copier</i> , v. 1.                          |
| obey 1, otherwise you shall<br>be punished 2.   | 1 <i>obéir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>punir</i> , v. 2.  |
| sometimes he loads 2 me 1<br>with 3 caresses 4, and 5<br>sometimes he won't speak<br>7 to 6 me 6. | 1 <i>me</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>accabler</i> ,<br>v. 1. 3 <i>de</i> , prep. 4 <i>caresse</i> ,<br>n. f. 5 <i>et</i> , conj. 6 <i>me</i> ,<br>pron. conj. 7 <i>parler</i> , v. 1.                  |
| sometimes I go 1 to see 3<br>him 2, and sometimes it 4<br>is 4 he 5 who 6 comes 7<br>to see me.   | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>le</i> , pron. conj.<br>m. 3 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 4 <i>c'est</i> . 5<br><i>lui</i> , pron. nom. 6 <i>qui</i> , pron.<br>7 <i>venir</i> , v. 2.                        |

*Hypothetical Conjunctions.*

These Conjunctions are

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Si</i> , if, whether. | <i>pourvu</i> , provided.        |
| <i>quand</i> , when.     | <i>a moins</i> , unless.         |
| <i>soit</i> , whether.   | <i>sauf</i> , with this proviso. |

They must always be placed at the head of what they join; the two first govern the indicative; the three following the conjunctive, with the conjunction *que*; and the last the infinitive, with the preposition *à*, as

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Je verrai la princesse, si elle<br/>vient ici.</i>       | I shall see the princess if she<br>comes here. |
| <i>je le ferois, quand même vous<br/>vous y opposeriez.</i> | I would do it, even were<br>you to oppose it.  |

*j'irai à l'ennemi, pourvu que  
vous me montriez l'exemple.*

I shall go to the enemy, provided you shew me the example.

*il promet tout, sauf à faire ses  
exceptions.*

he promised all, with this proviso, that he might make his exceptions.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

Our 1 soldiers 2 will be courageous 3, if 4 they be well 5 commanded 6.

1 *Nos*, pron. adj. pl. 2 *soldat*, n. m. 3 *courageux*, adj. 4 *si*, conj. 5 *bien*, adv. 6 *commander*, v. 1.

we don't know 1 whether 2 we are just 3 before 4 God 5.

1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *si*, conj. 3 *juste*, adj. 4 *devant*, prep. 5 *Dieu*, n. m.

I would serve 2 him 1, if 3 even 4 he would 5 not.

1 *le*, pron. conj. m. 2 *servir*, v. 2. 3 *quand*, conj. 4 *même*, adv. 5 *vouloir*, v. 3.

whether 1 it be 1 reason 2, or 3 whim 4, she loves 6 him 5.

1 *soit*. 2 *raison*, n. f. 3 *soit*. 4 *caprice*, n. m. 5 *le*, pron. conj. 6 *aimer*, v. 1.

I shall always 1 be a 2 philosopher 2, whether 3 fortune 4 smiles 6 on 5 me 5 or 7 not 7.

1 *toujours*, adv. 2 *philosophe*. 3 *soit que*. 4 *fortune*, n. f. 5 *me*, pron. conj. 6 *rire*, v. 4. 7 *ou non*.

they will act 1, provided 2 they are paid 3.

1 *agir*, v. 2. 2 *pourvu que*, conj. 3 *payer*, v. 1.

you will never 2 obtain 1 what 3 you desire 4 of 5 him 5, unless 6 you speak 8 to 7 him 7 before 9 witnesses 10.

1 *obtenir*, v. 2. 2 *jamais*, adv. 3 *ce que*, pron. nom. 4 *souhaiter*, v. 1. 5 *de lui*. 6 *à moins que*, conj. 7 *lui*, pron. conj. 8 *parler*, v. 1. 9 *devant*, prep. 10 *témoin*, n. m.

I promise 2 to 1 you 1 to come 3 to 4 your house 4, unless 5 an unforeseen 7 accident 6 happens 8.

1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *promettre*, v. 4. 3 *se rendre*, v. 6. 4 *chez vous*. 5 *à moins que*. 6 *accident*, pl. *ens*, n. m. 7 *imprévu*, adj. 8 *n'arrive*.

I grant 1 all 2 for 3 the present 3, with 4 this pro-

1 *accorder*, v. 1. 2 *tout*, n. m. 3 *pour le présent*. 4 *sauf à* vif,

viso, that I shall make 4  
my 6 exceptions 7 after-  
wards 5.

*faire.* 5 *ensuite*, adv. 6 *mes*,  
pron. adj. pl. 7 *exception*,  
n. f.

*Conjunctions Adversative.*

These Conjunctions are

*Quoique*, altho'.

*bienque*, altho'.

*mais*, but.

*cependant*, nevertheless.

*pourtant*, however, &c.

*néanmoins*, nevertheless, &c.

*toutefois*, however, &c.

The two first govern the conjunctive; the third must be placed at the head of the phrase it joins to the foregoing one; and the others may come either at the head of the phrase they join, or after the verb, or between the auxiliary and participle passive, as

*Il n'est point malheureux, bien qu'il, or quoi qu'il soit pauvre.*

He is not unhappy, tho' he be poor.

*cet ouvrage est long, mais il est nécessaire.*

this work is long, but it is necessary.

*Lucinde a de l'esprit; cependant elle me déplaît.*

Lucinda is witty; nevertheless she displeases me.

*on vous blâme; vous avez pourtant raison.*

you are blamed; nevertheless you are in the right,

*il a toutefois réussi.*

he has however succeeded.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

He is very 1 poor 2, altho' 3  
his 4 relations 5 be very  
rich 6.

1 *Très*, adv. 2 *pauvre*, adj. 3  
*quoique*, conj. 4 *ses*, pron.  
adj. pl. 5 *par-ent*, pl. *ens*,  
n. m. 6 *riche*, adj.

you are not happy 1, tho' 2  
you be rich.

1 *heur-eux*, *euse*, adj. 2 *bien-que*, conj.

this 1 work 2 will perhaps 3  
be a 4 little 4 dry 5, but  
it will be useful 6.

1 *cet*, pron. adj. m. 2 *ou-  
vrage*, n. m. 3 *peut-être*,  
adv. 4 *un peu*. 5 *sec*, *èche*,  
adj. 6 *utile*, adj.

he is rich, nevertheless 1 he  
borrows 2 from 3 every 4  
body 4.

1 *cependant*. 2 *emprunter*, v. 1.  
3 *de*, prep. 4 *tout le monde*.



altho' he speaks 1 well 2, he  
however 3 persuades 4 no  
5 body 5.

there 1 are 1 bad 2 books 3,  
which 4 however 6 amuse  
5 the reader 7.

Damon has, all 1 his life-  
time 1, been the sport 2  
of passions 3; however 4  
he 5 knew how 5 to over-  
come 6 that 7 of gaming 8.

1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *bien*, adv. 3  
*pourtant*, conj. 4 *persuader*,  
v. 1. 5 *personne*, pron. nom.  
1 *il y a*. 2 *mauvais*, adj. 3  
*livre*, n. m. 4 *qui*, pron.  
5 *amuser*, v. 1. 6 *néanmoins*,  
conj. 7 *lecteur*, n. m.

1 *toute sa vie*. 2 *jouet*, n. m.  
3 *passion*, n. f. 4 *toutefois*,  
conj. 5 *il fut*. 6 *vaincre*,  
v. 6. 7 *celle*, pron. nom. f.  
8 *jeu*, n. m.

### Conjunctions Extensive.

These Conjunctions are

*Jusque*, to, even to.

*encore*, and yet.

*aussi*, also.

*même*, even.

*tant*, both.

*nonplus*, neither, no more.

*enfin*, in a word.

As these and the remaining Conjunctions, except *que*,  
answer almost in every respect to their English, I shall not  
lose time in exemplifying them.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

He has drank 1 the cup 2 to  
3 the very dregs 3.

he 1 suffered himself to be in-  
treated for a long while 1;  
and 2 yet 2 he 3 did it  
with 3 a 4 bad grace 4.

the enemies 1 have retired 2  
in 3 disorder 4; they have  
also 5 abandoned 6 their  
7 artillery 8.

you ask 2 for 2 it 1; I ask  
for it also 3.

he passes 1 for 2 a selfish 3,  
even 4 for a roguish 5 man  
5.

1 *Boire*, v. 5. 2 *calice*, n. m.  
3 *jusqu'à la lie*.

1 *il a été longtemps à se faire*  
*prier*. 2 *encore*, conj. 3 *ne*  
*l'a-t-il fait que de*. 4 *mau-*  
*vaise grace*.

1 *ennemi*, n. m. 2 *se retirer*,  
v. 1. 3 *en*, prep. 4 *désordre*,  
n. m. 5 *aussi*, conj. 6 *aban-*  
*donner*, v. 1. 7 *leur*, pron.  
adj. 8 *artillerie*, n. f.

1 *la*, pron. conj. f. 2 *deman-*  
*der*, v. 1. 3 *aussi*, conj.

1 *passer*, v. 1. 2 *pour*, prep.  
3 *intéressé*, adj. 4 *même*,  
conj. 5 *fripon*, n. m.

the

she 1 is 1 a lady 2 who 3  
pleases 4 every 5 body 5,  
both 6 women and men 6.

you have not found 1 the  
master 2, nor 3 the ser-  
vant 4 neither 5.

you have not understood 1  
my 2 meaning 3 no 4  
more 4 than 5 he 5.

Lucinda 1 is lively 2, witty  
3, generous 4, in 5 a word  
5 she possesses 6 all 7 sorts  
8 of good 9 qualities 10.

1 *c'est*. 2 *dame*, n. f. 3 *qui*,  
pron. 4 *plaire à*, v. 5. 5  
*tout le monde*. 6 *tant aux*  
*femmes qu'aux hommes*.

1 *trouver*, v. 1. 2 *maître*, n. m.  
3 *ni*, conj. 4 *domestique*, n.  
m. 5 *nonplus*, conj.

1 *comprendre*, v. 6. 2 *ma*,  
pron. adj. f. 3 *pensée*, n. f.  
4 *nonplus*, conj. 5 *que lui*.

1 *Lucinde*, n. f. 2 *enjoué*, adj.  
3 *spiritu-el, elle*, adj. 4 *géné-*  
*r-eux, euse*, adj. 5 *enfin*, conj.  
6 *posséder*, v. 1. 7 *tout*, adj.  
8 *sorte*, n. f. 9 *b-on, onne*,  
adj. 10 *qualité*, n. f.

### Periodical Conjunctions.

These Conjunctions are

*Lorsque*, when.

*quand*, when.

*dèsque*, as soon as, when.

*tandis*, whilst.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

You will obtain 1 favours 2,  
when 3 the 4 prime-mini-  
ster 4 will ask 6 them 5 for  
7 you 8.

don't fail 1 to 2 come 3,  
when 4 I 5 shall send for  
you 5.

you 1 must 1 learn 2 two 3  
fables 4, as 5 soon as 5  
you 6 have done writing  
6.

who 1 can 2 refuse 3, when  
4 a king 5 requests 6?

1 *Obtenir*, v. 2. 2 *grace*, n. f.  
3 *lorsque*, conj. or *quand*,  
conj. 4 *le premier ministre*.  
5 *les*, pron. conj. pl. 6 *de-*  
*mander*, v. 1. 7 *pour*, prep.  
8 *vous*, pron. nom.

1 *manquer*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep.  
3 *venir*, v. 2. 4 *quand*,  
conj. or *lorsque*, conj. 5 *je*  
*vous enverrai chercher*.

1 *il faut*, v. imp. 2 *apprendre*,  
v. 6. 3 *deux*, adj. 4 *fable*,  
n. f. 5 *dèsque*, conj. 6 *vous*  
*aurez fini d'écrire*.

1 *qui est ce qui*. 2 *pouvoir*, v.  
3. 3 *refuser*, v. 1. 4 *dèsque*,  
conj. 5 *roi*, n. m. 6 *de-*  
*mander*, v. 1.

one 1 must 1 strike 2 the iron 3, whilst 4 it 5 is 5 hot 6. 1 *il faut*. 2 *battre*, v. 4. 3 *fer*, n. m. 4 *tandisque*, conj. 5 *il est*. 6 *chaud*, adj.

### Motival Conjunctions.

These Conjunctions are

*Parceque*, because.

*puisque*, since.

*car*, for.

*d'autantque*, since.'

*comme*, since.

*aussi*, by reason of.

*attendu*, for the sake of.

*afin*, that.

the last whereof govern the conjunctive, with the Conjunction *que*, and the infinitive with the preposition *de*.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

We 1 must 1 forgive 2 our 3 enemies 4, because 5 God 6 bids 7 us so to do 7. 1 *Il faut* 2 *pardonner* à, v. 1. 3 *notre*, pl. *nos*, pron. adj. 4 *ennemi*, n. m. 5 *parceque*, conj. 6 *Dieu*, n. m. 7 *nous l'ordonne*.

we shall leave 2 you 1 alone 3, since 4 you don't like 5 our 6 company 7. 1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *laisser*, v. 1. 3 *seul*, adj. 4 *puisque*, conj. 5 *aimer*, v. 1. 6 *notre*, pron. adj. 7 *compagnie*, n. f.

all 1 men 2 are mad 3, for 4 they all endeavour 5 to 6 make themselves 6 unhappy 7. 1 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj. 2 *homme*, n. m. 3 *f-ou*, plur. m. *oux*, adj. 4 *car*, conj. 5 *tâcher*, v. 1. 6 *dè se rendre*. 7 *malheur-eux*, euse, adj.

they will certainly 2 surrender 1, since 3 the conqueror 4 is full 5 of mercy 6. 1 *se rendre*, v. 6. 2  *sûrement*, adv. 3 *d'autantque*, conj. 4 *vainqueur*, n. m. 5 *plein*, adj. 6 *clémence*, n. f.

since 1 we can 2 be attacked 3, let 4 us be upon our guards 4. 1 *comme*, conj. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 3 *attaquer*, v. 1. 4 *tenons nous sur nos gardes*.

she has recommended 2 this 3 affair 4 to 1 me 1, by 5 reason of its being 5 of the 5. 1 *me*, pron. conj. 2 *recommander*, v. 1. 3 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 4 *affaire*, n. f. 5 *aussi* utmost



- utmost 6 importance 7 to  
8 her 9.
- they have travelled 1 all 2  
night 2 for 3 the sake of  
the moon 3.
- for 1 conveniency's sake 1,  
set 2 out 2 to-morrow 3.
- let us set out quickly 1, that  
2 we may arrive 3 before  
4 the others 5.
- let us do 1 our duty 2, that  
3 no 4 body may have  
reason 4 to 5 blame 7 us  
6.
- est-elle.* 6 *dernier*, adj. 7  
*conséquence*, n. f. 8 *pour*,  
prep. 9 *elle*, pron. nom. f.
- 1 *voyager*, v. 1. 2 *toute la*  
*nuit.* 3 *attendu le clair de*  
*la lune.*
- 1 *attendu la commodité.* 2 *par-*  
*tir*, v. 2. 3 *demain*, adv.
- 1 *promptement*, adv. 2 *afin de*,  
conj. 3 *arriver*, v. 1. 4  
*avant*, prep. 5 *autre*, pron.  
nom.
- 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *devoir*, n. m.  
3 *afin que*, conj. 4 *personne*  
*n'ait raison.* 5 *de*, prep. 6  
*nous*, pron. conj. 7 *blâmer*,  
v. 1.

*Conjunctions Conclusive.*

These Conjunctions are

*Donc*, then.*ainsi*, therefore.*par conséquent*, consequently.*partant*, therefore.*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

- You wish 1 to 2 see 4 us 3,  
we 5 must then 5 shew 6  
ourselves 6.
- 1 *Souhaiter*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep.  
3 *nous*, pron. conj. pl. 4  
*voir*, v. 3. 5 *il faut donc.*  
6 *nous montrer.*
- He complains 1, he has then  
3 used 4 her 2 ill 4.
- 1 *se plaindre*, v. 6. 2 *la*,  
pron. conj. f. 3 *donc*, conj.  
4 *maltraiter*, v. 1.
- you have promised 2 it 1;  
consequently 3 you 4 can-  
not 4 refuse 5 it.
- 1 *le, la*, pl. *les*, pron. conj. 2  
*promettre*, v. 4. 3 *parconsé-*  
*quent*, conj. 4 *vous ne pou-*  
*vez.* 5 *refuser*, v. 1.
- he is humane 1 and 2 chari-  
table 3, therefore 4 the  
poor 5 may 6 hope 7 to be  
relieved 9 by 8 him 8.
- 1 *humain*, adj. 2 *et*, conj. 3  
*charitable*, adj. 4 *ainsi*, conj.  
5 *pauvre*, n. m. 6 *pouvoir*,  
v. 3. 7 *espérer*, v. 1. 8 *d'en*,  
prep. and pron. conj. 9  
*assister*, v. 1.

- I have paid 2 you 1 back 2 1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *payer*,  
 what 3 I had borrowed 4, v. 1. 3 *ce que*, pron. nom.  
 therefore 5 we are quit 6. 4 *emprunter*, v. 1. 5 *par-*  
*tant*, conj. 6 *quite*, adj.

### Conjunctions Explicative.

These Conjunctions are

*Comme*, like, as.

*entantque*, as.

*savoir*, viz.

*surtout*, especially.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

- They have behaved 1 like 1 *Se comporter*, v. 1. 2 *comme*,  
 2 fools 3. conj. 3 *f-ou*, plur. *oux*, n. m.  
 he presented 1 himself 1, as 1 *se présenter*, v. 1. 2 *comme*,  
 2 I arrived 3. conj. 3 *arriver*, v. 1.  
 Christ 1 has a father 2 as 3 1 *Jesus Christ*, n. m. 2 *père*,  
 a God 4, and 5 a mother n. m. 3 *entantque*, conj. 4  
 6 as 7 a man 8. *Dieu*, n. m. 5 *et*, conj. 6  
*mère*, n. f. 7 *entantque*, conj.  
 8 *homme*, n. m.  
 there 1 are 1 three 2 orders 1 *il y a*. 2 *trois*, adj. 3 *ordre*,  
 3 in 4 France, viz. 5 the n. m. 4 *en*, prep. 5 *savoir*.  
 clergy 6, the nobility 7, 6 *clergé*, n. m. 7 *noblesse*,  
 and the commons 8. n. f. 8 *tiers-état*, n. m.  
 he is fit 1 for 2 many 3 1 *propre*, adj. 2 *à*, prep. 3  
 things 4, especially 5 for *plusieurs*, adj. m. and f.  
 6 war 6. plur. 4 *chose*, n. f. 5 *sur-*  
*tout*, conj. 6 *à la guerre*.

### Conjunctions Transitive.

These Conjunctions are

*Or*, now.

*aureste*, as for the rest.

*pour*, as for.

*quant*, as for.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

- All 1 men 2 are liars 3; now 1 *T-out*, pl. m. *ous*, adj. 2  
 4, my 5 dear 6 friend 7, *homme*, n. m. 3 *ment-eur*,  
 you are a man. *euse*, adj. 4 *or*, conj. 5 *mon*,  
*ma*, pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 6  
*cher*, adj. 7 *ami*, n. m.

shew

shew 1 him 2 the goodness 3  
of your 4 cause 5; as 6  
for the rest 6, don't forget  
7 the resources 8 of mo-  
ney 9.

I 1 only beg of you to 1  
read 2 my book 3, before  
4 you judge of it 4; as  
for the rest use 5 all your  
rights 6.

my brother 1 and 2 sister 3  
made 5 him 4 each 6 a  
present 7; the 8 one 8  
gave 9 him a horse 10;  
as 11 for 11 the other 12,  
she gave him a sword-knot  
13.

the news 1 of the victory 2  
is certain 3; as 4 for 4  
that 5 of the number 6 of  
the dead 7, we 8 doubt it  
8.

1 *montrer*, v. 1. 2 *lui* pron.  
conj. 3 *bonté*, n. f. 4 *votre*,  
pl. *vos*, pron. adj. 5 *cause*,  
n. f. 6 *dureste*, conj. 7  
*oublier*, v. 1. 8 *ressource*,  
n. f. 9 *argent*, n. m.

1 *je ne vous demande que de*.  
2 *lire*, v. 4. 3 *livre*, n. m.  
4 *avant que d'en juger*. 5  
*se servir de*, v. 2. 6 *droit*,  
n. m.

1 *frère*, n. m. 2 *et*, conj.  
3 *sœur*, n. f. 4 *lui*, pron.  
conj. 5 *faire*, v. 5. 6 *cha-*  
*cun*, pron. nom. 7 *présent*,  
n. m. 8 *l'un*. 9 *donner*, v.  
1. 10 *chev-al*, pl. *aux*, n.  
m. 11 *pour*, prep. 12 *autre*,  
pron. nom. 13 *nœud d'épée*,  
n. m.

1 *nouvelle*, n. f. 2 *viçtoire*, n.  
f. 3 *sûr*, adj. 4 *quant à*.  
5 *celle*, pron. nom. f. 6  
*nombre*, n. m. 7 *mort*, n. m.  
8 *on en doute*.

### *The conductive Conjunction que.*

This Conjunction being often made use of in French speech, I must be a little particular upon it.

#### R U L E I.

When *que* comes after a Verb denoting an affirmation, or a kind of certainty, the Verb following must be used in the indicative, as

*Je sais qu'il est malade.*

I know that he is sick.

*je conviens qu'il m'a payé.*

I grant that he has paid me.

*j'espère qu'il viendra.*

I hope that he will come.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

You know 1 that he is 2 very  
3 well 4.

1 *Savoir*, v. 3. 2 *se porter*, v.  
1. 3 *très*, adv. 4 *bien*, adv.

I am



|  |  |
|--|--|
| I am sure 1 that he is come 2.                       | 1 <i>sûr</i> , adj. 2 <i>venir</i> , v. 2.   |
| I maintain 1 that he is here 2.                      | 1 <i>soutenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>ici</i> , adv.  |
| we are sure that he is not gone 1 out 1.             | 1 <i>sortir</i> , v. 2.  |
| I think 1 that he will be here to 2 morrow 2.        | 1 <i>croire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>demain</i> , adv.   |
| we hope 1 that you will forgive 2 your 3 daughter 4. | 1 <i>espérer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pardonner</i> à, v. 1. 3 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 4 <i>filles</i> , n. f. |

## R U L E II.

When *que* comes after a Verb joined to a negative particle, or denoting doubt, ignorance, fear, desire, or not expressing any thing positive, it governs the conjunctive, as

|                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Je n'espère pas qu'il vienne.</i>  | I don't expect his coming.  |
| <i>je doute qu'il le fasse.</i>       | I doubt his doing it.       |
| <i>je crains qu'il ne s'en aille.</i> | I fear his going away.      |
| <i>je souhaite qu'il le prenne.</i>   | I wish that he may take it. |
| <i>je veux qu'il revienne.</i>        | I will have him return.     |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| I don't grant 1 that he has paid 3 me 2. | 1 <i>Convenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>me</i> , pron. conj. 3 <i>payer</i> , v. 1. |
| I doubt 1 her 2 being here 2.            | 1 <i>douter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>qu'elle soit ici</i> .                        |
| I fear 1 that 2 he will die 2.           | 1 <i>craindre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>qu'il ne meure</i> .                        |
| I wish 1 he may finish 2.                | 1 <i>souhaiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>finir</i> , v. 2.                          |
| I 1 will have him 1 satisfy 3 me.        | 1 <i>je veux qu'il</i> . 2 <i>satisfaire</i> , v. 5.                       |

## R U L E III.

*Que* answers sometimes to the English words *that* or *to the end that*, *how*, *but*, *as soon as*, *without*, *since*, *unless*, *why*, *altho'* or *tho'*, *as*, *when*, and *if*, as

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Approchez vous, que je vous parle.</i> | come near, that I may speak to you. |
| <i>que vous êtes changé !</i>             | how altered you are !               |

vous

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>vous ne faites que rire.</i>   | you do nothing but laugh.                                      |
| <i>qu'il boive plus qu'à l'ordinaire, il est malade.</i>                            | as soon as he drinks more than usual, he is sick.              |
| <i>il ne sauroit sortir sans s'enrhumer.</i>  | he cannot go out without catching cold.                        |
| <i>il y a huit jours qu'il est parti.</i>   | it is a week since he has set out.                             |
| <i>je ne partirai pas que tout ne soit prêt.</i>                                    | I shall not set out, unless every thing be ready.              |
| <i>que n'obéissez vous à votre maître ?</i>   | why don't you obey your master ?                               |
| <i>tout habile homme qu'il est, il n'a pu me répondre.</i>                          | tho' he is an able man, he could not answer me.                |
| <i>rempli qu'il étoit de préjugés, il nia tout.</i>                                 | as he was full of prejudices, he denied all.                   |
| <i>comme l'armée étoit rangé en bataille &amp; qu'elle étoit prête à combattre.</i> | as the army was drawn in order of battle, and ready to engage. |
| <i>quand vous aurez reconnu votre faute, &amp; que vous l'aurez réparée.</i>        | when you have acknowledged your fault, and made amends for it. |
| <i>si vous le trouvez, &amp; qu'il vous demande où je suis.</i>                     | if you find him, and he asks you where I am.                   |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Come 1 here 2 that 3 I may see 5 you 4.                         | 1 <i>Venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>ici</i> , adv. 3 <i>que</i> , conj. 4 <i>vous</i> , pron. conj. 5 <i>voir</i> , v. 3.                                       |
| how 1 different you are 1 from 2 what 3 you was formerly 4!     | 1 <i>que vous êtes différent</i> , 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>ce que</i> , pron. nom. 4 <i>autrefois</i> , adv.   |
| you 1 do nothing but 1 prattle 2 and 3 play 4.                  | 1 <i>vous ne faites que</i> . 2 <i>causer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>&amp;</i> , conj. 4 <i>badiner</i> , v. 1.   |
| as 1 soon as he takes 1 the country 3 air 2, he is cured 4.     | 1 <i>qu'il prenne</i> . 2 <i>air</i> , n. m. 3 <i>campagne</i> , n. f. 4 <i>guérir</i> , v. 2.  |
| he 1 cannot 1 open 2 his 3 mouth 4 without 5 telling 5 a lie 6. | 1 <i>il ne sauroit</i> . 2 <i>ouvrir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>sa</i> , pron. adj. f. 4 <i>bouche</i> , n. f. 5 <i>qu'il ne dise</i> . 6 <i>mensonge</i> , n. m. |

- it 1 is a fortnight 1 since 2  
 he is returned 3 from 4  
 Jamaica 5.  
 I shall not go 1 out 1, unless  
 2 you be ready 3.  
 why 1 don't you speak 2  
 more 3 slowly 4?  
 tho' 1 he is a child 1, he may  
 2 defend 3 himself 3.
- as 1 he had a good opinion  
 of me 1, he would not be-  
 lieve 2 what 3 they said 4  
 against 5 me 6.
- just 1 as 1 we had dined 2,  
 and 3 we were ready to go  
 out 3.
- when 1 you have confessed 1  
 your 2 crime 3, and 4 I  
 have pardoned you 4.
- if 1 you meet 3 him 2, and  
 4 he speaks to you 4.
- 1 *il y a quinze jours.* 2 *que,*  
 conj. 3 *revenir,* v. 2. 4 *de,*  
 prep. 5 *Jamäique,* n. f.  
 1 *sortir,* v. 2. 2 *que,* conj. 3  
*prêt,* adj.  
 1 *que,* conj. 2 *parler,* v. 1. 3  
*plus,* adv. 4 *lentement,* adv.  
 1 *tout enfant qu'il est.* 2 *pou-*  
*voir,* v. 3. 3 *se défendre,*  
 v. 6.  
 1 *prévenu qu'il étoit en ma*  
*faveur.* 2 *croire,* v. 5. 3 *ce*  
*que,* pron. nom. 4 *dire,* v.  
 4. 5 *contre,* prep. 6 *moi,*  
 pron. nom.  
 1 *comme,* conj. 2 *diner,* v. 1.  
 3 *Et que nous allions sortir.*  
 1 *quand vous aurez avoué.* 2  
*votre,* pron. adj. 3 *crime,*  
 n. m. 4 *Et que je vous au-*  
*rai pardonné.*  
 1 *si,* conj. 2 *le,* pron. conj.  
 m. 3 *rencontrer,* v. 1. 4 *Et*  
*qu'il vous parle.*

## OF INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is a part of Speech that denotes some sudden emotion of the mind; as joy, grief, fear, hatred, &c.

Joy is expressed with the words *ah!* *ha!* *bon!* good!

We express grief with the words *ha!* *oh!* *hélas!* *alas!*

Our hatred is denoted by the words *fi!* *fi donc!* fy upon!

We encourage people with the words *ça,* come on; *al-*  
*lons,* come on; *courage,* cheer up.

We shew our admiration with the words *ha!* *ho!* *heigh!*

We call with the words *bola,* *hé;* *oh,* *soho;* and we im-  
 pose silence with the word *paix,* hush.

*Exercises*



*Exercises upon the Interjections.*

- Good 1 ! here 2 are 2 news 1 *Bon*, interj. 2 *voilà*, adv.  
 3 for 4 you 5. 3 *nouvelle*, n. f. 4 *pour*,  
 prep. 5 *vous*, pron. nom.
- I have read 1 your 2 first 3 1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *votre*, pron.  
 tragedy 4, alas 5 ! I have adj. 3 *premier*, adj. 4 *tra-*  
 read your second 6, oh 7 ! gédie, n. f. 5 *hélas*, interj.  
 6 *second*, adj. 7 *holà*, interj.
- ha 1 ! how 2 do I fear 2 to 1 *ha !* 2 *que je crains*. 3 *de*,  
 3 displease 5 him 4 ? prep. 4 *lui*, pron. conj. 5  
*déplaire*, v. 5.
- fy 1, fy, you don't think 3 1 *fi*, interj. 2 *y*, pron. conj.  
 of 2 it 2. 3 *penfer*, v. 1.
- come 1, let us set 2 out 2. 1 *allons*, interj. 2 *partir*, v. 2.  
 come, cheer 2 up 2. 1 *courage*, interj.
- heigh 1 ! how 2 fine it is 2 ? 1 *ho !* interj. 2 *que c'est beau ?*  
 oh 1 ! gentlemen 2, don't go 1 *hé !* interj. 2 *messieurs*, n.  
 3 so 4 fast 5. m. pl. 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *si*,  
 adv. 5 *vîte*, adv.
- hush 1 there 2. 1 *paix*, interj. 2 *là*, adv.

## FRENCH SYNTAX.

**H**AVING partly shewed the joining of *French* words together, I have already treated of Syntax; few pages will now be sufficient to explain what remains to be said upon this subject.

### OF ARTICLES.

#### RULE I.

We use two articles, when a noun is placed immediately after the adjective *tout*, all; as *de tout le monde*, of all the world.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| He is the enemy 1 of all 2     | 1 <i>Ennemi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>t-out</i> , pl.     |
| mankind 3.                     | m. <i>ous</i> , adj. 3 <i>monde</i> , n. m.      |
| are you the judge 1 of all the | 1 <i>juge</i> , n. m. 2 <i>duché</i> , n. m.     |
| dutchy 2?                      |  |
| he is the Lord 1 of all the    | 1 <i>seigneur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>village</i> ,     |
| villages 2.                    | n. m.  |
| you are the friend 1 of all    | 1 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Anglois</i> , n. m.    |
| the English 2.                 |  |
| this 1 belongs 2 to 3 all the  | 1 <i>ceci</i> , pron. nom. 2 <i>appartenir</i> , |
| world 4.                       | v. 2. 3 <i>à</i> , prep. 4                       |
|                                | <i>monde</i> , n. m.                             |

#### RULE II.

Two articles must also be used, when an adjective, that is not an adjective of number, is placed after its Noun, to shew its surname or condition, as

*De Guillaume le Conquérant.* Of William the Conqueror.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This 1 palace 2 belonged 3  
formerly 4 to Philip 5 the  
6 handsome 6.

here 1 is 1 the picture 2 of  
Lewis 3 the 4 well-be-  
loved 4.

we have read 1 the books 2  
of Peter 3 the 4 dreamer 4.

I have 1 a castle 2 that 3 be-  
longed to Charles the 4  
bald 4.

1 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 2 *palais*,  
n. m. 3 *appartenir*, v. 2. 4  
*autrefois*, adv. 5 *Philippe*,  
n. m. 6 *le bel*.

1 *voici*, adv. 2 *portrait*, n. m.  
3 *Louis*, n. m. 4 *le bien-*  
*aimé*.

1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *livre*, n. m. 3  
*Pierre*, n. m. 4 *le radoteur*.

1 *avoir*, v. 3. 2 *chat-eau*, pl.  
*eaux*, nm. 3 *qui*, pron. 4  
*le chauve*.

## R U L E III.

They must also be used, when the superlative is placed  
immediately after its Noun, as

*aux hommes les plus méchants.* to the most wicked men.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You are one 1 of the best 2  
men 3 in 4 Italy 4.

they are the most 1 learned  
2 men in 3 Poland 3.

she is one 1 of the most  
beautiful 2 women 3 in 4  
England 4.

she is married 1 to the most  
generous 2 man in 3  
France 3.

1 *Un*, adj. m. 2 *meilleur*,  
adj. 3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *d' I-*  
*talie*.

1 *plus*, adv. 2 *sav-ant*, pl.  
*ans*, adj. 3 *de Pologne*.

1 *une*, adj. f. 2 *b-eau*, elle, adj.  
3 *femme*, n. f. 4 *d' Angle-*  
*terre*.

1 *marier*, v. 1. 2 *géné-r-eux*,  
*euse*, adj. 3 *de France*.

## R U L E IV.

Lastly, they must be used, when the words *Monsieur*,  
*Sir*; *Madame*, *Madam*; *Monseigneur*, my Lord, and such  
like, are joined to and come before Nouns having the first  
article, as

*à Messieurs les Ecoffois.*

To the Scotch.

*Exercises*



*Exercifes upon this Rule.*

I ſhall ſpeak 1 to the chan-  
cellor 4 this 2 afternoon 3.

I have written 1 this morn-  
ing 2 to your 3 brothers  
4.

I have read 1 the duke 3 of  
Richmond's ſpeech 2.  
the duke 1 of Modena 2 will  
paſs 3 through 4 Roan 5.

1 *Parler*, v. 1. 2 *ce*, *cette*,  
pron. adj. 3 *après-midi*, n.  
f. 4 *chancelier*, n. m.

1 *écrire*, v. 4. 2 *matin*, n. m.  
3 *votre*, pl. *vos*, pron. adj.  
4 *frère*, n. m.

1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *harangue*, n. f.  
3 *duc*, n. m.

1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *Modène*, n. m.  
3 *paſſer*, v. 1. 4 *par*, prep.  
5 *Rouen*, n. m.

## O F N O U N S.

## R U L E I.

In quotations, the Nominative Caſe to the Verb muſt be placed after it, as

*Tous les hommes ſont foux, dit  
Boileau.*

All men are mad, ſays Boi-  
leau.

*Exercifes upon this Rule.*

In 1 ſhort 1, ſaid 2 that 3  
good 4 king 5, I ſhall not  
think 7 myſelf 6 happy 8,  
before 9 I 10 have com-  
pleted 10 the happineſs  
11 of my 12 ſubjects 13.

Gentlemen 1, answered 3  
my friend 4 to 2 them 2,  
you 5 only think of plea-  
ſure 5, and 6 neglect 7  
the glory 8 of the prince  
9.

1 *Enfin*, adv. 2 *dire*, v. 4. 3  
*ce*, pron. adj. m. 4 *b-on, onne*,  
adj. 5 *roi*, n. m. 6 *me*, pron.  
conj. 7 *croire*, v. 5. 8 *heu-  
r-eux, euſe*, adj. 9 *que*, conj.  
10 *je n'ai fait*. 11 *bonheur*,  
n. m. 12 *mon, ma*, pl. *mes*,  
pron. adj. 13 *ſujet*, n. m.

1 *Mefſieurs*. 2 *leur*, pron. conj.  
3 *répondre*, v. 6. 4 *ami*, n.  
m. 5 *vous ne ſongez qu'au  
plaiſir*. 6 *Et*, conj. 7 *né-  
gliger*, v. 1. 8 *gloire*, n. f.  
9 *prince*, n. m.

## R U L E II.

In narrations, the Nominative Caſe to the Verb may be placed after it, as

1

*D'abord*

*D'abord parurent les domestiques; quelque tems après vint la maîtresse du logis.*

At first the servants appeared; and some time after the mistress of the house came.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

On 1 our 2 arrival 3 appeared 4 a gentleman 5 to 6 receive 8 us 7, two 9 minutes after 9 the King 10 came 11.

1 à, prep. 2 notre, pron. adj. 3 arrivée, n. f. 4 paroître, v. 5 5 gentilhomme, n. m. 6 pour, conj. 7 nous, pron. conj. 8 recevoir, v. 3. 9 au bout de deux minutes. 10 Roi, n. m. 11 venir, v. 2.

this 1 happened 2 after 3 a solemn 5 sacrifice 4 in 6 which 7 the blood 9 of a thousand 10 victims 11 ran 8 before 12 the god 13 of Israel 14.

1 ceci, pron. nom. 2 arriver, v. 1. 3 après, prep. 4 sacrifice, n. m. 5 solennel, elle, adj. 6 dans, prep. 7 lequel, pron. nom. 8 couler, v. 1. 9 sang, n. m. 10 mille, adj. 11 victime, n. f. 12 en présence de. 13 dieu, n. m. 14 Israël, n. m.

R U L E III.

When in interrogations, the Nominative to the Verb is a Noun used without a conjunctive pronoun, that nominative must be placed after the Verb, as

*A quoi pense votre frère?*

What is your brother thinking of?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

What 1 does merit 3 avail 2 without 4 friends 4? how 1 much 1 does 2 your 3 brother 4 get 2 every 5 day 5?

how 1 does 2 your 3 sister 4 do 2?

how 1 many 1 servants 2 had 3 your uncle 4?

1 à quoi. 2 servir, v. 2. 3 mérite, n. m. 4 sans protection. 1 combien, adv. 2 gagner, v. 1. 3 votre, pron. adj. 4 frère, n. m. 5 par jour. 1 comment, adv. 2 se porter, v. 1. 3 votre, pron. adj. 4 sœur, n. f. 1 combien de, adv. and art. 2 domestique, n. m. 3 avoir, v. 3. 4 oncle, n. m.

H

R U L E

## RULE IV.

A Noun, having an article common to the Genitive and Ablative cases, is in the first of these, when it denotes things as united, as

*Le temple du Seigneur.*

The temple of the Lord.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Alexander 1 the Great 2  
was son 3 of Philip 4 king  
5 of Macedonia 6.

1 *Alexandre*, n. m. 2 *grand*,  
adj. 3 *fil*, n. m. 4 *Philippe*,  
n. m. 5 *roi*, n. m. 6 *Ma-*  
*cédoine*, n. f.

you are the son of a great  
man 1, and ought 2 to  
tread 3 upon 4 the steps 5  
of your 6 father 7.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *devoir*, v. 3.  
3 *marcher*, v. 1. 4 *sur*,  
prep. 5 *trace*, n. f. 6 *votre*,  
pron. adj. 7 *père*, n. m.

the king of Prussia 1 is a  
great general 2.

1 *Prusse*, n. f. 2 *général*,  
pl. *aux*, n. m.

## RULE V.

It is in the Ablative, when it denotes separation, division, or privation, as

*A mon départ de Rome.*

At my departure from Rome,

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The Jesuits 1 of Paraguay 2  
have been expelled 3 that  
4 country 5.

1 *Jésuite*, n. m. 2 *Paraguay*,  
n. m. 3 *chasser de*, v. 1. 4  
*ce*, pron. adj. m. 5 *pays*, n. m.

that 1 happened 2 two 3  
years 4 before 5 my 6 de-  
parture 7 from Toledo 8.

1 *cela*, pron. nom. 2 *arriver*,  
v. 1. 3 *deux*, adj. 4 *an*, n.  
m. 5 *avant*, prep. 6 *mon*,  
pron. adj. m. 7 *départ*, n.  
m. 8 *Tolède*, n. m.

I shall come 1 to see 3 you 2  
before my departure from  
this 4 city 5.

1 *venir*, v. 2. 2 *vous*, pron.  
conj. 3 *voir*, v. 3. 4 *cette*,  
pron. adj. f. 5 *ville*, n. f.

speak 1 to 2 him 2 before 3  
you set 4 out 4 from Paris.

1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *lui*, pron.  
conj. 3 *avant que*, conj. 4  
*partir*, v. 2.

must 1 I be 1 parted 2 from  
you 3?

1 *faut il que je sois*. 2 *séparé*.  
3 *vous*, pron. nom.

## RULE



## R U L E VI.

It is also in the Ablative, when it is governed by a Verb, or a participle, as

*Il est aimé de son pere.*

*avez vous reçu un présent du  
Duc ?*

He is loved by his father.

have you received a present  
from the Duke ?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This 1 musician 2 is very 3  
well 3 known 4 by the  
great 5.

it 1 is in your power 1 to 2  
make 4 me 3 happy 5.

why 1 have you stript 3 him  
2 of his 4 estate 5 ?

he is hated 1 by 2 every  
body 2.

this 1 princess 2 is beloved  
3 by 4 every 5 body 5.

1 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 2 *Musi-*  
*cien*, n. m. 3 *très*, adv. 4  
*connoître*, v. 5. 5 *grand*,  
n. m.

1 *il dépend de vous*, 2 *de*, prep.  
3 *me*, pron. conj. 4 *rendre*,  
v. 6. 5 *heur-eux*, euse, adj.

1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *le*, pron.  
conj. m. 3 *dépouiller*, v. 1. 4  
*son*, pron. adj. m. 5 *bien*, n. m.

1 *haïr*, v. 2. 2 *de tout le*  
*monde*.

1 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 2 *prin-*  
*cesse*, n. f. 3 *aimer*, v. 1. 4  
*dé*, prep. 5 *tout le monde*.

## R U L E VII.

Such Nouns, as have or may take *to* before them in Eng-  
lish, are usually translated by the French Dative, as

*J'aspire à la gloire.*

I aspire to glory.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

God 1 has promised 2 to A-  
braham a numerous 3 pro-  
geny 4.

good 1 counsels 2 are ne-  
cessary 3 to 4 young peo-  
ple 4.

the King 1 has granted 2 a  
favour 3 to my 4 father 5.

1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *promettre*, v.  
4. 3 *nombr-eux*, euse, adj.  
4 *postérité*, n. f.

1 *b-on*, onne, adj. 2 *conseil*, n.  
m. 3 *nécessaire*, adj. 4 *aux*  
*jeunes gens*.

1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *accorder*, v. 1.  
3 *faveur*, n. f. 4 *mon*, pron.  
adj. m. 5 *père*, n. m.

H 2

plea-

pleasures 1 are often 2 hurtful 3 to health 4.

1 *plaisir*, n. m. 2 *souvent*, adv. 3 *pernicieux*, *ieuse*, adj. 4 *santé*, n. f.

## R U L E VIII.

Such Nouns, as express the term of an action, or are governed by Prepositions, are in the Accusative, as

*Le craignez vous ?*  
*je suis devant vous.*

Do you fear him ?  
I am before you.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have studied 1 philosophy  
2 in 3 Newton's 5 writings 4.

1 *Etudier*, v. 1. 2 *philosophie*, n. f. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *écrit*, n. m. 5 *Newton*, n. m.

I asked 1 for 1 his 2 friendship 3, and 4 offered 6 him 5 mine 7.

1 *demander*, v. 1. 2 *son*, pron. adj. 3 *amitié*, n. f. 4 *et*, conj. 5 *lui*, pron. conj. 6 *offrir*, v. 2. 7 *la mienne*, pron. nom. f.

you have at 1 last 1 overcome 2 my 3 resistance 4.

1 *enfin*, adv. 2 *vaincre*, v. 6. 3 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 4 *résistance*, n. f.

you have delivered 2 me 1 from the danger 3 in 4 which 4 I was 5.

1 *me*, pron. conj. 2 *délivrer*, v. 1. 3 *danger*, n. m. 4 *où*, adv. 5 *être*, v. 4.

he has appeared 1 before 2 the judge 3.

1 *paraître* v. 5. 2 *devant*, prep. 3 *juge*, n. m.

## R U L E IX.

The Vocative must be used, when we address ourselves to persons, or things, as

*Entrez, messieurs.*  
*ô terre de Juda.*

Come in, gentlemen.  
o land of Judah.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Brave 1 soldiers 2, you have got 3 a great 4 deal 4 of glory 5.

1 *Brave*, adj. 2 *soldat*, n. m. 3 *acquérir*, v. 2. 4 *beaucoup de*, adv. and prep. 5 *gloire*, n. f.

O heavens 1, hear 2 my 3

1 *ciel*, plur. *ieux*, n. m. 2 voice

voice 4, o earth 5, lend  
6 your 7 ear 7.

*écouter*, v. 1. 3 *ma*, pron.  
adj. f. 4 *voix*, n. f. 5 *terre*,  
n. f. 6 *prêter*, v. 1. 7 *l'o-*  
*reille*.

judge 1 me 2, O God 3,  
and 4 plead 5 my cause 6.

1 *juger*, v. 1. 2 *moi*, pron.  
conj. 3 *Dieu*, n. m. 4 *&*,  
conj. 5 *plaider*, v. 1. 6  
*cause*, n. f.

### R U L E X.

Such Nouns, as in English are placed before a parti-  
ciple active with *of* between both, govern the infinitive  
with *de* before it, as

The art of making war.  
the desire of getting.

*L'art de faire la guerre.*  
*le désir d'acquérir.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have not the art 1 of pleas-  
ing 2.

1 *Art*, n. m. 2 *plaire*, v. 5.

he has a 1 mighty desire 1  
of going 2 to 3 Constan-  
tinople 4.

1 *grand'envie*. 2 *aller*, v. 1.  
3 *à*, prep. 4 *Constanti-*  
*nople*, n. m.

the desire 1 of getting 2  
riches 3 is natural 4 to 5  
men 5.

1 *désir*, n. m. 2 *amasser*, v. 1.  
3 *richesses*, n. f. plur. 4  
*natur-el*, *elle*, adj. 5 *aux*  
*hommes*.

## Of A D J E C T I V E S.

### R U L E I.

When a collective Noun, as *amas*, heap; *foule*, croud;  
*nombre*, number; *troupe*, troop; *la pluspart*, the greatest  
part; *la moitié*, the half, &c. is followed by a Genitive,  
the Adjective must agree with that Genitive, as

There is a part of the palace  
burnt.

*Il y a une partie du palais*  
*brulé.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I met 1 a multitude 2 of  
drunken 4 peasants 3.

1 *Rencontrer*, v. 1. 2 *foule*,  
n. f. 3 *paysan*, n. m. 4 *ivre*,  
adj.

H 3

he



he found 1 a part 2 of his 3  
soldiers 4 wounded 5.

when 1 he saw 2 the half 3  
of his people 4 killed 5,  
he ran 6 away 6.

there 1 was 1 a part of the  
loaf 2 eat 3.

1 *trouver*, v. 1. 2 *partie*, n. f.  
3 *son, sa*, pl. *ses*, adj. 4 *soldat*, n. m. 5 *blesser*, v. 1.  
1 *quand*, conj. 2 *voir*, v. 3. 3  
*moitié*, n. f. 4 *monde*, n. m.  
5 *tuer*, v. 1. 6 *s'enfuir*, v. 2.  
1 *il y avoit*. 2 *pain*, n. m. 3  
*manger*, v. 1.

## R U L E II.

Two or more singulars being equal to a plural, the Adjective and verb common to both must be used in the plural, as

*L'esprit & le corps sont essentiels à l'homme.*

The soul and body are essential to man.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Bread 1 and 2 wine 3 are  
useful 4 to 5 mankind 5.

gluttony 1 and drunkenness  
2 are pernicious 3 to  
health 4.

the mother 1, daughter 2,  
and niece 3, are very 4  
handsome 5.

his 1 brother 2 and mine 3  
are two 4 bosom 5 friends  
5.

1 *Pain*, n. m. 2 *&*, conj. 3  
*vin*, n. m. 4 *utile*, adj. 5  
*au genre humain*.

1 *gourmandise*, n. f. 2 *ivrognerie*, n. f. 3 *nuisible*, adj.  
4 *santé*, n. f.

1 *mère*, n. f. 2 *filles*, n. f. 3  
*nièce*, n. f. 4 *très*, adv. 5  
*beau, elle*, adj.

1 *son*, pron. adj. m. 2 *frère*, n. m.  
3 *le mien*, pron. nom. m. 4  
*deux*, adj. pl. 5 *amis intimes*.

## R U L E III.

*Digne*, worthy.

*indigne*, unworthy.

*capable*, capable.

*incapable*, incapable.

*charmé*, charmed.

*content*, pleased.

*mécontent*, displeased.

*chargé*, loaded, commanded.

and such like Adjectives and

*taxé*, taxed.

*accusé*, accused.

*comblé*, loaded.

*las*, tired.

*ennuyé*, weary.

*fatigué*, weary.

*avide*, greedy.

*fâché*, sorry.

Participles, as likewise Adjectives

jectives signifying plenty or want, fullness or emptiness, govern the Genitive with the Preposition *de*, as

*Il est digne de louange.* He is worthy of praise.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| My 1 brother 2 is worthy of<br>the esteem 3 you have for<br>4 him 5. | 1 <i>Mon</i> , pron. nom. 2 <i>frère</i> ,<br>n. m. 3 <i>estime</i> , n. f. 4 <i>pour</i> ,<br>prep. 5 <i>lui</i> , pron. nom. |
| he is unworthy of the honour<br>1 you do 3 him 2.                    | 1 <i>honneur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>lui</i> , pron.<br>conj. 3 <i>faire</i> , v. 5.  |
| I am charmed with his 1<br>conduct 2.                                | 1 <i>sa</i> , pron. adj. f. 2 <i>conduite</i> ,<br>n. f.   |
| are you pleased with your 1<br>bargain 2?                            | 1 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 2 <i>marché</i> ,<br>n. m.   |
| we are tired of life 1.  | 1 <i>vie</i> , n. f.   |
| you are too 1 greedy of glo-<br>ry 2.                                | 1 <i>trop</i> , adv. 2 <i>gloire</i> , n. f.   |
| this 1 cask 2 is full 3 of wine<br>4.                                | 1 <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. m. 2 <i>tonn-eau</i> ,<br>plur. <i>eaux</i> , n. m. 3 <i>plein</i> ,<br>adj. 4 <i>vin</i> , n. m.     |

R U L E IV.

Most of the same Adjectives and Participles govern the infinitive with the same Preposition, as

*Il est capable de servir sa pa-trie.* He is capable of serving his country.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| He is worthy 1 to 2 com-<br>mand 4 us 3.                               | 1 <i>Digne</i> , adj. 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>nous</i> ,<br>pron. conj. 4 <i>commander</i> , v. 1.                                     |
| is she worthy to be your 1<br>friend 2?                                | 1 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 2 <i>amie</i> ,<br>n. f.  |
| we are capable of doing 1<br>your business 2.                          | 1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>affaire</i> , n. f.   |
| he is incapable 1 of serving<br>3 you 2.                               | 1 <i>incapable</i> , adj. 2 <i>vous</i> ,<br>pron. conj. 3 <i>servir</i> , v. 2.  |
| I am commanded 1 to assist<br>2 you.                                   | 1 <i>chargé</i> , adj. 2 <i>assister</i> , v. 1.  |
| his 1 brother 2 is accused 3<br>of 4 having committed 4<br>a murder 5. | 1 <i>son</i> , pron. adj. m. 2 <i>frère</i> ,<br>n. m. 3 <i>accusé</i> , p. p. 4<br><i>d'avoir commis</i> . 5 <i>meurtre</i> ,<br>n. m. |

- we are tired 1 of 2 doing 2 1 *las*, adj. 2 *de faire*. 3 *tou-*  
 always 3 the same 4 thing *jours*, adv. 4 *même*, adj.  
 5. m. and f. 5 *chose*, n. f.  
 I am sorry 1 that 2 I have 1 *fâché*, adj. 2 *de n'avoir*  
 not succeeded 2. *point réussi*.

## R U L E V.

Adjectives signifying fitness or unfitness, inclination or resistance, advantage or disadvantage, profit or disprofit, pleasure or displeasure, due and submission, govern the dative and infinitive, with the preposition *à*, as

- Il est propre au travail.* He is fit for labour.  
*il est prompt à se fâcher.* he is apt to fall into a passion.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- He is fit 1 for the ecclesiastical 3 state 2. 1 *Propre*, adj. 2 *état*, n. m.  
 you speak 2 to 1 me 1 of an 3 *ecclésiastique*, adj.  
 honest 3 man 4, who 5 is 1 *me*, pron. conj. 2 *parler*, v.  
 inclined 6 to serve 7 all 8 1. 3 *honnête*, adj. 4 *homme*,  
 his 9 friends 10. m. m. 5 *qui*, pron. 6 *porté*,  
 1 drunkenness 1 is hurtful 2 *adj. 7 servir*, v. 2. 8 *t-out*,  
 to health 3. *adj. pl. m. ous*, adj. 9 *ses*, pron.  
 I know 1 no-body 2 more 3 *adj. pl. 10 ami*, n. m.  
 slow 4 to work 5 than 6 1 *ivrognerie*, n. f. 2 *nuisible*,  
 he 7. *adj. 3 santé*, n. f.  
 1 children 1 ought 2 to be dutiful 3 to their 4 parents 5 1 *connoître*, v. 5. 2 *personne*,  
 1 *enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 2 *devoir*, v. 3. 3 *obéiss-ant*,  
 1 *pl. ans*, adj. 4 *leur*, pron. conj. 7 *lui*, pron. nom.  
 1 *adj. 5 par-ent*, pl. *ens*, n. m.

## R U L E VI.

Some Adjectives, as *sensible*, *habile*, *adroit*, *content*, &c. may or may not have a government, as

- C'est un homme sensible.* He is a touchy man.  
*elle est sensible au froid.* she is chilly.



*Exercises upon this Rule.*

My 1 sister 2 is as 3 touchy  
4 as 5 yours 6.

I 1 feel a pleasure in having  
the honour 1 of serving 3  
you 2.

my physician 1 is a very 2  
skilful 3 man 3.

where 1 can 2 you find 3 a  
person 4 more 5 skilful 6  
in 7 drawing 7?

he is very 1 dexterous 2.

she was very dexterous 1 in  
2 shooting an arrow out  
of a bow 2.

we are satisfied 1.

I am satisfied with 1 your 2  
conduct 3.

1 *Mon, ma*, pron. adj. 2 *sœur*,  
n. f. 3 *aussi*, conj. 4 *sen-  
sible*, adj. 5 *que*, conj. 6  
*la vôtre*.

1 *je suis sensible à l'honneur*.  
2 *vous*, pron. conj. 3 *ser-  
vir*, v. 2.

1 *médecin*, n. m. 2 *très*, adv.  
3 *habile*, adj.

1 *où*, adv. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 3  
*trouver*, v. 1. 4 *personne*,  
n. f. 5 *plus*, adv. 6 *habile*,  
adj. 7 *à dessiner*.

1 *très*, adv. 2 *adroit*, adj.

1 *adroit*, adj. 2 *à tirer de  
l'arc*.

1 *cont-tent*, plur. *ens*, adj.

1 *de*, prep. 2 *votre*, pron.  
adj. 3 *conduite*, n. f.

All the other adjectives have no government.

## OF DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

## RULE I.

*Moi*, I.

*moi-même*, myself.

*toi*, thee.

*toi-même*, thyself.

*lui*, he, him.

*elle*, she, her.

*qui*, who.

*quelqu'un*, some body, any  
body.

*chacun*, every one.

*quiconque*, whosoever.

*autrui*, others.

*personne*, no one.

*tel*, such.

*qui que ce soit*, whosoever.

*qui que ce fut*, whosoever it  
was.

are said of persons and personified things only; for if I ask  
this question, *est-ce la votre canif?* is this your penknife?  
one can't answer, *c'est lui*, it is he; but *ce l'est*, it is it.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Who 1 is there 2? It 3 is 3  
I, it is you, it is he.

go 1 and 2 see 2 my 3 bro-  
ther 4, and 5 tell 6 him 7  
that 8 I am in 9 good 10  
health 11.

your 1 friend 2 behaves 3  
ill 4; I am not pleased 5  
with 6 him 7.

come 1 back 1 from 2 the  
country 3, because 4 we  
want 5 you 6.

we have pleaded 1 our 2  
cause 3 ourselves 4.

you 1 only speak of 1 your-  
self 2.

has any body ever 1 doubted  
2 the existence 3 of God  
4?

every one follows 1 his 2  
own 2 inclination 3.

don't do 1 to others what 2  
you 3 would not have done  
to yourself 3.

no one knows 1 whether 2  
he is worthy 3 of love 4  
or 5 hatred 6.

whosoever asks 2 for 2 me 1,  
tell him that 3 I 4 am  
busy 4.

1 *Qui*, pron. disj. 2 *là*, adv.  
5 *c'est*.

1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *voir*. 3 *mon*,  
pron. adj. m. 4 *frère*, n.  
m. 5 *et*, conj. 6 *dire*, v. 4.  
7 *lui*, pron. 8 *que*, conj.  
9 *en*, prep. 10 *b-on, onne*,  
adj. 11 *santé*, n. f.

1 *votre*, pron. adj. 2 *ami*, n.  
m. 3 *se comporter*, v. 1. 4  
*mal*, adv. 5 *content*, adj. 6  
*de*, prep. 7 *lui*, pron. nom.

1 *re-vénir*, v. 2. 2 *de*, prep. 3  
*campagne*, n. f. 4 *parceque*,  
conj. 5 *avoir besoin de*, v.  
3. n. m. and prep. 6 *vous*,  
pron. nom.

1 *plaider*, v. 1. 2 *notre*, pron.  
adj. 3 *cause*, n. f. 4 *nous-  
mêmes*, pron. nom. pl.

1 *vous ne parlez que de*. 2  
*vous-même*, pron. nom.

1 *jamais*, adv. 2 *douter de*,  
v. 1. 3 *existence*, n. f. 4  
*Dieu*, n. m.

1 *suivre*, v. 4. 2 *son, sa*, pron.  
adj. 3 *inclination*, n. f.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *ce que*, pron.  
nom. 3 *vous ne voudriez  
pas qu'on vous fit*.

1 *ne sait*. 2 *si*, conj. 3 *digne*,  
adj. 4 *amour*, n. m. 5 *ou*,  
conj. 6 *haine*, n. f.

1 *me*, pron. conj. 2 *demander*,  
v. 1. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *je suis  
en affaires*.

## R U L E II.

*Quai*, what.  
*ceci*, this.

*cela*, that.  
*ce qui*, what,

*ce que*, what.  
*que*? what?  
*rien*, nothing.

*quoi que ce soit*, whatever,  
 nothing.

*quoi que ce fut*, whatever it  
 was, nothing.

are said of things only; for speaking of a girl, I can't  
 say, *ceci est beau*, this is handsome; but *elle est belle*, she  
 is handsome.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I know 1 what 3 he is capa-  
 ble 4 of 2.

1 *Savoir*, v. 3. 2 *de*, art. 3  
*quoi*, pron. nom. 4 *capable*,  
 adj.

this pleases 2 me 1.  
 that displeases 2 you 1.

1 *me*, pron. conj. 2 *plaire*, v. 5.  
 1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *dé-  
 plaire*, v. 5.

what 1 grieves 2 me the 3  
 most 3 is 4, that 5 you  
 have lost 6 your 7 money  
 8.

1 *ce qui*, pron. nom. 2 *affliger*,  
 v. 1. 3 *le plus*. 4 *c'est*. 5  
*que*, conj. 6 *perdre*, v. 4.  
 7 *votre*. pron. adj. 8 *ar-  
 gent*, n. m.

tell 1 me 2 what 3 you know.

1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *moi*, pron. 3  
*ce que*, pron. nom.

what 1 have you said 2?  
 nothing 1 ought 2 to hinder  
 3 a christian 4 to 5 defend  
 6 the truth 7.

1 *que*, pron. nom. 2 *dire*, v. 4.  
 1 *rien*, pron. nom. 2 *ne doit*.  
 3 *empêcher*, v. 1. 4 *chrétien*,  
 n. m. 5 *de*, prep. 6 *dé-  
 fendre*, v. 6. 7 *vérité*, n. f.

whatever 1 has detained 3  
 you 2, you 4 are in the  
 wrong 4.

1 *quoi que ce soit qui*, pron.  
 nom. 2 *vous*, pron. conj. 3  
*retenir*, v. 2. 4 *vous avez tort*.

they 1 have told me 1 no-  
 thing 2 new 2.

1 *il ne m'ont dit*. 2 *quoi que  
 ce soit de nouveau*.

R U L E III.

*Lui-même*, himself, itself.

*le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, ours.

*elle-même*, herself, itself.

*le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, yours.

*soi*, one's self, itself.

*le leur*, *la leur*, theirs.

*soi-même*, one's self, itself.

*ce*, he, she, it, they.

*le mien*, *la mienne*, mine.

*celui*, *celle*, this.

*le tien*, *la tienne*, thine.

*celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, this.

*le sien*, *la sienne*, his, her, its.

*celui-là*, *celle-là*, that?



*lequel? laquelle?* which.

*le même, la même,* the same.

*l'un, l'une,* the one.

*l'autre,* the other.

*aucun, aucune,* none.

*pas un, pas une,* not one,  
none.

*plusieurs,* many.

are said of persons and things; for we may say, *c'est un beau prince*, he is a handsome prince; and *c'est un beau diamant*, it is a fine diamond, &c.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The Amazons 1 governed 2  
and 3 defended 4 their 5  
dominions 6 themselves 7.

1 *Amazone*, n. f. 2 *gouverner*,  
v. 1. 3 *et*, conj. 4 *défen-*  
*dre*, v. 6. 5 *leur*, pron.  
adj. 6 *état*, n. m. 7 *par*  
*elles-mêmes*.

it 1 becomes 1 no 2 one 2 to  
3 praise 4 one's self 4.

1 *il ne convient*. 2 *à* *personne*.  
3 *de*, prep. 4 *se louer soi*  
*même*.

this 1 affair 2 is good 3 in 4  
itself 5.

1 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 2 *affaire*,  
n. f. 3 *b-on, onne*, adj. 4  
*en*, prep. 5 *soi*.

our 1 aunts 2 are 3 a coming  
3, speak 4 to yours, and I  
shall speak to mine.

1 *nos*, pron. adj. pl. 2 *tante*,  
n. f. 3 *venir*, v. 2. 4 *parler*,  
v. 1.

our birds 1 are upon 2 the  
table 3, take 4 yours, and  
give 5 me 6 mine.

1 *ois-eau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m.  
2 *sur*, prep. 3 *table*, n. f.  
4 *prendre*, v. 6. 5 *donner*,  
v. 1. 6 *moi*, pron.

I read 1 Horace and Virgil  
2, because 3 they 4 are 4  
the 5 best 5 Latin 7 poets  
6.

1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *Virgile*, n. m.  
3 *parceque*, conj. 4 *ce sont*.  
5 *les meilleurs*. 6 *poète*, n.  
m. 7 *Latin*, adj.

it 1 was 1 envy 2 that 3 oc-  
casioned 4 the first 5 mur-  
der 6 in 7 the world 8.

1 *ce fut*. 2 *envie*, n. f. 3 *qui*,  
pron. 4 *occasionner*, v. 1. 5  
*premier*, adj. 6 *meurtre*, n.  
m. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *monde*,  
n. m.

he 1 who 2 puts 3 his 4 hope  
5 in 6 God 7 shall not be  
deceived 8.

1 *celui*, pron. nom. 2 *qui*, pron.  
3 *mettre*, v. 4. 4 *son, sa*, pl.  
*ses*, pron. adj. 5 *confiance*,  
n. f. 6 *en*, prep. 7 *Dieu*,  
n. m. 8 *tromper*, v. 1.

bring

bring 1 me 2 that 3 I bought  
4 yesterday 5.

this 1 is the 2 most learned  
2, and that 3 the 4 most  
ignorant 4.

I prefer 1 this 2 to that 3.

which 1 do you speak 2 of 1?  
Denmark 1 and Norway 2  
belong 3 to 4 the same 4  
king 5.

it 1 is 1 the same sun 2 which  
3 enlightens 4 all 5 the  
nations 6 of the earth 7.

the one and the other relate 1  
the same 2 circumstances 3.  
few 1 men 1 use 2 equally 3  
the one and the other hand  
4.

none 1 has 2 opposed 3 me  
2.

of all those 1 who 2 know 3  
the reasons 4 of my 5  
conduct 6, is 7 there any  
7 that 8 blamed 10 it 9.

I have none 1.

not 1 one 1 of you can 2  
complain 3 of my conduct.  
you 1 have 1 not 2 one 2.  
many 1 have thought 2 that  
3 the world 4 was eternal  
5.

1 *apporter*, v. 1. 2 *moi*, pron.  
3 *celle que*. 4 *acheter*, v. 1.  
5 *hier*, adv.

1 *celui-ci*, pron. nom. m. 2  
*le plus savant*, adj. 3 *celui-  
là*, pron. nom. m. 4 *le plus  
ignorant*.

1 *préférer*, v. 1. 2 *celle-ci*,  
pron. nom. f. 3 *celle-là*,  
pron. nom. f.

1 *duquel*. 2 *parler*, v. 1.

1 *Danemarc*, n. m. 2 *Nor-  
vège*, n. f. 3 *appartenir*, v.  
2. 4 *au même*. 5 *roi*, n. m.

1 *c'est*. 2 *soleil*, n. m. 3 *qui*,  
pron. 4 *éclairer*, v. 1. 5  
*t-out*, plur. m. ous, adj. 6  
*nation*, n. f. 7 *terre*, n. f.

1 *rapporter*, v. 1. 2 *même*,  
adj. 3 *circonstance*, n. f.

1 *peu de gens*. 2 *se servir de*,  
v. 2. 3 *également*, adv. 4  
*main*, n. f.

1 *aucun*, pron. nom. m. 2 *me*,  
pron. conj. 3 *être con-  
traire*, v. 4. and adj.

1 *ceux*, pron. nom. m. 2 *qui*,  
pron. 3 *savoir*, v. 3. 4  
*raison*, n. f. 5 *mon*, *ma*,  
pron. adj. 6 *conduite*, n. f.  
7 *y en a-t-il aucun*. 8 *qui*,  
pron. 9 *la*, pron. conj. f.  
10 *blâmer*, v. 1.

1 *aucun*, pron. nom. m.

1 *pas un*, pron. nom. m. 2 *ne  
peut*. 3 *se plaindre de*, v. 6.

1 *vous n'en avez*. 2 *pas un*.

1 *plusieurs*, pron. nom. plur.  
2 *croire*, v. 5. 3 *que*, conj.  
4 *monde*, n. m. 5 *étern-él*,  
*elle*, adj.

if

if 1 you want 2 bottles 3, I 1 *fi*, conj. 2 *avoir besoin de*, v.  
4 have many 4. 3. n. m. and prep. 3 *bouteille*,  
n. f. 4 *j'en ai plusieurs*.

## R U L E IV.

The pronouns adjective, *mon*, *ma*, pl. *mes*, my; *ton*, *ta*, pl. *tes*, thy; *notre*, pl. *nos*, our; and *votre*, pl. *vos*, your, have a relation to persons and personified things only, as  
*Vous perdez votre argent*, & You lose your money, and I  
*je dépense le mien*. spend mine.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Thy sister 1 has 2 my snuff-box 3; and 4 my aunt 5 has thy book 6. | 1 <i>Sœur</i> , n. f. 2 <i>avoir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>tabatière</i> , n. f. 4 &, conj. 5 <i>tante</i> , n. f. 6 <i>livre</i> , n. m.         |
| I have sold 1 my horse 2, have 3 you got 3 yours 5 still 4?        | 1 <i>vendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>cheval</i> , pl. aux, n. m. 3 <i>avoir</i> , v. 3. 4 <i>encore</i> , adv. 5 <i>le vôtre</i> , pron. nom. m. |
| you ruin 1 your constitution 2, and I preserve 3 mine 4.           | 1 <i>ruiner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>santé</i> , n. f. 3 <i>conserver</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>le mien</i> , la mienne, pron. nom.                       |
| you have finished 1 your work 2, and I have not begun 3 mine.      | 1 <i>finir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>ouvrage</i> , n. m. 3 <i>commencer</i> , v. 1.   |

## R U L E V.

The pronouns adjective, *son*, *sa*, pl. *ses*, his, her, its, and *leur*, their, may always be related to persons; but have only a relation to such things as are expressed before in the same sentence, by nouns or pronouns, as

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Notre gouverneur à reçu son pouvoir du prince.</i> | Our governor has received his power from the prince. |
| <i>la mer a son flux.</i>                             | the sea has its tide.                                |
| <i>elle a sa source en France.</i>                    | it has its head in France.                           |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| He may 1 dispose 2 of his estate 3. | 1 <i>Pouvoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>disposer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>bien</i> , n. m. |
|-------------------------------------|--|

put .



put 1 this 2 book 3 in 4 its  
place 5.

all 1 bodies 2 have their di-  
mensions 3.

the trees 1 bear 2 their fruits  
3, every 4 one 4 in 5 their  
season 5.

1 *mettre*, v. 4. 2 *ce*, pron.  
adj. m. 3 *livre*, n. m. 4  
*en*, prep. 5 *place*, n. f.  
1 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj. 2  
*corps*, n. m. 3 *dimension*, n. f.  
1 *arbre*, n. m. 2 *porter*, v. 1.  
3 *fruit*, n. m. 4 *chacun*,  
pron. nom. m. 5 *dans sa*  
*saison*.

### R U L E VI.

But if the things are not expressed before, in the same sentence, by nouns or pronouns, we must, instead of *son*, *sa*, *ses*, and *leur*, use the conjunctive pronoun *en*, as

*Je connois l'arbre dont vous  
parlez; les fruits en sont  
excellens.*

I know the tree you are  
speaking of; its fruits are  
excellent.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have seen 1 Mr. Rollin's  
house 2, I admire 3 its  
situation 4, architecture  
5, and 6 apartments 7.

1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *maison*, n. f.  
3 *admirer*, v. 1. 4 *situation*,  
n. f. 5 *architecture*, n. f.  
6 *&*, conj. 7 *appartem-  
ent*, plur. *ens*, n. m.

I have travelled 1 in 2 Hol-  
land 3, and have seen its  
chief 4 cities 5.

1 *voyager*, v. 1. 2 *en*, prep.  
3 *Hollande*, n. f. 4 *princi-  
p-al*, pl. m. *aux*, adj. 5  
*ville*, n. f.

I have read 1 your 2 book  
3, and know 4 its faults  
5 and beauties 6.

1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *votre*, pron.  
adj. 3 *livre*, n. m. 4 *con-  
noître*, v. 5. 5 *faute*, n. f.  
6 *beauté*, n. f.

### R U L E VII.

*Ce*, *cet*, and *cette*, this, that; plur. *ces*, these, those, are  
said of persons and things, as

*Ce héros.*  
*cet homme-ci.*  
*cette femme.*  
*cés pays.*  
*ces arbres.*  
*ces villes-là.*

This heroe.  
this man.  
that woman.  
these countries.  
those trees.  
those cities.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Let us thank 1 this young 2  
cavalier 3, he 4 is 4 your  
5 deliverer 6, and 7 it is  
to him 7 you owe 8 your  
life 9.

this heaven 1, this earth 2,  
and these elements 3, are  
the work 4 of God 5.

1 Remercier, v. 1. 2 jeune,  
adj. 3 cavalier, n. m. 4  
c'est. 5 votre, pron. adj. 6  
libérateur, n. m. 7 & c'est  
à lui que. 8 devoir, v. 3.  
9 vie, n. f.

1 c-iel, plur. ieux, n. m. 2  
terre, n. f. 3 élém-ent, pl.  
ens, n. m. 4 ouvrage, n. m.  
5 Dieu, n. m.

## R U L E VIII.

The pronouns adjective *qui*, who, which, that; *que*,  
whom, which; *lequel, laquelle*; pl. *lesquels, lesquelles*, who,  
whom, which; and *dont*, of whom, of which, must have a  
noun or nominal pronoun for their antecedent, as

*Dieu, qui aime les hommes.*  
*L'argent que j'ai dépensé.*

*c'est lui que je vois.*  
*celle dans laquelle il couchoit.*  
*la femme dont on parle.*

God who loves men.  
the money which I have  
spent.  
it is he whom I see.  
that in which he laid.  
the woman of whom they are  
speaking.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The Jews 1, who 2 crucified  
3 Jesus Christ 4, did not  
know 5 what 6 they were  
about 6.

he 1, who 2 puts 3 his 4  
trust 5 in 6 God 6, shall  
not be deceived 7.

learn 1 the things 2 which  
3 the gospel 4 prescribes  
6 to 5 us 5.

let us think 1 to 2 appease 3  
the judge 4 before 5 whom

1 Juif, n. m. 2 qui, pron. 3  
crucifier, v. 1. 4 Jésus Christ,  
n. m. 5 savoir, v. 3. 6 ce  
qu'ils faisoient.

1 celui, pron. nom. m. 2 qui,  
pron. 3 mettre, v. 4. 4 sa,  
pron. adj. f. 5 confiance, n.  
f. 6 en Dieu. 7 tromper, v. 1.

1 apprendre, v. 6. 2 chose, n.  
f. 3 que, pron. 4 évangile,  
n. m. 5 nous, pron. conj.  
pl. 6 prescrire, v. 4.

1 songer, v. 1. 2 à, prep. 3  
fléchir, v. 2. 4 juge, n. m.  
6 we

6 we 7 are to appear 7  
one 8 day 8.

5 *devant*, prep. 6 *lequel*,  
pron. m. 7 *nous devons pa-*  
*roître*. 8 *un jour*.

there 1 is 1 in 2 heaven 3 a  
king 4 from 5 whom 5 de-  
pend 6 the kings of the  
earth 7.

1 *il y a*. 2 *dans*, prep. 3 *ciel*,  
pl. *ieux*, n. m. 4 *roi*, n. m.  
5 *dont*, pron. 6 *dépendre*,  
v. 6. 7 *terre*, n. f.

### R U L E IX.

The pronoun *qui*, who, that, which, may, in the nomi-  
native be related to persons and things; but in the other  
cases it is related to persons only, as

*Le jeune homme, qui vient ici,*  
*est de Paris.*

The young man, who comes  
here, is of Paris.

*les fables, qui font parler les*  
*animaux, sont utiles & a-*  
*musantes.*

the fables, which make the  
animals speak, are both  
useful and entertaining.

*il faut bien choisir les amis à*  
*qui on veut donner sa con-*  
*fiance.*

we must be careful in chus-  
ing those friends whom we  
intend to make our confi-  
dents.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

Blessed 1 are they 2 who 3  
do 4 hunger and thirst 4  
after 5 righteousness 6.

1 *Heur-eux*, *euse*, adj. 2 *ceux*,  
pron. nom. m. and pl. 3  
*qui*, pron. 4 *ont faim & soif*.  
5 *de*, prep. 6 *justice*, n. f.

the horse 1, that 2 displeases  
4 you 3 so 5 much 5, cost  
7 me 6 thirty 8 guineas 9.

1 *chev-al*, pl. *aux*, n. m. 2  
*qui*, pron. 3 *vous*, pron.  
conj. 4 *déplaît*, v. 5. 5  
*tant*, adv. 6 *me*, pron. conj.  
7 *coûter*, v. 1. 8 *trente*,  
adj. und. 9 *guinée*, n. f.

there 1 are 1 many 2 men 3  
to 4 whom 4 a prudent 6  
person 5, ought 7 not to  
trust 8.

1 *il y a*. 2 *plusieurs*, adj. pl.  
3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *à qui*. 5  
*personne*, n. f. 6 *prudent*,  
adj. 7 *devoir*, v. 3. 8 *se*  
*fier*, v. 1.

do you know 1 whom 2 you  
speak 3 to 2?

1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *à qui*. 3 *par-*  
*ler*, v. 1.

### R U L E



## RULE X.

The pronoun *que* may often be looked upon as the accusative of *qui*, *lequel*, and *laquelle*, as

*L'homme que Dieu créa à son image.* Man whom God created after his own likeness.

*les anges que l'orgueil précipita dans les enfers.* the angels whom pride precipitated into hell.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- The prince 1, whom 2 I 1 *Prince*, n. m. 2 *que*, pron.  
 serve 3, has intrusted 5 me 3 *servir*, v. 2. 4 *me*, pron.  
 4 with 5 the greatest 6 conj. 5 *confier*, v. 1. 6  
 employments 7. *grand*, adj. 7 *emploi*, n. m.  
 the woman 1 whom 2 God 3 1 *femme*, n. f. 2 *que*, pron.  
 formed 4 with 5 one of 3 *Dieu*, n. m. 4 *former*, v.  
 Adam's ribs 5, was the 1. 5 *d'une des côtes d'A-*  
 cause 6 of his 7 sin 8. *dam*. 6 *cause*, n. f. 7 *son*,  
*sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 8  
*péché*, n. m.  
 the world 1, which 2 God 1 *monde*, n. m. 2 *que*, pron.  
 created 3 out of nothing 3 *tirer du néant*, v. 1. prep.  
 3, shews 4 his omnipo- art. and n. m. 4 *montrer*,  
 tence 5. v. 1. 5 *toute-puissance*, n. f.

## RULE XI.

*Que* is also used in the genitive and dative in some particular phrases, in the English whereof it is not commonly expressed, as

*C'est de vous qu'on parle.* It is you they are speaking of.  
*c'est à vous qu'il s'adresse.* it is you he applies to.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- It 1 is 1 of that 2 sum 3 I 1 *C'est*. 2 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 3  
 ask 5 you 4 the payment 6 *somme*, n. f. 4 *vous*, pron.  
 6. conj. 5 *demande*, v. 1. 6  
*payment*, n. m.  
 it is from 1 the 1 king 2 we 1 *du*, prep. and art. 2 *roi*,  
 ought 3 to expect 4 that n. m. 3 *devoir*, v. 3. 4 *at-*  
 favour 5. *tendre*, v. 6. 5 *favor*, n. f.  
 it is to glory 1 I aspire 2. 1 *gloire*, n. f. 2 *aspirer*, v. 1.

## RULE

## R U L E XII.

*Lequel* and *laquelle*, being related to persons and things, are used, 1st, in the genitive after two antecedents, as

*La personne sur l'honneur de laquelle j'avois compté.*

*la tour, au haut de laquelle nous sommes, a cent pieds de haut.*

The person upon whose honour I had relied.

the tower, upon the top of which we are, is a hundred foot high.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The duke 1, to whose 3 protection 2 I owe 4 my 5 fortune 6, has lately 9 given 8 me 7 a new 10 employment 11.

the Seyne 1, in 2 the bed 3 of 4 which 4 other 5 rivers 6 fall 7, may 8 pass 9 for 10 a considerable 11 river.

1 *Duc*, n. m. 2 *protection*, n. f. 3 *duquel*, pron. m. 4 *devoir*, v. 3. 5 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 6 *fortune*, n. f. 7 *me*, pron. conj. 8 *donner*, v. 1. 9 *depuis peu*. 10 *nouvel*, adj. m. 11 *emploi*, n. m.

1 *Seine*, n. f. 2 *dans*, prep. 3 *lit*, n. m. 4 *de laquelle*. 5 *autre*, adj. 6 *rivière*, n. f. 7 *se jeter*, v. 1. 8 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 9 *passer*, v. 1. 10 *pour*, prep. 11 *considérable*, adj.

## R U L E XIII.

2dly, *Lequel* and *laquelle* may be used in the dative, when we speak of persons, and must be used in that case, when we speak of things, as

*Dieu auquel nous devons rapporter toutes nos actions.*

*les sciences auxquelles je m'applique.*

God to whom we ought to direct all our actions.

the sciences to which I apply myself.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We 1 must 1 make 1 a judicious 3 choice 2 of those 4 to 5 whom 5 we intend 6 to give 7 our 8 confidence 9.

1 *Il faut que nous fassions*. 2 *choix*, n. m. 3 *judicieux*, ieuse, adj. 4 *ceux*, pron. nom. m. pl. 3 *auxquels*. 6 *vouloir*, v. 3. 7 *donner*, v. 1. 8 *notre*, pron. adj. 9 *confiance*, n. f.

it

it 1 is 1 an objection 2 to 3  
which 3 there 4 is no 4  
answer 5.

1 *c'est*. 2 *objection*, n. f. 3 *à*  
*laquelle*. 4 *il n'y a pas de*.  
5 *réponse*, n. f.

## R U L E XIV.

3dly, *Lequel* and *laquelle* may be used in the accusative, after a preposition, when we speak of persons, and must be used in that case, when we speak of things, as

*La personne, avec laquelle vous*  
*commercez, n'a pas quatre*  
*sous vaillant.*

The person with whom you  
trade, is not worth a groat.

*la maison, dans laquelle vous*  
*demeurez, est plus belle que*  
*la nôtre.*

the house wherein you dwell  
is handsomer than ours.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The lady 1 with 2 whom 2  
you live 3, is 4 not twenty-  
four years old 4.

1 *Dame*, n. f. 2 *chez laquelle*.  
3 *demeurer*, v. 1. 4 *n'a pas*  
*vingt quatre ans*.

the wood 1, wherein 2 we  
have walked 3, belongs 4  
to one 5 of your 6 friends  
7.

1 *bois*, n. m. 2 *dans lequel*. 3  
*se promener*, v. 1. 4 *appartenir*,  
v. 2. 5 *un*, adj. 6  
*vos* pron. adj. pl. 7 *ami*,  
n. m.

the province 1 wherein you  
have passed 2 the summer  
3 has allurements 4, which  
5 ours 6 has 7 not.

1 *province*, n. f. 2 *passer*, v. 1.  
3 *été*, n. m. 4 *agrément*,  
pl. *ens*, n. m. 5 *que*, pron.  
6 *la nôtre*, pron. nom. 7  
*avoir*, v. 3.

## R U L E XV.

The pronoun *dont*, expressing the genitive or ablative, being said of persons and things, may always and must often be used instead of the pronouns *de qui*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* and *desquelles*, as

*La maison dont j'ai fait l'ac-*  
*quisition,*  
*le cheval dont je me suis défait.*

The house of which I have  
made the purchase.  
the horse I got rid of.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The religion 1, whose 2 laws

1 *Religion*, n. f. 2 *dont*, pron.  
3 *you*,



|   |   |
|---|---|
| 3 you despise 4, will condemn 6 you 5 one 7 day 7.                                    | 3 <i>l-oi</i> , pl. <i>oix</i> , n. f. 4 <i>mé-priser</i> , v. 1. 5 <i>vous</i> , pron. conj. 6 <i>condamner</i> , v. 1. 7 <i>un jour</i> .                       |
| be grateful 1 towards 2 God 3, of 4 whom 4 you have received 5 so 6 many 6 favours 7. | 1 <i>reconnoissant</i> , adj. 2 <i>envers</i> , prep. 3 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m. 4 <i>dont</i> . 5 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3. 6 <i>tant de</i> . 7 <i>fauteur</i> , n. f. |
| I have read 1 the book 2 of 3 which 3 you made 5 me 4 a present 6.                    | 1 <i>lire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>livre</i> , n. m. 3 <i>dont</i> . 4 <i>me</i> , pron. conj. 5 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 6 <i>présent</i> , n. m.                            |

RULES *by which it may be known when the Disjunctive or Conjunctive Pronouns are to be used in French Speech.*

I have shewn in several parts of this book how to use the conjunctive and disjunctive Pronouns; what remains to be said upon this subject will be contained in the following rules.

R U L E I.

The same nominative conjunctive needs not always be repeated after the conjunction; and therefore instead of *il regarda, et il reconnut la maison.* he looked at, and he knew the house again.

we may say, *il regarde, & reconnut la maison.* he looked at, and knew the house again.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| They have supped 1 together 2, and 3 are 4 now 5 playing 4 at cards 6. | 1 <i>Souper</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ensemble</i> , adv. 3 <i>&amp;</i> , conj. 4 <i>jouer</i> , v. 1. 5 <i>à présent</i> , adv. 6 <i>carte</i> , n. f. |
| they sat 1 upon 2 the grass 3, and began 4 to 5 eat 5.                 | 1 <i>s'asseoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>sur</i> , prep. 3 <i>herbe</i> , n. f. 4 <i>commencer</i> , v. 1. 5 <i>à manger</i> .                           |

they

they have walked 1 enough  
2, and are 3 returning 3  
home 4.

1 *se promener*, v. 1. 2 *assez*,  
adv. 3 *s'en retourner*, v. 1.  
4 *au logis*.

## R U L E II.

When a Verb has two or more pronouns for its nominative cases, the first must be disjunctive, and the last of all conjunctive, as

*Lui & moi nous parlons.*

He and I are speaking.

*votre ami & vous, vous ne  
valez rien.*

your friend and you are good  
for nothing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

My 1 brother 2 and 3 I 4,  
we went 5 last 6 night 6  
to the play 7.

1 *Mon*, pron. adj. m. 2 *frère*,  
n. m. 3 *&*, conj. 4 *moi*,  
pron. disj. 5 *aller*, v. 1. 6  
*hier au soir*. 7 *comédie*, n. f.

your 1 sister 2, you 3 and I,  
we shall put 4 in 5 the  
lottery 6.

1 *votre*, pron. adj. 2 *sœur*, n. f.  
3 *vous*, pron. disj. 4 *mettre*,  
v. 4. 5 *à*, prep. 6 *lotterie*, n. f.

my cousin 1 and I we shall  
have new 3 cloaths 4 to-  
morrow 2.

1 *cousin*, n. m. 2 *demain*, adv.  
3 *habit*, n. m. 4 *n-euf*, *euve*,  
adj.

Dupleffis and I we have done  
1 our 2 exercise 3.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *notre*, pron.  
adj. 3 *thème*, n. m.

## R U L E III.

When the pronoun *lui*, he; *eux*, they; are the last of the disjunctives, the conjunctive pronoun may sometimes be omitted, and therefore instead of

*Lui & eux ils sont blâmables.*  
*je demeurai, & lui il s'en alla.*  
we may say,

He and they are blameable.  
I stayed, and he went away.

*Lui & eux sont blâmables.*  
*je demeurai & lui s'en alla.*

He and they are blameable.  
I stayed, and he went away.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

My 1 brother 2 and 3 he are  
arrived 4.

1 *Mon*, pron. adj. m. 2 *frère*, n.  
m. 3 *&*, conj. 4 *arriver*, v. 1.  
my

- my uncle 1 and they are set 1 *oncle*, n. m. 2 *partir*, v. 2.  
 2 out 2 for 3 Jamaica 4. 3 *pour*, prep. 4 *Jamaïque*,  
 n. f.  
 he and they ought 1 to learn 1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *apprendre*,  
 2 their 3 lesson 4 by 5 v. 6. 3 *leur*, pron. adj. 4  
 heart 5. *leçon*, n. f. 5 *par cœur*.

#### R U L E IV.

When a Verb is between two or more pronouns in the same case, the first of them must be conjunctive, and placed before that Verb, and the others disjunctive, and placed after it, as

- Je souffre & lui aussi.* I suffer, and he also.  
*on me parle, aussi bien qu'à* they speak to me, as well as  
*lui, & à eux.* to him and them.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I speak 1, and he also 2. 1 *Parler*, v. 1. 2 *aussi*, conj.  
 you write 1, and we also. 1 *écrire*, v. 4.  
 I shall sell 2 books 3 to 1 1 *vous*, pron. conj. 2 *vendre*,  
 you 1, as 4 well as 4 to v. 6. 3 *livre*, n. m. 4 *aussi*  
 him 5 and 6 her. *bien que*. 5 *lui*, pron. disj.  
 m. 6 *elle*, pron. disj. f.

#### R U L E V.

A disjunctive pronoun must always be used and placed after the Verb *être*, when it signifies *belonging to*, as

- Je suis à vous.* I belong to you.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Blessed 1 are the poor 2 in 1 *Bienheur-eux*, *euse*, adj. 2  
 3 spirit 3, for 4 theirs 7 *pauvre*, n. m. 3 *d'esprit*. 4  
 is 7 the kingdom 5 of *car*, conj. 5 *royaume*, n. m.  
 heaven 6. 6 *cieux*, n. m. plur. 7 *est*  
 à eux.  
 this 1 house 2 will one 3 day 1 *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, pl. *ces*, pron.  
 3 be mine 4. adj. 2 *maison*, n. f. 3 *un*  
 jour. 4 *à moi*.  
 this palace 1 will never be 1 *palais*, n. m. 2 *à vous*.  
 yours 2.

#### R U L E



## R U L E VI.

The conjunctive pronouns must be used with, and placed before *voici* and *voilà*, as

*Me voici.*

Here I am.

*le voilà.*

here he is.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- You wished 1 to 2 see 4 me 1 *Souhaiter*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep. 3, here I am; have you 3 *me*, pron. conj. 4 *voir*, any 5 thing 5 to 6 tell 7- v. 3. 5 *quelque chose*. 6 *à*, me? prep. 7 *dire*, v. 4.
- do you seek 1 for 1 your 2 1 *chercher*, v. 1. 2 *votre*, pl. hat 3? here it 4 is. *vos*, pron. adj. 3 *chapeau*, pl. *eaux*, n. m. 4 *le*, pron. conj.
- did you call 1 for 1 your 1 *demander*, v. 1. 2 *bague*, rings 2, Madam 3? here n. f. *madame*, n. f. 4 *les* 4 they are 4. *voici*.

## O F V E R B S.

What remains to be said of the *French Verbs* will be comprized under the following heads, *viz.*

I. *French Verbs conjugated without pas or point.*

## R U L E I.

*Pas* or *Point* must be left out, when a negative word is placed after *ne*, as

*Je ne veux plus lui parler.*

I will speak to him no more.

*je ne veux jamais le voir.*

I will never see him.

*je ne connois personne qui blâme ses actions.*

I know nobody who blames his actions.

*je n'ai rien dit.*

I have said nothing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I have nothing 1 to 2 do 3. 1 *Rien*, n. m. 2 *à*, prep. 3 *faire*, v. 5.
- there 1 is 1 nothing 2 more 1 *il n'y a*. 2 *rien de plus*. 3 2 deceitful 3 than 4 your *tromp-eur*, *euse*, adj. 4 *que*. 5 pro-

5 protestations 6 of friend-  
ship 7.

has he done nothing that 1  
deserves 2 death 3?

have you never 1 seen 3 him  
2?

will you never leave 1 your  
bad 2 habits 3?

we ought 1 never to reveal  
2 the secret 3, which 4  
has been intrusted 6 to 5  
us 5.

time 1 past 2 is no 3 more 3.

you are no more the same 1  
man 2.

he loves 1 neither 2 to 3 give  
4 nor 5 to receive 6.

I have neither relations 1 nor  
friends 2.

I find 1 no 2 body 2 who 3  
pretends 4 to have seen it  
5.

we have no 1 desire 1 to 2  
hurt 4 you 3.

5 *votre*, pl. *vos*, pron. adj.  
6 *protestation*, n. f. 7 *ami-  
tié*, n. f.

1 *qui*, pron. 2 *mériter*, v. 1.  
3 *mort*, n. f.

1 *jamais*, adv. 2 *le*, pron.  
conj. 3 *voir*, v. 3.

1 *quitter*, v. 1. 2 *mauvais*,  
adj. 3 *habitude*, n. f.

1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *révéler*, v.  
1. 3 *secret*, n. m. 4 *qui*,  
pron. 5 *nous*, pron. conj.  
6 *confier*, v. 1.

1 *tems*, n. m. 2 *passer*, v. 1.  
3 *plus*, adv.

1 *même*, adj. 2 *homme*, n. m.

1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *ni*, conj. 3  
*à*, prep. 4 *donner*, v. 1. 5  
*ni*, conj. 6 *recevoir*, v. 3.

1 *par-ent*, plur. *ens*, n. m. 2  
*ami*, n. m.

1 *trouver*, v. 1. 2 *personne*, n.  
m. 3 *qui*, pron. 4 *prétendre*,  
v. 6. 5 *le*, pron. conj.

1 *aucune envie*. 2 *de*, prep. 3  
*vous*, pron. conj. 4 *nuire*,  
v. 4.

## R U L E II.

*Pas* or *point* must be left out after the comparing words  
*plus*, more, and *moins*, less, and the pronoun *autre*, ano-  
ther, as

*Il est plus grand qu'il ne faut.* It is taller than it ought to be.  
*vous êtes autre que je ne croyois.* you are another man than I  
thought.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

This 1 room 2 is three 3 times  
4 less 4 than 5 it ought to  
be 5.

1 *Cette*, pron. adj. f. 2 *chambre*,  
n. f. 3 *trois fois*. 4 *plus pe-  
tite*. 5 *qu'elle ne devoit être*.  
1 the

# 170 EXERCISES upon the

the weather 1 is less 2 cold 3 to-day 4 than 5 it was yesterday 6. 1 *tems*, n. m. 2 *moins*, adv. 3 *froid*, adj. 4 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 5 *que*. 6 *hier*, adv.  
 the harvest 1 will be less 2 plentiful 3 this 4 year 5 than it was last 6 year 7. 1 *moisson*, n. f. 2 *abondant*, adj. 3 *cette année*. 4 *l'année dernière*.  
 she is another 1 woman 2 than 3 he 4 takes her to be 5. 1 *autre*. 2 *il ne pense*.

## R U L E III.

*Pas* or *point* must be left out after the Verb *empêcher*, to hinder, as also after Verbs denoting fear, when we speak of a thing we do not wish, as

*J'ai empêché qu'il ne se tuât.* I have hindered him to kill himself.  
*je crains qu'il ne me blesse.* I fear he should hurt me.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have hindered him 1 to execute 2 the bad 3 designs 4 which 5 he had formed 6 against 7 you 8. 1 *Qu'il n'exécutât*. 2 *mauvais*, adj. 3 *desssein*, n. m. 4 *que*, pron. 5 *former*, v. 1. 6 *contre*, prep. 7 *vous*, pron. nom.  
 I fear very 1 much 2, that 3 the bad examples 4, which 5 he has every 6 day 7 before 8 his eyes 9, will 10 make him 11 forsake 12 the path 13 of virtue 14. 1 *beaucoup*, adv. 2 *que*, conj. 3 *exemple*, n. m. 4 *que*, pron. 5 *tous les jours*. 6 *devant les yeux*. 7 *ne lui fassent*. 8 *abandonner*, v. 1. 9 *sentier*, n. m. 10 *vertu*, n. f.

## R U L E IV.

*Pas* or *point* must be left out after the Verb *il y a*, followed by a Verb in the time past, as

*Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu.* There are ten years since I saw him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There are three 1 years 2 since 3 I spoke 4 to my 5 best 6 friend 7. 1 *Trois*, adj. 2 *an*, n. m. 3 *que je n'ai parlé*. 4 *mon*, pron. adj. m. 5 *meilleur*, adj. 6 *ami*, n. m.

there



|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| there 1 were 1 two 2 months | 1 <i>il y avoit.</i> 2 <i>deux</i> , adj. pl. |
| 3 since 4 I 5 had eat 5     | 3 <i>mois</i> , n. m. 4 <i>que</i> , conj.    |
| grapes 6, when 7 you 8      | 5 <i>je n'avois mangé.</i> 6 <i>raï-</i>      |
| gave me some 8.             | <i>fin</i> , n. m. 7 <i>quand</i> , conj.     |
|                             | 8 <i>vous m'en donnâtes.</i>                  |

### R U L E V.

*Pas* or *point* is left out of the phrases, wherein *de* signifies a space of time, as

|                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Je ne le verrai de ma vie.</i> | I shall never see him, whilst I live. |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| I shall not speak 2 to 1 him | 1 <i>Lui</i> , pron. conj. 2 <i>parler</i> ,         |
| 1 these 3 two days 3.        | v. 1. 3 <i>de deux jours.</i>                        |
| we shall not set 1 out 1 for | 1 <i>partir</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de quinze</i>           |
| 3 our 4 country-house 5      | <i>jours.</i> 3 <i>pour</i> , prep. 4 <i>notre</i> , |
| this 2 fortnight 2.          | pron. adj. 5 <i>maison de cam-</i>                   |
|                              | <i>pagne</i> , n. f.                                 |
| we shall not go 1 to Paris   | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de trois ans.</i>        |
| these 2 three years 2.       |  |

### R U L E VI.

*Pas* or *point* must be left out before *que*, but, nothing but, as

|                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Je n'ai que deux mots à dire.</i> | I have but two words to say. |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| He does 1 nothing 2 but 2     | 1 <i>Faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>que.</i> 3 <i>rire</i> , |
| laugh 3.                      | v. 4.  |
| you know 1 nothing but what   | 1 <i>savoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>ce que</i> , pron.      |
| 2 you have learned 3 this     | nom. m. 3 <i>apprendre</i> , v. 6.                   |
| 4 morning 5.                  | 4 <i>ce</i> , pron. adj. 5 <i>matin</i> , n. m.      |
| she has but two 1 things 2 to | 1 <i>deux</i> , adj. und. 2 <i>chose</i> , n. f.     |
| 3 do.                         | 3 <i>à</i> , prep.                                   |

### R U L E VII.

*Pas* or *point* must be left out after such Conjunctions as are rendered into *English* by *unless*, as

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <i>A moins que vous ne commandiez.</i> | Unless you command. |
|--|---------------------|

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- You won't succeed 1, unless 1 *Réussir*, v. 2. 2 *à moins que*.  
 2 you go 3 yourself 4 to 5 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *vous-même*,  
 Paris. pron. nom. m. and f. 5 *à*,  
 prep.
- a body 1 has no motion 2, 1 *corps*, n. m. 2 *mouvement*,  
 unless it 3 receives 5 it 4 n. m. 3 *il*, pron. conj. 4  
 from 6 another 7. *le*, pron. conj. 5 *recevoir*,  
 v. 3. 6 *de*, prep. 7 *autre*,  
 pron. nom. m. and f.

## R U L E VIII.

*Pas* or *point* must be left out after *que*, why, as  
*Que ne parlez vous ?* Why don't you speak ?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Why don't you answer 1 his 1 *Répondre*, v. 6. 2 *à ses ob-*  
 2 objections 2 ? *jections*.  
 why don't you behave 1 bet- 1 *se comporter*, v. 1. 2 *mieux*,  
 ter 2 ? adv.

## R U L E IX.

Lastly, *pas* or *point* must be left out, whenever the word  
*personne*, no body, is used in the phrase, as

*Il n'y a ici personne de ma con-* There is no body of my ac-  
*noissance.* quaintance here.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- No body knows 1 whether 2 1 *Savoir*, v. 3. 2 *si*, conj. 3  
 he is worthy 3 of love 4 *digne*, adj. 4 *amour*, n. m.  
 or 5 hatred 6. 5 *ou*, conj. 6 *haine*, n. f.  
 pride 1 becomes 2 no body. 1 *orgueil*, n. m. 2 *convenir*  
*à*, v. 2.
- a good 1 Christian 2 hates 3 1 *b-on, onne*, adj. 2 *chrétien*,  
 no body. n. m. 3 *hàir*, v. 2.

II. *Of the Verb and its Nominative Cases.*

## R U L E I.

When *qui* is nominative to a Verb, that Verb must be

of the same person with the word to which *Qui* has a relation, as

*C'est lui qui m'a parlé.*  
*c'est vous qui le refusez.*  
*c'est moi qui ai fait cela.*  
*c'est nous qui le disons.*  
*ce sont eux qui chantent.*

It is he who spoke to me.  
 it is you who refuse it.  
 it is I who have done that.  
 we say so.  
 it is they who sing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I am the Lord 1 thy 2 God  
 3, who 4 brought 6 thee  
 5 out 6 of the land 7 of  
 Egypt 8.

1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *ton*, pron.  
 adj. m. 3 *Dieu*, n. m. 4 *qui*,  
 pron. m. and f. 5 *te*, pron.  
 conj. 6 *retirer*, v. 1. 7  
*terre*, n. f. 8 *Egypte*, n. f.

he 1 who 2 cannot 3 keep 4  
 a secret 5, is unfit 6 to 7  
 govern 8.

1 *celui*. 2 *qui*. 3 *ne sauroit*. 4  
*garder*, v. 1. 5 *secret*, n. m.  
 6 *incapable*, adj. 7 *de*, prep.  
 8 *gouverner*, v. 1.

you 1, who are 2 willing 2 to  
 3 be obeyed 3, should 4  
 command 4 nothing 5 un-  
 just 6.

1 *vous*, pron. pers. 2 *vouloir*,  
 v. 3. 3 *qu'on vous obéisse*,  
 4 *vous ne devez commander*.  
 4 *rien*, n. m. 5 *d'injuste*.

was it he 1 who wrote 2 this  
 3 letter 4 to the general  
 5?

1 *lui*, pron. nom. 2 *écrire*,  
 v. 4. 3 *ce, cette*, pron. adj.  
 4 *lettre*, n. f. 5 *général*,  
 pl. *aux*, n. m.

how 1 can 2 you despise 4  
 us 3 who 5 have been  
 your 6 benefactors 7?

1 *comment*, adv. 2 *pouvoir*, v.  
 3. 3 *nous*, pron. conj. 4  
*mépriser*, v. 1. 5 *nous qui*.  
 6 *votre*, pl. *vos*, pron. adj.  
 7 *bienfaiteur*, n. m.

those 1, who defended 2 that  
 opinion 3, begin 4 to 5  
 think 6 otherwise 7.

1 *ceux*, pron. nom. pl. 2 *dé-  
 fendre*, v. 6. 3 *opinion*, n. f.  
 4 *commencer*, v. 1. 5 *à*,  
 prep. 6 *penfer*, v. 1. 7 *au-  
 trement*, adv.

R U L E II.

Many Nouns singular will have the Verb in the plural, as  
*Le roi & la reine viennent d'arriver.* The king and queen are just  
 arrived.



*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Wit 1 and 2 good 3 sense 2  
are preferable 4 to beauty  
5.  
patience 1 and perseverance  
2 are virtues 3 often 4 ne-  
cessary 5.  
a loving 2 wife 1, and a  
grateful 4 daughter 3, make  
5 all 6 the pleasure 7 of  
his 8 life 9.
- 1 *Esprit*, n. m. 2 *Et*, conj. 3  
*jugement*, n. m. 4 *préfé-  
rable*, adj. 5 *beauté*, n. f.  
1 *patience*, n. f. 2 *persévérance*,  
n. f. 3 *vertu*, n. f. 4 *souvent*,  
adv. 5 *nécessaire*, adj.  
1 *femme*, n. f. 2 *qui l'aime*. 3  
*filles*, n. f. 4 *reconnoissant*,  
adj. 5 *faire*, v. 5. 6 *tout*,  
adj. 7 *plaisir*, n. m. 8 *sa*,  
pron. adj. f. 9 *vie*, n. f.

## R U L E III.

When a Verb has nominatives of different persons, it must agree with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third, as

- Vous Et moi nous sommes d'accord.* You and I are agreed.  
*vous Et lui vous savez la chose.* You and he know the thing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- You and 1 I believe 2 that  
3 happiness 4 does not  
consist 5 only 6 in 7 riches  
8.  
my 1 wife 2 and I are re-  
solved 3 to 4 love 5 each  
other 5 till 6 death 6.
- you and he know 1 better 2  
than 3 I, what 4 you have  
to 5 do 6.
- 1 *Et*, conj. 2 *croire*, v. 5. 3 *que*,  
conj. 4 *félicité*, n. f. 5 *consis-  
ter*, v. 1. 6 *seulement*, adv. 7  
*dans*, prep. 8 *richesses*, n. f. pl.  
1 *ma*, pron. adj. f. 2 *femme*,  
n. f. 3 *résoudre*, v. 5. 4 *de*,  
prep. 5 *nous aimer*, 6 *jus-  
qu'à la mort*.  
1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *mieux*, adv. 3 *que*,  
conj. 4 *ce que*, pron. nom.  
m. 5 *à*, prep. 6 *faire*, v. 5.

## R U L E IV.

When a Verb has two or more nominative cases, and the conjunction *ni* is placed before every one of them, that verb must be used in the singular, as

- Ni l'un ni l'autre ne prétend l'avoir fait.* Neither the one nor the other pretends to have done it.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The prince 1 and his 2 minister 3 have their 4 reasons 5 to 6 act 7 as 8 they do 8; but 9 neither 10 the one nor 11 the other is obliged 12 to 13 discover 15 them 14.

1 *Prince*, n. m. 2 *son*, *sa*, pron. adj. 3 *ministre*, n. m. 4 *leur*, pron. adj. 5 *raison*, n. f. 6 *pour*, prep. 7 *agir*, v. 2. 8 *comme ils font*. 9 *mais*, conj. 10 *ni*, conj. 11 *ni*, conj. 12 *obliger*, v. 1. 13 *de*, prep. 14 *les*, pron. conj. pl. 15 *découvrir*, v. 2.

my 1 brother 2 and 3 sister 4 know 5 good 6 news 7; but neither the one nor the other is 8 willing 8 to 9 tell 10 them.

1 *mon*, *ma*, pron. adj. 2 *frère*, n. m. 3 *et*, conj. 4 *sœur*, n. f. 5 *savoir*, v. 3. 6 *bon*, *bonne*, adj. 7 *nouvelle*, n. f. 8 *vouloir* v. 3. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *dire*, v. 4.

## R U L E V.

But if *ni* is only used once, and placed between the nominative cases, the Verb must be in the plural, as

*La prospérité ni l'adversité ne sont point capables de le changer.*

Neither prosperity nor adversity can change him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The disinterested 2 man 1 and 3 sincere 5 friend 4 seldom 6 approach the 6 throne 7.

1 *Homme*, n. m. 2 *désintéressé*, adj. 3 *ni*, conj. 4 *ami*, n. m. 5 *sincère*, adj. 6 *n'approchent guères au*. 7 *trône*, n. m.

the liar 1 and 2 drunkard 3 shall not enter 4 into 5 the kingdom 6 of 7 heaven 7.

1 *menteur*, n. m. 2 *ni*, conj. 3 *ivrogne*, n. m. 4 *entrer*, v. 1. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *royaume*, n. m. 7 *des cieux*.

### III. Of Verbs having in French two Nominative Cases, altho' they have but one in English.

## R U L E.

The last of these nominatives may be either singular or plural, altho' the verb must always be in the singular, as

I 4

II

*Il est arrivé aujourd'hui un grand malheur.*

*il y a cent milles d'ici à Bristol.*

*il me vient une pensée.*

*il y a des gens qui soutiennent une opinion contraire à la vôtre.*

A great misfortune has happened to-day.

there are a hundred miles from hence to Bristol.

a thought comes into my head.

there are some people who maintain an opinion contrary to yours.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

An express 3 came 1 yesterday 2, who 4 brought 6 us 5 very 8 agreeable 9 news 7.

has any 2 misfortune 2 happened 1 in 3 your 4 family 5?

there come 1 every 2 day 2 some 3 people 3 from 4 the army 5, who 6 tell 8 us 7 that 9 our 10 soldiers 11 are full 12 of spirit 13.

there 1 are 1 thousand 2 men 2, who speak 3 of eloquence 4 without 5 knowing 5 what 6 it 7 is 7.

I got 1 rid 1 of my 2 tutors 3, until 4 one 6, such as I wanted 6 came 5 to present himself 5.

as 1 signor 2 Rolando ended 3 these 4 words 5, there 6 appeared 6 in 7 the fa-

1 *Il arriva.* 2 *bien*, adv. 3 *courrier*, n. m. 4 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 5 *nous*, pron. conj. 6 *apporter*, v. 1. 7 *nouvelle*, n. f. 8 *fort*, adv. 9 *agréable*, adj.

1 *arriver*, v. 1. 2 *du malheur.* 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *votre*, pron. adj. 5 *famille*, n. f.

1 *venir*, v. 2. 2 *tous les jours.* 3 *des gens.* 4 *de*, prep. 5 *armée*, n. f. 6 *qui*, pron. 7 *nous*, pron. conj. 8 *dire*, v. 4. 9 *que*, conj. 10 *notre*, pl. nos, pron. adj. 11 *soldat*, n. m. 12 *plein*, adj. 13 *courage*, n. m.

1 *il y a.* 2 *mille gens.* 3 *parler*, v. 1. 4 *éloquence*, n. f. 5 *sans-savoir.* 6 *ce que*, pron. nom. 7 *c'est.*

1 *se débarrasser*, v. 1. 2 *mon*, ma, pl. mes, pron. adj. 3 *précepteur*, n. m. 4 *jusqu'à ce que.* 5 *il vint.* 6 *s'en présenter un tel qu'il me falloit.*

1 *comme.* 2 *le seigneur.* 3 *achever*, v. 1. 4 *ces*, pron. adj. pl. 5 *parole*, n. f. 6 *loon*



loon 8 fix 9 new 10 faces  
11.

*il parut.* 7 *dans*, prep. 8  
*fallon*, n. m. 9 *fix*, adj. pl.  
10 *nouv-eau*, *elle*, pl. *eaux*,  
adj. 11 *visage*, n. m.

V. Of the Verbs Impersonal *il y a*, *il est*, and *il fait*.

R U L E I.

The verb *il y a*, there is, there are, often denotes a certain time, space, or number, as

*Il y a deux jours qu'il est ma-*  
*lade.*

He has been sick these two  
days.

*il y a quatre milles de Londres*  
*à Putney.*

there are four miles from  
London to Putney.

*il y a trois soldats chez nous.*

there are three soldiers at  
our house.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There are fix 1 thousand 1  
years 2 since 3 the world  
4 has been created 5.  
there are 1 five weeks 2 since  
our 3 fleet 4 set 5 sail 5  
for 6 America 7.

1 *Six mille*, adj. 2 *an*, n. m.  
3 *que*, conj. 4 *monde*, n. m.  
5 *est crée*.  
1 *cing*, adj. und. 2 *semaine*,  
n. f. 3 *notre*, pron. adj. 4  
*flotte*, n. f. 5 *partir*, v. 2.  
conj. in its comp. with the  
verb *être*. 6 *pour*, prep. 7  
*Amérique*, n. f.

there are thirty 1 miles 2  
from 3 London 4 to 5  
Chelmsford.

1 *trente*, adj. und. 2 *mille*,  
n. m. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *Londres*,  
n. m. 5 *à*, prep.

there are many 1 people 2  
who 3 call 4 themselves 4  
christians 5, and 6 are un-  
worthy 7 of the name 8  
which 9 they bear 10.

1 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. 2 *per-*  
*sonne*, n. f. 3 *qui*, pron. 4  
*se font appeller*. 5 *chrétien*,  
n. m. 6 *et*, conj. 7 *in-*  
*digne*, adj. 8 *nom*, n. m. 9  
*que*, pron. 10 *porter*, v. 1.  
1 *neuf*, adj. und. 2 *dans*,  
prep. 3 *arche*, n. f. 4 *Noé*,  
n. m.

there were nine 1 persons in  
2 Noah's 4 ark 3.

## R U L E II.

The verb *il y a* is sometimes followed by an infinitive with the preposition *à* before it, as

*Il y a à espérer qu'il se corrigera.* It is to be hoped that he will mend.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is to 1 be hoped 1 that 2 the duke 3 will recover 4 of 5 this 6 distemper 7. 1 *à espérer.* 2 *que,* conj. 3 *duc,* n. m. 4 *revenir,* v. 2. 5 *de,* prep. 6 *cette,* pron. adj. f. 7 *maladie,* n. f.

it is to be feared 1 that 2 he will die 2 before 3 he has 3 time 4 to 5 make 6 his 7 will 8. 1 *craindre,* v. 6. 2 *qu'il ne meure.* 3 *avant que d'avoir.* 4 *tems,* n. m. 5 *de,* prep. 6 *faire,* v. 5. 7 *son,* pron. adj. m. 8 *testament,* n. m.

## R U L E III.

The verb *il y a* may be used before most French Nouns, as

*Y a-t-il de l'argent dans votre bourse.* Is there any money in your purse.  
*il n'y a point de bassesse à pardonner.* there is no meanness in forgiving.  
*il n'y a rien de bon au marché.* there is nothing good in the market.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There is nothing 1 for 2 you 3 in 4 this 5 letter 6. 1 *Rien,* n. m. 2 *pour,* prep. 3 *vous,* pron. nom. 4 *dans,* prep. 5 *cette,* pron. adj. f. 6 *lettre,* n. f.

are there any 1 carps 1 in this river 2? 1 *des carpes.* 2 *rivière,* n. f.

are there any 1 dialogues 1 in your 2 grammar 3? 1 *des dialogues.* 2 *votre,* pron. adj. 3 *grammaire,* n. f.

there is nothing to 1 get 2 with 3 beggars 4. 1 *à,* prep. 2 *gagner,* v. 1. 3 *avec,* prep. 4 *gueux,* n. m. there

there is no honour 1 in 2 re-  
venging one's self 2 of a  
woman 3, whatever 4 of-  
fence she has given 4.

1 *honneur*, n. m. 2 *à se ven-*  
*ger*. 3 *femme*, n. f. 4 *quel-*  
*que tort qu'elle ait*.

R U L E IV.

The verb impersonal *il est*, it is, is joined to the adjectives, in order to shew that what is meant by these adjectives becomes what is afterwards expressed in the sentence, as

*Il est certain que l'armée Fran-*  
*çoise a été battue.*

It is certain that the French  
army has been defeated.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Is it certain 1 that 2 peace  
3 will be made 4 this 5  
year 6?

1 *Certain*, adj. 2 *que*, conj.  
3 *paix*, n. f. 4 *se faire*, v.  
5. 5 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 6  
*année*, n. f.

it is glorious 1 to 2 die 3 for  
4 one's 5 country 6.

1 *glor-ieux*, *euse*, adj. 2 *de*,  
prep. 3 *mourir*, v. 2. 4  
*pour*, prep. 5 *sa*, pron. adj.  
f. 6 *patrie*, n. f.

it is good 1 to 2 shew 2 to  
3 conceited men 3, that  
4 they have more 5 pride  
6 than 7 skill 8.

1 *b-on*, *onne*, adj. 2 *de mon-*  
*trer*. 3 *aux esprits suffisans*.  
4 *que*, conj. 5 *plus de*. 6  
*orgueil*, n. m. 7 *que*, conj.  
8 *habileté*, n. f.

is it not true 1 that 2 the  
weather 3 is much 4 al-  
tered 5?

1 *vrai*, adj. 2 *que*, conj. 3  
*tems*, n. m. 4 *bien*, adv. 5  
*changer*, v. 1.

R U L E V.

The Verb impersonal *il fait*, it is, is used with such adjectives, as denote the disposition of the air, as *il fait chaud*, it is hot.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Is it fine 1 weather 2?

1 *B-eau*, *elle*, adj. 2 *tems*,  
n. m.

it is dark 1.

1 *obscur*, adj.

is it cold 1?

1 *froid*, adj.

it is warmer 1 to 2 day 2  
than 3 it was yesterday 4.

1 *chaud*, adj. 2 *aujourd'hui*,  
adv. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *hier*, adv.



VI. *Of the Verb Impersonal il faut.*

This verb is thus conjugated, *il faut, il falloit, il fallut, il faudra, il faudroit, qu'il faille, qu'il fallut.* As it is one of the most necessary French verbs, I must be a little particular upon it.

## R U L E I.

The verb *il faut* is englished sometimes by the verb *must*; sometimes by the words *necessary, requisite, and needful*, joined to the verb *to be*; and sometimes by the verbs *shall* and *should*, as

|                                       |                               |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Il faut que vous me le disiez.</i> | You must tell it me.          |
| <i>il faut l'écrire.</i>              | it is necessary to write it.  |
| <i>il faut que vous l'achettiez.</i>  | you shall buy it.             |
| <i>il ne faut pas être ingrat.</i>    | one should not be ungrateful. |

By which examples it appears, that *il faut* requires after it either the conjunctive with the conjunction *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| We must do 1 our 2 duty 3.  | 1 <i>Faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>notre</i> , pron. adj. 3 <i>devoir</i> , n. m.   |
| one must think 1 before 2 one speaks 2.   | 1 <i>penfer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>avant que de parler</i> .   |
| must we begin 1 again 1 what 2 we have done 4 so 3 well 3.  | 1 <i>recommencer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ce que</i> , pron. nom. m. 3 <i>si bien</i> . 4 <i>faire</i> , v. 5.   |
| when 1 one 2 has deviated 3 from 4 the 4 path 5 of virtue 6, one must endeavour 7 to 8 get into it again 8. | 1 <i>quand</i> , conj. 2 <i>on</i> , pron. conj. 3 <i>s'écarter</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>du</i> . 5 <i>sentier</i> , n. m. 6 <i>vertu</i> , n. f. 7 <i>tâcher</i> , v. 1. 8 <i>d'y rentrer</i> . |
| if 1 you have 2 a mind 2 to 3 be esteemed 3, you must do your 4 duty 5.                                     | 1 <i>si</i> , conj. 2 <i>vouloir</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>qu'on vous estime</i> . 4 <i>votre</i> , pron. adj. 5 <i>devoir</i> , n. m.  |
| children 1 must do what 2 they are bid 3.   | 1 <i>enfant</i> , plur. ans, n. m. 2 <i>ce que</i> , pron. nom. m. 3 <i>commander</i> , v. 1.  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| it was necessary to go 1 to 2<br>Rome 3.  | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à</i> , prep. 3<br><i>Rome</i> , n. f.   |
| is 1 it necessary for me to do<br>1 what must 2 be undone 2?                    | 1 <i>faut-il que je fasse</i> . 2 <i>il faut</i><br><i>défaire</i> .   |
| you shall learn 1 your lesson 2.  | 1 <i>apprendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>leçon</i> , n. f.  |
| you shall not go 1 out 1.   | 1 <i>sortir</i> , v. 2.  |
| one should not be ungrateful 1.   | 1 <i>ingrat</i> , adj.   |
| when 1 one 2 has 3 nothing<br>4 good 5 to 6 say 6, one<br>should be 7 silent 7. | 1 <i>quand</i> . 2 <i>on</i> . 3 <i>avoir</i> , v. 3.<br>4 <i>rien</i> , n. m. 5 <i>de bon</i> . 6<br><i>à dire</i> . 7 <i>garder le silence</i> ,<br>v. 1. art. and n. m. |

## R U L E II.

The Verb *faut* is sometimes englished by *must have* or *want*; and if it be *I, thou, he, she, we, you, or they*, who must have, or want, we ought to use the conjunctive pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, and leur* in the dative, as

*Il me faut des bas.*

*I must have stockings.*

*il nous faut des troupes.*

*we want troops.*

*ils leur faut des habits.*

*they want cloaths.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| I must have pens 1, ink 2,<br>and 3 paper 4. | 1 <i>Plume</i> , n. f. 2 <i>encre</i> , n. f. 3<br><i>&amp;</i> , conj. 4 <i>papier</i> , n. m. |
| thou must have a better 1<br>horse 2.        | 1 <i>meilleur</i> , adj. 2 <i>cheu-al</i> ,<br>pl. <i>aux</i> , n. m.                           |
| he must have a small 1 house 2.              | 1 <i>petit</i> , adj. 2 <i>maison</i> , n. f.   |
| she must have a pair 1 of<br>gloves 2.       | 1 <i>paire</i> , n. f. 2 <i>gand</i> , n. m.  |
| we must have better officers 1.              | 1 <i>officier</i> , n. m.   |
| you want some 1 good 2<br>books 3.           | 1 <i>quelque</i> , adj. 2 <i>b-on, onne</i> ,<br>adj. 3 <i>livre</i> , n. m.                    |
| they want a better master 1.                 | 1 <i>maître</i> , n. m.   |

## R U L E III.

The same Verb is used absolutely, at the end of a phrase, with the conjunction *comme*, or the pronoun *ce que* before that end, as

*Faites mon habit comme il faut.*

*Make my coat as it should be.*

*prenez ce qu'il vous faut.*

*take what you must have.*

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Do 1 your 2 work 3 again 1 ; 1 *Refaire*, v. 5. 2 *votre*,  
it 4 is not as it should be. pron. adj. 3 *ouvrage*, n.  
m. 4 *il*, pron. perf. m.
- do 1 the things 2 as they 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *chose*, n. f.  
should be; and I shall be 3 *satisfaire*, v. 5.  
satisfied 3.
- I have told 2 him 1 what 3 1 *lui*, pron. conj. 2 *dire*, v.  
I 4 should 4. 4. 3 *ce que*, pron. nom. m.  
4 *il falloit*.

*Regimen of French Verbs.*

By the Regimen of a Verb, I mean a Noun or Pronoun, expressing what the action or signification of that Verb has a relation to; for instance, when I say, *I hate vice*, one may see that my action of hating is related to *vice*. Again, when I say, *we profit by their example*, one may see that the meaning of the Verb *we profit*, is related to *their example*. Therefore *vice* is the regimen of the Verb *I hate* in the first sentence, and *by their example* is that of the Verb *we profit* in the second.

There are two sorts of regimen, *viz.* the absolute and the relative, the first being the nominative or accusative, and the other the genitive, dative, or ablative.

I. *Verbs Active.*

## R U L E I.

The active Verb governs the accusative, as

- Un bon sujet aime son roi.* A good subject loves his king.  
*L'arbre, que vous avez vu,* the tree, which you have seen,  
*produit d'excellent fruit.* produces excellent fruit.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Wisdom 1 has built 2 her 3 1 *Sagesse*, n. f. 2 *bâtir*, v. 2.  
house 4, she has hewn 5 3 *son*, *sa*, plur. *ses*, pron.  
out 5 her seven 6 pillars adj. 4 *maison*, n. f. 5 *tailler*,  
7. v. 1. 6 *sept*, adj. und. 7  
*colonne*, n. f.

the



the people 1 shall curse 2 him  
3 that 4 with-holdeth 5  
corn 6 ; but 7 blessing 8  
shall be upon 9 the head  
10 of him that selleth 12  
it 11.

a wise 2 son 1 heareth 3 his  
father's 5 instruction 4 ;  
but a scorner 6 heareth  
not rebuke 7.

a 1 good man 1 leaveth 2 an  
inheritance 3 to his chil-  
dren's children 4.

the lord 1 will destroy 2 the  
house 3 of the proud 4,  
but he will establish 5 the  
6 borders 6 of the widow  
7.

the Lord is far 1 from 2 the  
2 wicked 3 ; but he hear-  
eth the prayer 4 of the  
righteous 5.

the Lord has made 1 all 2  
things 3 for 4 himself 5.

he 1 that 2 justifieth 3 the  
wicked, and he that con-  
demneth 4 the just 5, are  
6 both abomination to the  
Lord 6.

a merry 2 heart 1 does 3  
good 4 like 5 a medicine  
6 ; but a broken 8 spirit  
7 drieth 9 the bones 10.

1 *peuple*, n. m. 2 *maudire*, v.  
4. 3 *celui*, pron. nom. m.  
4 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 5  
*retenir*, v. z. 6 *bled*, n. m.  
7 *mais*, conj. 8 *bénédiction*,  
n. f. 9 *sur*, prep. 10 *tête*,  
n. f. 11 *le*, pron. conj. 12  
*vendre*, v. 6.

1 *fil*, n. m. 2 *sage*, adj. 3  
*écouter*, v. 1. 4 *instruction*,  
n. f. 5 *père*, n. m. 6 *moc-  
queur*, n. m. 7 *réprimande*,  
n. f.

1 *l'honnête homme*. 2 *laisser*,  
v. 1. 3 *héritage*, n. m. 4  
*enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m.

1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *détruire*,  
v. 4. 3 *maison*, n. f. 4 *or-  
gueilleux*, n. m. 5 *affermer*,  
v. z. 6 *les limites*. 7 *veuve*,  
n. f.

1 *loin*, adv. 2 *des*. 3 *méch-ant*,  
plur. *ans*, n. m. 4 *prière*,  
n. f. 5 *juste*, n. m.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *t-out*, *oute*,  
plur. m. *ous*, adj. 3 *chose*,  
n. f. 4 *pour*, prep. 5 *lui-  
même*, pron. nom. m.

1 *celui*, pron. nom. m. 2 *qui*,  
pron. m. and f. 3 *justifier*,  
v. 1. 4 *condamner*, v. 1. 5  
*juste*, n. m. 6 *sont en abomi-  
nation devant le Seigneur*.

1 *cœur*, n. m. 2 *joy-eux*, *euse*,  
adj. 3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *du bien*.  
5 *comme*, conj. 6 *médecine*,  
n. f. 7 *esprit*, n. m. 8 *ab-  
battu*, p. p. 9 *déssécher*, v.  
1. 10 *os*, n. m.

a man

- a man 1, who 2 has friends 1 *homme, n. m. 2 qui, pron.*  
 3, must 4 shew 5 himself 3 *ami, n. m. 4 devoir, v.*  
 5 friendly 6. 3. 5 *se montrer, v. 1. 6*  
*porté à faire du bien.*

## R U L E II.

The same Verbs govern also the dative, as

*Il a donné du pain aux pauvres.* He has given bread to the poor.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Is it lawful 1 to 2 give 3 1 *Permis, p. p. 2 de, prep. 3*  
 tribute 4 to Cæsar 5, or 6 *payer, v. 1. 4 le tribut. 5*  
 not 6? *Cæsar, n. m. 6 ou non.*  
 shew 1 me 2 the 3 tribute 1 *montrer, v. 1. 2 moi, pron.*  
 money 3; and 4 they conj. 3 *l'argent du tribut.*  
 brought 6 him 5 a penny 4 *Et, conj. 5 lui, pron. conj.*  
 7. 6 *apporter, v. 1. 7 sou, n. m.*  
 render 1 to Cæsar, the 2 1 *rendre, v. 6. 2 ce qui ap-*  
 things which are Cæsar's *partient à Cæsar. 3 Et,*  
 2, and 3 to God 4, the 5 conj. 4 *Dieu, n. m. 5 ce*  
 things that are God's 5. *qui appartient à Dieu.*  
 do 1 good 2 to them 3 that 1 *faire, v. 5. 2 du bien. 3*  
 4 hate 6 you 5. *ceux, pron. nom. m. 4 qui,*  
 give 1 us 2 this 3 day 3 our pron. m. and f. 5 *vous,*  
 4 daily 6 bread 5. 1 *donner, v. 1. 2 nous, pron.*  
 conj. 3 *aujourd'hui, adv.*  
 4 *notre, pl. nos, pron. adj.*  
 5 *pain, n. m. 6 quotid-ien,*  
 1 *ienne, adj.*  
 forgive 1 us our trespasses 2, 1 *pardonner, v. 1. 2 offense, n.*  
 as 3 we forgive them 4 f. 3 *comme, conj. 4 à ceux*  
 that 4 trespass 6 against 6 *qui. 5 nous, pron. conj. 6*  
 us 5. *offenser, v. 1.*  
 if 1 you forgive men 2 their 1 *si, conj. 2 aux hommes. 3*  
 3 trespasses, your 4 hea- *leur, pron. adj. 4 votre,*  
 venly 6 father 5 will also pl. *vos, pron. adj. 5 père,*  
 8 forgive you 7; but 9 if n. m. 6 *céleste, adj. 7 vous,*  
 you forgive not men 10 pron. conj. 8 *aussi, conj. 9*  
 their

their trespasses, neither 11  
will your father forgive  
11 your trespasses.  
give not that 1 which 1 is  
holy 2 to the dogs 3.  
discover 1 not your secret 2  
to those 3 who 4 have a 5  
mind 5 to 6 betray 7 you.

*mais*, conj. 10 *aux hommes*.  
11  *votre père ne vous par-*  
*donnera point non plus.*  
1 *ce qui*, pron. nom. m. 2  
*saint*, adj. 3 *chien*, n. m.  
1 *découvrir*, v. 2. 2 *secret*,  
n. m. 3 *ceux*, pron. nom.  
m. and pl. 4 *qui*, pron. 5  
*envie*. 9 *de*, prep. 7 *trahir*,  
v. 2.

## II. Verbs Passive.

### R U L E I.

Such Verbs passive as denote the inward actions of the  
soul, commonly govern the genitive or ablative, as

*Il est aimé de tout le monde.*  
*il est haï du prince.*

He is loved by every body.  
he is hated by the prince.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule*

I am 1 reading 1 a book 2,  
which 3 is esteemed 4 by  
5 all 6 the connoisseurs 7.

1 *Lire*, v. 4. 2 *livre*, n. m. 3  
*qui*, pron. 4 *estimer*, v. 1.  
5 *de*, 2 art. 6 *t-out*, pl. m. ous,  
adj. 7 *connoisseur*, n. m.

the man 1 whom 2 I recom-  
mend 4 to 3 you 3, is lov-  
ed 5 and esteemed by all  
those 6 who 7 know 9 him  
8.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *que*, pron.  
3 *vous*, pron. conj. 4 *re-*  
*commander*, v. 1. 5 *aimer*,  
v. 1. 6 *ceux*, pron. nom.  
m. pl. 7 *qui*, pron. 8 *le*,  
pron. conj. 9 *connoître*, v. 5.

our 1 sovereign 2 behaves 3  
so 4 wisely 5, that 6 he is  
respected 7 even 8 by those  
who 9 don't love 11 him  
10.

1 *notre*, pron. adj. 2 *souve-*  
*rain*, n. m. 3 *se conduire*,  
v. 4. 4 *si*, adv. 5 *sagement*,  
adv. 6 *que*, conj. 7 *res-*  
*pecter*, v. 1. 8 *même*, adv.  
9 *qui*, pron. 10 *le*, pron.  
conj. 11 *aimer*, v. 1.

if 1 he be not loved by his 2  
subjects 3, he is feared 5  
by 4 them 4, and 6 that  
7 is sufficient for him 7.

1 *si*, conj. 2 *ses*, pron. adj. pl.  
3 *sujet*, n. m. 4 *en*, pron.  
conj. 5 *craindre*, v. 6. 6  
Ê, conj. 7 *cela lui suffit*.

### R U L E



## R U L E II.

Such verbs passive as denote outward actions, commonly govern the accusative with the preposition *par*, by ; as  
*Il a été tué par son propre fils.* He was killed by his own son.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Cæsar 1 was killed 2 in 3  
 the senate-house 3 by 4  
 those 5 he had loaded 6  
 with 7 kindnesses 7.

it 1 is reported 1 that 2 Ba-  
 bylon 3, the 4 capital city  
 4 of the empire 5 of Assy-  
 ria 6, was founded 7 by 8  
 Semiramis.

Great 1 Britain 1 was for-  
 merly 2 inhabited 3 by  
 the Britons 4 and 5 Picts  
 6.

Westminster 2 bridge 1 has  
 been built 3 by a very 4  
 skilful 5 architect 6.

1 Cæsar, n. m. 2 *tuer*, v. 1.  
 3 *en plein sénat*. 4 *par*,  
 prep. 5 *ceux que*. 6 *com-*  
*bler*, v. 1. 7 *de bienfaits*.

1 *on dit*. 2 *que*, conj. 3 Ba-  
 bilone, n. f. 4 *capitale*. 5  
*empire*, n. m. 6 *Affirie*, n.  
 f. 7 *fonder*, v. 1. 8 *par*,  
 prep.

1 *la Grande Bretagne*. 2 *au-*  
*trefois*, adv. 3 *habiter*, v.  
 1. 4 *Bréton*, n. m. 5 *et*,  
 conj. 6 *Pictes*, n. m.

1 *pont*, n. m. 2 *Westminster*,  
 n. m. 3 *bâtir*, v. 2. 4 *fort*,  
 adv. 5 *habile*, adj. 6 *ar-*  
*chitecte*, n. m.

## R U L E III.

Verbs passive, denoting actions that come both from the body and mind, may govern the genitive and ablative, or the accusative with the preposition *par*, as *il est loué de*, or, *par beaucoup de gens*, he is praised by many people.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The duke 1 of Randan, as 2  
 he left 2 Hanover 3, did 4  
 an action 5 that 6 was  
 praised 7 by 8 his 9 ene-  
 mies 10.

1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *en quittant*. 3  
*Hanovre*, n. m. 4 *faire*, v.  
 5. 5 *action*, n. f. 6 *qui*,  
 pron. 7 *louer*, v. 1. 8 *par*  
 or *de*. 9 *ses*, pron. adj. pl.  
 10 *ennemi*, n. m.

the

the prince 1, as 2 he entered 1 *prince*, n. m. 2 *en entrant*  
 the city 2, was congratu- *dans la ville.* 3 *féliciter*, v.  
 lated 3 by the citizens 4. 1. 4 *bourgeois*, n. m.

Each of the foregoing exercises ought to make two sentences; in the first whereof, the verb passive will govern the genitive, or ablative; and in the last the accusative, with the preposition *par*.

The last rule not being general, I must here advise the learner, to make the verbs contained therein govern the accusative with the preposition *par*. In so doing, they cannot mistake; whereas they might use the genitive or ablative with a verb that governs neither of those two cases.

### III. Verbs Neuter and Reflected.

#### R U L E I.

The absolute regimen of these verbs is the nominative, as

*Il paroît tout changé.*  
*il se tient droit.*

He seems to be quite changed.  
 he stands upright.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

This 1 cloth 2 seems 4 good  
 5 to 3 me 3, you may 6  
 buy 8 it 7 upon 9 my 10  
 word 11.

1 *Ce*, pron. adj. m. 2 *drap*,  
 n. m. 3 *me*, pron. conj. 4  
*paroître*, v. 5 *b-on, onne*,  
 adj. 6 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 7 *le*,  
 pron. conj. m. 8 *acheter*,  
 v. 1. 9 *sur*, prep. 10 *ma*,  
 pron. adj. f. 11 *parole*, n. f.  
 1 *école*, n. f. 2 *utile*, adj. 3  
*votre*, pron. adj. 4 *petit*  
*fil*, n. m. 5 *devenir*, v. 2.  
 6 *grand*, adj. 7 *Et*, conj.  
 8 *paroître*, v. 5. 9 *plus sa-*  
*vant.* 10 *que*, conj. 11 *il*  
*y a six mois.*

the school 1 has been useful  
 2 to your 3 grandson 4.  
 He grows 5 tall 6, and 7  
 appears 8 a 9 better scho-  
 lar 9 than 10 he was six  
 11 months ago 11.

1 *qu'est-ce qui.* 2 *vous*, pron.  
 conj. 3 *chagriner*, v. 1. 4  
*tout autre que vous n'étiez.*  
 5 *hier*, adv.

what 1 is it that 1 disturbs 3  
 you 2? you seem quite 4  
 different from what you  
 was 4 yesterday 5.

#### R U L E

## R U L E II.

The relative regimen of the same verbs is the dative, as  
*Ce tableau plait à ma sœur.* This picture pleases my sister.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is not surprizing 1 that 2  
 I don't love 3 this 4 wo-  
 man 5, she displeases 6  
 every 7 body 7.

I am not a judge 1 of verses  
 2; here 3 are some 3 which  
 4 please 6 me 5; do you  
 think 7 that they are good  
 8?

here 1 is one 1 of the finest 2  
 country-houses 3 I 4 have  
 seen in my life 4; whom  
 5 do you think it belongs  
 6 to 5?

an honest 1 man 2 does not  
 seek 3 to 4 hurt 5 his 6  
 neighbour 7.

this book 1 seems 3 to 2 me  
 2 well 4 written 5; but 6  
 is 7 it really so 7?

one 1 may 1 accustom 2 one's  
 self to 2 any 3 thing 3.

he has abandoned 1 himself  
 1 to all 2 kinds 3 of vices  
 4.

why 1 don't you apply your-  
 self 1 to 2 study 3?

1 *Surprenant*, adj. 2 *que*, conj.  
 3 *aimer*, v. 1. 4 *ce*, *cette*,  
 pl. *ces*, pron. adj. 5 *femme*,  
 n. f. 6 *déplaire*, v. 5. 7 *à*  
*tout le monde*.

1 *judge*, n. m. 2 *vers*, n. m.  
 3 *en voila*. 4 *qui*, pron. m.  
 and f. 5 *me*, pron. conj. 6  
*plaire*, v. 5. 7 *croire*, v.  
 5. 8 *b-on*, *onne*, adj.

1 *voici une*. 2 *b-eau*, *elle*, adj.  
 3 *maison de campagne*, n. f.  
 4 *que j'aie vûe de ma vie*.  
 5 *à qui*. 6 *appartenir*, v. 2.

1 *honnête*, adj. 2 *homme*, n. m.  
 3 *chercher*, v. 1. 4 *à*, prep.  
 5 *nuire à*, v. 4. 6 *son*, pron.  
 adj. m. 7 *prochain*, n. m.

1 *livre*, n. m. 2 *me*, pron.  
 conj. 3 *paraître*, v. 5. 4  
*bien*, adv. 5 *écrire*, v. 4. 6  
*mais*, conj. 7 *l'est-il en effet*.

1 *on peut*. 2 *s'accoutumer à*,  
 v. 1. 3 *tout*, n. m.

1 *s'abandonner*, v. 1. 2 *t-out*,  
 pl. m. *ous*, adj. 3 *sorte*, n.  
 f. 4 *vice*, n. m.

1 *que ne vous appliquez-vous*.  
 2 *à*, prep. 3 *étude*, n. f.

## R U L E III.

Such of the verbs neuter and reflected, as govern the da-  
 tive, often govern the infinitive with the preposition *à*, as



*Il songe à son salut.*  
*il songe à faire fortune.*

He thinks of his own safety.  
 he thinks of making his fortune.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

When 1 will you proceed 2  
 to 3 elect 4 your 5 magi-  
 strates 6?

I expect 1 to see 2 my 3 fa-  
 ther 4 in 5 two or three  
 days 5.

your 1 friend 2 has 3 taken  
 upon himself 3 to defend  
 4 my cause 5.

you must resolve 1 to suffer  
 2 what 3 you 4 cannot 4  
 help 5.

prepare 1 yourself 1 to re-  
 ceive 2 the best of your  
 friends.

I accustom 1 myself 1 to read  
 2 four 4 pages 5 of Gil-  
 Blas every 3 day 3.

I love 1 your cousin 2, be-  
 cause 3 he takes 4 a de-  
 light 4 in 5 doing 5 what  
 6 his 7 master 8 bids 10  
 him 9.

1 *Quand*, adv. 2 *procéder*, v.  
 1. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *élire*, v.  
 4. 5 *votre*, pl. *vos*, pron.  
 adj. 6 *magistrat*, n. m.

1 *s'attendre*, v. 6. 2 *voir*, v. 3.  
 3 *mon*, *ma*, pl. *mes*, pron.  
 adj. 4 *père*, n. m. 5 *dans*  
*deux ou trois jours*.

1 *votre*, pl. *vous*, pron. adj. 2  
*ami*, n. m. 3 *s'engager*, v. 1.  
 4 *défendre*, v. 6. 5 *cause*,  
 n. f.

1 *se résoudre*, v. 5. 2 *souffrir*,  
 v. 2. 3 *ce que*, pron. nom.  
 m. 4 *vous ne pouvez*. 5  
*empêcher*, v. 1.

1 *se préparer*, v. 1. 2 *recevoir*,  
 v. 3. 3 *meilleur*, adj.

1 *s'accoutumer*, v. 1. 2 *lire*,  
 v. 4. 3 *tous les jours*. 4  
*quatre*, adj. und. 5 *page*, n. f.

1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *cousin*, n. m.  
 3 *parceque*, conj. 4 *se plaire*,  
 v. 5. 5 *à faire*. 6 *ce que*,  
 pron. nom. m. 7 *son*, pron.  
 adj. m. 8 *maître*, n. m. 9  
*lui*, pron. conj. 10 *ordon-*  
*ner*, v. 1.

R U L E IV.

Many verbs neuter and reflected govern the genitive of  
 a noun, and the infinitive of a verb with the preposition  
*de*, as

*s'abstenir de vin.*

*s'abstenir de boire du vin.*

To abstain from wine.

to abstain from drinking wine.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- What 1 are you speaking 2  
of 1? do you speak of  
peace 3 or 4 war 5?  
we shall lose 1 our 3 friend 4  
soon 2; for 5 he speaks  
of 6 going 6 to 7 Ame-  
rica 7.  
your 1 son 2 repents 3 of his  
4 fault 5; you must 6 for-  
give 8 him 7.
- he 1 has a mind to 1 deceive  
3 you 2; mistrust 4 him  
5.
- why 1 will 2 you have me  
give over 2 my 3 preten-  
sions 4 since 5 they are  
just 6?
- one 1 grows 2 often 3 tired  
2 with 4 the 4 best 5 dishes  
6?
- I am 1 tired 1 to 2 repeat 3  
so 4 often 4 the same 5  
things 6.
- I 1 pretend 1 to 2 nothing 3.
- I pretend 1 to know 2 my  
trade 3.
- 1 *De quoi.* 2 *parler*, v. 1. 3  
*paix*, n. f. 4 *ou*, conj. 5  
*guerre*, n. f.  
1 *perdre*, v. 4. 2 *bientôt*, adv.  
3 *notre*, pron. adj. 4 *ami*,  
n. m. 5 *car*, conj. 6 *d'al-*  
*ler*. 7 *en Amérique*.  
1 *votre*, pron. adj. 2 *fil*, n.  
m. 3 *se repentir*, v. 2. 4  
*fa*, pron. adj. f. 5 *faute*,  
n. f. 6 *devoir*, v. 3. 7 *lui*,  
pron. conj. 8 *pardonner*,  
v. 1.  
1 *il a envie de*. 2 *vous*, pron.  
conj. 3 *tromper*, v. 1. 4 *se*  
*méfier de*, v. 1. 5 *lui*, pron.  
nom.  
1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *voulez-vous*  
*que je me désiste de*. 3 *mon*,  
*ma*, pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 4  
*prétension*, n. f. 5 *puisque*,  
conj. 6 *juste*, adj.  
1 *on*. 2 *se laisser*, v. 1. 3  
*souvent*, adv. 4 *des*, prep.  
and art. 5 *meilleur*, adj. 6  
*mets*, n. m.  
1 *se laisser*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep. 3  
*répéter*, v. 1. 4 *si souvent*.  
5 *même*, adj. 6 *chose*, n. f.  
1 *je ne me pique*. 2 *de*, prep.  
3 *rien*, n. m.  
1 *se piquer de*, v. 1. 2 *savoir*,  
v. 3. 3 *métier*, n. m.

IV. *Verbs Impersonal.*

## R U L E I.

The impersonal verbs *il suffit*, it is sufficient; *il convient*, it becomes; *il importe*, it is requisite; and *il m'ennuie*, I am tired, govern the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as

*Il suffit de lui parler.*

It is enough to speak to him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It will 1 be sufficient 1 to follow 2 his 3 orders 4.

1 *Suffir*, v. 2. 2 *sui-vre*, v. 4. 3 *sés*, pron. adj. pl. 4 *ordre*, n. m.

it is 1 fit 1 one 2 should do it 2.

1 *convenir*, v. 2. 2 *de le faire*.

when 1 one 2 intends 3 to end 5 well 4, it 6 is requisite 6 to begin 7 well.

1 *quand*, conj. 2 *on*. 3 *vouloir*, v. 3. 4 *bien*, adv. 5 *finir*, v. 2. 6 *il importe*. 7 *commencer*, v. 1.

I am 1 tired 1 with 2 waiting 2.

1 *s'ennuier*, v. 1. 2 *d'attendre*.

R U L E II.

The three first of the foregoing verbs govern also the dative, as

*Il vous suffit de faire votre devoir.*

It is enough for you to do your duty.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It 1 is enough 1 for 2 us 2 to 3 mind 4 our 5 own affairs 5.

1 *Il suffit*. 2 *nous*, pron. conj. in the dat. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *songer*, v. 1. 5 *à nos propres affaires*.

it 1 becomes 1 you 2 to act 3 otherwise 4.

1 *il convient*. 2 *vous*, pron. conj. in the dat. 3 *agir*, v. 2. 4 *autrement*, adv.

what 1 is it to him 1 to know 2 if 3 his 4 enemy 5 is dead 6 or 7 alive 8.

1 *que lui importe*. 2 *savoir*, v. 3. 3 *si*, conj. 4 *son*, pron. adj. m. 5 *ennemi*, n. m. 6 *mort*, p. p. 7 *ou*, conj. 8 *en vie*.

R U L E III.

The impersonal verbs *il s'ensuit*, *il y va*, and *il s'agit*, govern the genitive or ablative, as

*Il s'ensuit de là.*

It follows from thence.

*Exercises*



*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- It 1 follows 1 from 2 what 3 1 *Il s'en suit.* 2 *de*, prep. 3 *ce*  
 you have said 4, that 5 *qué*, pron. nom. m. 4 *dire*,  
 merit 6 is not always 7 v. 4. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *mérite*,  
 rewarded 8. n. m. 7 *toujours*, adv. 8  
*récompenser*, v. 1.
- my 2 happiness 3 or 4 un- 1 *il y va de*, v. 1. 2 *mon*, pron.  
 happiness 5 is 1 concerned adj. m. 3 *bonheur*, n. m. 4  
 in it 1. *ou*, conj. 5 *de mon malheur*.  
 your 2 life 3 is 1 at stake 1. 1 *il s'agit*, v. 2. 2 *votre*,  
 pron. adj. 3 *vie*, n. f.

Note, That the last of these verbs govern also the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as *ils s'agit de savoir s'il a raison*, the question is to know whether he is in the right.

## V. Rules upon some French Verbs.

## R U L E I.

- Forcer*, to force, to compel ; *manquer*, to fail ;  
*contraindre*, to compel ; *différer*, to delay ;  
*commencer*, to begin ; *se hâter*, to hasten ;  
*continuer*, to continue, to go *se hasarder*, to venture ;  
 on ; *couter*, to cost ;  
 govern the infinitive with *de* or *à*, as  
*Je vous forcerai de le faire*, I shall compel you to do it.  
 or *à le faire*.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- We took 1 the town 2 and 3 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 *ville*, n. f.  
 forced 4 the garrison 5 to 3 *Et*, conj. 4 *forcer*, v. 1.  
 surrender 6 prisoners 7 of 5 *garrison*, n. f. 6 *se rendre*,  
 war 8. v. 6. 7 *prisonnier*, adj. 8  
*guerre*, n. f.
- when 1 will you begin 2 to 1 *quand*, adv. 2 *commencer*,  
 lead 3 a more 5 christian v. 1. 3 *mener*, v. 1. 4 *vie*,  
 6 life 4 ? n. f. 5 *plus*, adv. 6 *chré-*  
*t-ien*, ienne, adj.
- hasten 1 to finish 2 what 3 1 *se hâter*, v. 1. 2 *finir*, v. 2.  
 you have begun two 4 3 *ce que*, pron. nom. m. 4  
 days ago 4. *depuis deux jours*.

## R U L E

R U L E II. and III.

*Persuader*, to persuade, when it is followed by an infinitive, governs the dative, as *je leur ai persuadé de le vendre*, I have persuaded them to sell it; but when it is not followed by that mood, it governs the accusative, as *je les ai persuadés*, I have persuaded them.

*Exercises upon these Rules.*

This 1 young 2 man 2 is a  
rake 3 who 4 disgraces 5  
his 6 family 7, I 8 wish 8  
that 9 somebody 10 might  
11 persuade him 11 to 12  
go 13 to 14 sea 14.

it is impossible 1 to persuade  
those 2 who 2 are 3 not  
willing 3 to 4 be persuad-  
ed 4.

1 *Ce*, pron. adj. m. 2 *jeune-*  
*homme*, n. m. 3 *libertin*, n.  
m. 4 *qui*, pron. m. and f.  
5 *déshonorer*, v. 1. 6 *sa*,  
pron. adj. f. 7 *famille*, n.  
f. 8 *je voudrais*. 9 *que*,  
conj. 10 *quelqu'un*, pron.  
nom. m. 11 *pût lui persua-*  
*der*. 12 *de*, prep. 13 *aller*,  
v. 1. 14 *sur mer*.

1 *impossible*, adj. 2 *ceux qui*.  
3 *vouloir*, v. 3. 4 *qu'on les*  
*persuade*.

R U L E IV.

Such verbs as are joined to nouns used without any article, govern the infinitive with the preposition *de* before it, as

*J'ai droit de les punir.*

*il a envie d'aller en France.*

I have a right to punish them.

he has a mind to go to France.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We have reason 1 to com-  
plain 2 of you 3.

you 1 are in the wrong 1 to  
disinherit 2 a nephew 3  
who 4 loves 6 you 5.

I never 1 gave 2 you 3 any  
4 cause 4 to hate 6 me 5.

1 *Sujet*, n. m. 2 *se plaindre*,  
v. 6. 3 *vous*, pron. nom.

1 *vous avez tort*. 2 *déshériter*,  
v. 1. 3 *neveu*, pl. *eux*, n.  
m. 4 *qui*, pron. 5 *vous*,  
pron. conj. 6 *aimer*, v. 1.

1 *jamais*, adv. 2 *vous*, pron.  
conj. 3 *donner*, v. 1. 4 *sujet*.  
5 *me*, pron. conj. 6 *hater*, v. 2.

K

have

- have you a 1 mind 1 to learn 1 *envie. 2 apprendre, v. 6. 3*  
 2 French 3 ? *François, n. m.*  
 have you any 1 reason 1 to 1 *raison. 2 mécontent, adj. 3*  
 be dissatisfied 2 with 3 my *de, prep. 4 ma, pron. adj.*  
 4 conduct 5 ? *f. 5 conduite, n. f.*

## R U L È V.

The verb *être*, to be, joined to several adjectives, governs also the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as

*Je suis heureux de savoir m'occuper.* I am happy in knowing how to employ my time.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Trust 1 to him 2, he is not 1 *Se fier, v. 1. 2 lui, pron.*  
 capable 3 of deceiving 5 nom. 3 *capable, adj. 4*  
 you 4. *vous, pron. conj. 5 tromper, v. 1.*
- I am curious 1 of knowing 2 1 *curieux, ieuse, adj. 2 savoir,*  
 whether 3 there 4 has been v. 3. 3 *si, conj. 4 il y a*  
 4 a 5 sea-fight 5. *eu. 5 un combat naval.*
- he is going 1 to 2 a country 1 *aller, v. 1. 2 dans, prep. 3*  
 3, where 4 he is sure 5 of pays, n. m. 4 *où, adv. 5*  
 making 6 his 7 fortune 8. *sûr, adj. 6 faire, v. 5. 7*  
*sa, pron. adj. f. 8 fortune,*  
*n. f.*
- we are overjoyed 1 to see 3 1 *ravi, adj. 2 vous, pron.*  
 you 2 returned 4 in 5 good conj. 3 *voir, v. 3. 4 re-*  
 6 health 7. *tourner, v. 1. 5 en, prep.*  
*6 bon, onne, adj. 7 santé,*  
*n. f.*
- are you sorry 1 to hear 2 that 1 *fâché, adj. 2 apprendre, v.*  
 3 he is still 4 alive 5 ? 6. 3 *que, conj. 4 encore,*  
*adv. 5 en vie.*

## R U L È VI.

When the verb *être*, to be, is placed between the pronoun *ce* and a noun, or an adjective, it governs the infinitive with *que de* before it, as

*C'est une folie que de se mécon-* It is a folly to forget one's  
*noître.* former condition.

*c'est*



*c'est être coupable que de ne pas protéger l'innocent.* it is a crime not to protect the innocent.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

He 1 is happy 1 who 2 1 *C'est être heureux. 2 que de*  
 thinks 2 himself 3 so 3. *croire. 3 qu'on l'est.*  
 it is an idle 1 fancy 1 to 1 *chimère, n. f. 2 s'imaginer,*  
 imagine 2 that 3 we 4 can *v. 1. 3 que, conj. 4 on peut*  
 impose upon God 4. *en imposer à Dieu.*

R U L E VII.

*Croire*, to think; and *penser*, to think; which commonly govern the indicative with the conjunction *que*, may also govern a verb in the infinitive, if that verb has the same nominative as they. For instance, instead of saying *vous croyez*, or *vous pensez que vous faites des merveilles*, you think that you are doing wonders, we may say *vous croyez*, or *vous pensez faire des merveilles*.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There 1 are 1 christians 2 1 *Il y a. 2 chrétien, n. m. 3*  
 who 3 think 4 that 5 they *qui, pron. m. and f. 4 croire,*  
 are doing God service 5, *v. 5. 5 rendre service à*  
 in 6 persecuting 7 their 8 *Dieu. 6 en, prep. 7 persé-*  
 fellow 9 creatures 9. *cuter, v. 1. 8 leur, pron.*  
 he thinks of making 1 his 1 *adj. 9 semblable, n. m.*  
 2 fortune 3 in 4 trade 4, *1 faire, v. 5. 2 sa, pron. adj.*  
 but 5 he will find 6 him- *f. 3 fortune, n. f. 4 dans le*  
 self 6 mistaken 7. *commerce. 5 mais, conj. 6*  
*se trouver, v. 1. 7 trompé,*  
*P. P.*

R U L E VIII.

The verbs *je ne sais*, I don't know; *j'ignore*, I know not, and such like, govern the indicative, when they are followed by the conjunction *si*, whether; as,

*Je ne sais si vous viendrez.* I don't know whether you will come.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We don't know 1 whether 2  
we 3 are to be 3 happy 4  
or 5 unhappy 6.

1 *Savoir*, v. 3. 2 *si*, conj. 3  
*nous ferons*. 4 *heur eux*, euse,  
adj. 5 *ou*, conj. 6 *malheur-  
eux*, euse, adj.

you don't know whether you  
1 may live 1 till 2 to-mor-  
row 3.

1 *vous vivrez*. 2 *jusqu'à*,  
prep. 3 *demain*, adv.

## R U L E IX.

The verb *aller*, to go, denotes our going to do a thing, as  
*Je vais le faire*.

I am just going to do it.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Are 1 you just going 1 to  
oppose 2 my 3 designs 4?

1 *Allez vous*. 2 *s'opposer à*, v.  
1. and prep. 3 *mon*, ma,  
pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 4 *dés-  
sein*, n. m.

I am going 1 to make 2 my  
exercice 3 and 4 my verses  
5.

1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3  
*thème*, n. m. 4 *et*, conj. 5  
*vers*, n. m.

## R U L E X.

The verb *venir*, to have just, denotes our having just  
done a thing, as

*Je viens d'arriver.*

I am just arrived.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You 1 cannot 1 speak 2 to  
the judge 3, because 4 he  
5 is just set out 5 for 6  
London 7.

1 *Vous ne sauriez*. 2 *parler*,  
v. 1. 3 *juge*, n. m. 4 *par-  
ceque*, conj. 5 *il vient de  
partir*. 6 *pour*, prep. 7  
*Londres*, n. m.

we 1 were just arrived 1,  
when 2 he began 3 his 4  
speech 5.

1 *nous venions d'arriver*. 2  
*quand*, conj. 3 *commencer*,  
v. 1. 4 *son*, sa, pl. *ses*, pron.  
adj. 5 *discours*, n. m.

## R U L E XI.

The verb *penser*, used in the preterite, denotes what we  
were upon the point of doing, and have not done, as

*Il pensa périr.*

He was just upon the point  
of perishing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

They 1 say 1 that 2 your 3  
niece 4 has 5 been at the  
point of death 5.

I 1 have been at the point of  
death 1; but 2 God 3 be  
thanked 3, I 4 am well 4.

1 *On dit.* 2 *que,* conj. 3 *votre,*  
pron. adj. 4 *nièce,* n. f. 5  
*a pensé mourir.*

1 *j'ai pensé mourir.* 2 *mais,*  
conj. 3 *Dieu merci.* 4 *je*  
*me porte bien.*

VI. Of the verb *être*, having the pronoun *ce* for  
its first, and a substantive, or a pronoun for  
its second nominative.

R U L E I.

When the second nominative of the verb *être*, is in the  
singular, that verb must always be in the singular, as

*C'est moi, ce n'est point lui.*

*est-ce vous ?*

*n'est-ce point elle ?*

*qui est-ce ?*

*qu'est-ce que c'est ?*

*ç'aurait été mon frère.*

It is I, it is not he.

is it you?

is it not she?

who is it?

what is it?

it would have been my brother.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is thou 1 who didst 3 it 2.

it was not he 1 who 2 won 3.

is it I 1, or 2 she 3?

is it not he who writes 2 it  
1?

what 1 is it 1 you have said 2?

it would not have been my 1  
sister 2.

1 *Toi,* pron. nom. m. and f. 2

1 *le,* pron. conj. 3 *faire,* v. 5.

1 *lui,* pron. nom. m. 2 *qui,*  
pron. 3 *gagner,* v. 1.

1 *moi,* pron. nom. m. and f.  
2 *ou,* conj. 3 *elle,* pron.  
nom. f.

1 *le,* pron. conj. m. 2 *écrire,*  
v. 4.

1 *qu'est-ce que.* 2 *dire,* v. 4.

1 *ma,* pron. adj. f. 2 *sœur,*  
n. f.



## R U L E II.

When the second nominative is in the plural, and the sense does not require that the verb *être* should be used in the third person plural of its single tenses, that verb must also be in the singular, as

*Ce fut nous.*

It was we.

*ne fut-ce pas les soldats qui  
commencèrent ?*

was it not the soldiers who  
began ?

*s'auroit été eux.*

it would have been they.

*ce n'auroit point été elles.*

it would not have been they.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It was we 1 who 2 danced 3.

1 *Nous*, pron. nom. plur. m.  
and f. 2 *qui*, pron. 3 *dan-*  
*ser*, v. 1.

was it not her 1 brothers 2  
who rewarded 4 her 3 ?

1 *sés*, pron. adj. pl. 2 *frère*,  
n. m. 3 *la*, pron. conj. f.  
4 *récompenser*, v. 1.

it would have been the fold-  
diers 1 and 2 not 2 the  
officers 3.

1 *soldat*, n. m. 2 *Et non pas*.  
3 *officier*, n. m.

it would not have been the  
judges 1 of the town 2.

1 *juge*, n. m. 2 *ville*, n. f.

## R U L E III.

But if the sense requires that the verb *être* should be used in the third persons plural of the single tenses, that verb must be in the plural, as

*Ce sont de bonnes gens.*

They are good people.

*ce furent eux qui y allèrent.*

it was they who went there.

*seront-ce les princes qui com-  
manderont ?*

will the princes have the  
command ?

*seroient-ce des gens semblables  
qui le diroient ?*

would such people say it ?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

They 1 are 1 great 2 rogues  
3.

1 *Ce sont*. 2 *grand*, adj. 3 *scé-*  
*lérat*, n. m.

they .

they 1 were 1 dukes 2 and 3  
marquisses 4 who 5 served  
7 him 6.

they were princesses 1 who  
began 2.

will 2 the 1 English 1 speak  
2 first 3 ?

would 3 the 1 laws 1 hinder  
3 him 2 to 4 commit 5  
that 6 crime 7.

1 *ce furent*. 2 *duc*, n. m. 3  
Et, conj. 4 *marquis*, n. m.  
5 *qui*, pron. 6 *le*, pron.  
conj. m. 7 *servir*, v. 2.

1 *princesse*, n. f. 2 *commencer*,  
v. 1.

1 *seront ce les Anglois qui*. 2  
*parler*, v. 1. 3 *les premiers*.

1 *seroient-ce les loix qui*. 2 *le*,  
pron. conj. m. 3 *empêcher*,  
v. 1. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *com-*  
*mettre*, v. 4. 6 *ce*, pron.  
adj. m. 7 *crime*, n. m.

#### R U L E IV.

However, if the verb *être* is in the third persons of the imperfect or uncertain, and followed by the pronouns *eux* or *elles*, that verb may as well be singular as plural, as

*C'étoit* or *c'étoient eux qui se* It was they who complained.  
*plaignoient*.

*ce seroit* or *ce seroient elles qui* it were they who should tell  
*devoient le dire*. it.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

It was they 1 who 2 walked  
3 at the head 4 of the  
confederates 5.

it was they 1 who encourag-  
ed 2 the foldiers 3.

it were they who should 1 be  
punished 2.

it were they who should pay  
1 the fine 2.

1 *Eux*, pron. nom. m. pl. 2  
*qui*, pron. m. and f. 3  
*marcher*, v. 1. 4 *tête*, n. f.  
5 *confédéré*, n. m.

1 *elles*, pron. nom. f. plur. 2  
*encourager*, v. 1. 3 *soldat*,  
n. m.

1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *punir*, v. 2.

1 *payer*, v. 1. 2 *amende*, n. f.

#### Of the undeclined Parts of Speech.

These parts of speech, as it has been observed, are the *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*. There is but little to be said upon the last. As to the three first, I

have already been so particular upon each of them, that I must content myself with making two remarks in this place.

I shall observe, first, that altho' the adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions are commonly divided into several classes, an adverb, a preposition, and a conjunction may belong to two or more of its respective classes. For instance, the specificative preposition *à* may also be ranked amongst the prepositions of *place*, *order*, *union*, and *end*.

It is a preposition of *place*, when it shews the place, as  
*Se placer à la tête de l'armée.* To place one's self at the head of an army.

It is a preposition of *order*, when it expresses the order of things, as

*Marcher deux à deux.* To walk two by two.

It is a preposition of *union*, when it denotes the circumstances of time, suitableness and motive, as

*à midi.* At noon.  
*à votre commodité.* at your leisure.  
*à votre considération.* for your sake.

Lastly, it is a preposition of *end*, when it denotes the aim or end, as

*Réduire à l'aumône.* To reduce to beggary.  
*de dix à douze.* from ten to twelve.

Secondly, I shall observe, that the same word may keep the places of two or more parts of speech. For instance, the word *bien* is a noun in the following sentence, viz.

*Ce seigneur à un bien considérable.* This nobleman has a considerable estate.

And it is an adverb in the following one, viz.

*Si vos affaires ne vont pas bien, c'est la faute de ceux qui les conduisent.* If your affairs don't go right, it is the fault of those that manage them.



# E X E R C I S E S

EXTRACTED OUT OF

## THE HOLY SCRIPTURES.

### I. *The Creation* 1 of the World 2.

(A.) **I**N 1 the beginning 1 God 2 created 3 the heaven 4, the earth 5, and 6 all 7 the things 8 contained 9 therein 9. He created them 10 in 11 six days 11, and rested 12 the seventh 13 day 14: therefore 15 he blessed 16 that 17 day and sanctified 18 it.

(B.) The Lord 1 God formed 2 the man 3 of the dust 4 of the ground 5, breathed 6 into 7 his 8 nostrils 9 the breath 10 of life 11, made 12 him after 13 his own likeness 13, and called 14 him Adam 15.

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Création*, n. m. 2 *monde*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Au commencement*. 2 *Dieu*, n. m. 3 *créer*, v. 1. 4 *c-iel*, plur. *ieux*, n. m. 5 *terre*, n. f. 6 *et*, conj. 7 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj. 8 *chose*, n. f. 9 *qui y sont contenues*. 10 *le, la*, plur. *les*, pron. conj. 11 *en six jours*. 12 *se reposer*, v. 1. 13 *septième*, adj. 14 *jour*, n. m. 15 *c'est pourquoi*, conj. 16

*bénir*, v. 2. 17 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 18 *sanctifier*, v. 1.

(B.) 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *former*, v. 1. 3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *poussière*, n. f. 5 *terre*, n. f. 6 *souffler*, v. 1. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *son, sa*, plur. *ses*, pron. adj. 9 *narine*, n. f. 10 *soufle*, n. m. 11 *vie*, n. f. 12 *faire*, v. 5. 13 *à son image*. 14 *nommer*, v. 1. 15 *Adam*, n. m.

K 5

(C.) God

(C.) God said 1 afterwards 2, *it is not good 3 that 4 the man should be alone 4, I will make an help 5 meet 6 for him 6.* He 7 therefore caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam 7, and he slept 8, and he took 9 one 10 of his ribs 11, made 12 a woman out of it 12, and brought 13 her to the man.

(D.) Adam, seeing 1 her, said, *this 2 is now 2 bone 3 of my bones 3, and flesh 4 of my flesh.* Therefore 5 shall a man leave 5 his 6 father 7 and his mother 8, and shall cleave 9 unto 10 his wife 11, and 13 they shall be in one flesh 12. Adam and his wife were 12 both naked 13, and 14 were not ashamed 14.

### THE DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *ensuite*, adv. 3 *b-on, onne*, adj. 4 *que l'homme soit seul*. 5 *aide*, n. f. 6 *semblable à lui*. 7 *il envoya donc à Adam un profond sommeil*. 8 *dormir*, v. 2. 9 *prendre*, v. 6. 10 *un*, adj. 11 *côte*, n. f. 12 *en fit une femme*. 13 *amener*, v. 1.

(D.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *voici*, adv. 3 *l'os de mes os*. 4 *la chair de ma chair*. 5 *c'est pourquoi l'homme quittera*. 6 *son, sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 7 *père*, n. m. 8 *mère*, n. f. 9 *s'attacher*, v. 1. 10 *à*, prep. 11 *femme*, n. f. 12 *et ils ne seront qu'une même chair*. 13 *étoient nus*. 14 *Et ne rougissoient point*.

## II. The Fall 1 of our 2 First 3 Parents 4.

(A.) God 1 put 2 Adam and 3 Eve in 4 a delightful 6 garden 5 producing 7 all 8 kinds 9 of fruit 10. There 11 was also in the middle thereof 11 the tree 12 of knowledge 13 of good 14 and evil 15.

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Chûte*, n. f. 2 *notre*, pl. *nos*, pron. adj. 3 *premier*, adj. 4 *par-ent*, plur. *ens*, n. m. (A.) 1 *Dieu*, pl. *ieux*, n. m. 2 *mettre*, v. 4. 3 *Et*, conj. 4 *dans*, prep. 5 *jardin*, n. m. 6 *délicieux, ieuse*, adj.

7 *qui produisoit*. 8 *t-out*, pl. m. *ous*, adj. 9 *forte*, n. f. 10 *fruit*, n. m. 11 *il y avoit aussi au milieu de ce jardin*. 12 *arbre*, n. m. 13 *connoissance*, n. f. 14 *bien*, n. m. 15 *mal*, plur. *aux*, n. m.

(B.) God said 1 to Adam, thou mayest 2 freely 3 eat 4 of 5 every tree 5 of the garden, except 6 that 7 of the knowledge of good and evil; for 8 in 9 the day 9 that 10 thou eatest thereof 10 thou shalt die 11.

(C.) The serpent 1, which 2 was more subtle 3 than any 4 of the beasts 5 which the Lord 6 had made 7, said to the woman 8, *has God said, ye shall not eat of every tree in 9 the garden 9?*

(D.) *We may*, answered 1 the woman, eat of the fruit of the trees 2 of the garden; but 3 of the fruit 5 of the tree which 6 is in the midst 7 of the garden, God has said, ye 4 shall not eat of it 4, lest 8 ye die 8.

(E.) The serpent replied 1, if 2 you eat of 3 it 3, you shall not die; but God knows 4 that in the day ye eat of it, your eyes 5 shall be opened 6, and ye shall be as gods knowing 7 good 8 and evil 8.

(F.) The woman seeing 1 that the fruit of that 2 tree was good 3 for food 3 and 4 pleasant to the eyes 4, eat of it, and gave 6 some 5 to her 7 husband 8, who 9 eat of it also 10.

## The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 3 *librement*, adv. 4 *manger*, v. 1. 5 *du fruit de tous les arbres*. 6 *à l'exception de*, prep. 7 *celui*, pron. nom. m. 8 *car*, conj. 9 *le jour*. 10 *que tu en mangeras*. 11 *mourir*, v. 2.

(C.) 1 *Serp-ent*, plur. *eus*, n. m. 2 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 3 *fin*, adj. 4 *aucun*, pron. nom. m. 5 *anim-al*, plur. *aux*, n. m. 6 *seigneur*, n. m. 7 *faire*, v. 5. 8 *femme*, n. f. 9 *du jardin*.

(D.) 1 *Répondre*, v. 6. 2 *arbre*, n. m. 3 *mais*, conj. 4 *vous ne mangerez pas*. 5

*fruit*, n. m. 6 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 7 *milieu*, n. m. 8 *de peur que vous ne mouriez*.

(E.) 1 *Répliquer*, v. 1. 2 *si*, conj. 3 *en*, pron. conj. 4 *savoir*, v. 3. 5 *œil*, plur. *yeux*, n. m. 6 *ouvrir*, v. 2. 7 *connoître*, v. 5. 8 *le bien & le mal*.

(F.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *ce, cet, cette*, pl. *ces*, pron. adj. 3 *bon à manger*. 4 *& agréable à la vue*. 5 *en*, pron. conj. 6 *donner*, v. 1. 7 *son, sa*, plur. *sés*, pron. adj. 8 *mari*, n. m. 9 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 10 *aussi*, conj.



(G.) Their 1 eyes were immediately 2 opened; they perceived 3 that 4 they were naked 5; they blushed 6, and covered 7 their nakedness 8.

(H.) The Lord God, to 1 punish 1 their crime 2, cursed 3 the ground 4, condemned 5 the woman to 6 bring forth children in sorrow 6, and the man 7 to eat bread 8 in 9 the sweat 9 of his face 10, and turned 11 both of them out 11 of 12 the garden 12. Adam called 13 then his wife's name Eve 13, because 14 she 15 was to be 15 the mother 16 of all men 17.

### The DICTIONARY.

(G.) 1 *Leur*, pron. adj. 2  
*sur le champ*. 3 *apercevoir*,  
v. 3. 4 *que*, conj. 5 *nud*,  
adj. 6 *rougir*, v. 2. 7 *cou-*  
*vrir*, v. 2. 8 *nudité*, n. f.

(H.) 1 *Pour punir*. 2 *crime*,  
n. m. 3 *maudire*, v. 4. 4  
*terre*, n. f. 5 *condamner*, v.  
1. 6 *à enfanter avec dou-*

*leur*. 7 *homme*, n. m. 8  
*son pain*. 9 *à la sueur*. 10  
*visage*, n. m. 11 *les chassa*  
*tous deux*. 12 *du jardin*.  
13 *donna alors à sa femme*  
*le nom d'Eve*. 14 *parceque*,  
conj. 15 *elle devoit être*.  
16 *mère*, n. f. 17 *homme*,  
n. m.

### III. Cain 1 kills 2 his 3 Brother 4 Abel 5.

(A.) Adam had several 1 children 2, amongst 3 whom 4 were reckoned 5 Cain and Abel. The first 6 was a husbandman 7, and 8 the other 9 a shepherd 10.

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Cain*, n. m. 2 *tuer*, v. 1. 3  
*Son*, *sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj.  
4 *frère*, n. m. 5 *Abel*, n.  
m.

(A.) 1 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. 2  
*enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 3

*entre*, prep. 4 *lesquels*, pron.  
nom. plur. m. 5 *compter*,  
v. 1. 6 *premier*, adj. 7 *la*  
*boureur*, n. m. 8 *Et*, conj.  
9 *autre*, pron. nom. m. and  
f. 10 *berger*, n. m.

(B.) In

(B.) In 1 process of time 1 it 2 came to pass 2, that 3 Cain having brought 4 of the first fruits 7 of the earth 8, an offering 6 to the Lord 5, Abel presented 10 also 11 to 9 him 9 the fattest 12 of the firstlings 13 of his flock 14.

(C.) The Lord had 1 respect unto 1 Abel and his offering; but 2 to Cain and 4 to his offering he 3 had not respect 3.

(D.) Cain was very 1 wroth 2, talked 3 with 3 his brother Abel; and when 4 they were in 5 the field 5, rose 6 up against 6 him and slew 8 him 7.

(E.) The Lord 1 said 2 unto 3 Cain, *where 4 is Abel thy 5 brother?* And he said, *I know 6 not; am I my 8 brother's keeper 7?* The Lord said, *what hast thou done 9? thy brother's blood 10 calls 11 for 11 revenge 12.* *Thou art cursed 13; when 14 thou tillest 15 the ground 16, it 17 shall not henceforth 19 yield 18 unto 20 thee her strength 20; thou shalt be a fugitive 21 and a vagabond 22 in 23 the earth.*

(F.) Cain said unto the Lord, *my punishment 1 is 2 greater than I can bear 2.* *As 3 I 4 am to be 4 a fugitive and a va-*

## The DICTIONARY.

(B) 1 *Dans la suite du tems.*

2 *il arriva.* 3 *que, conj.* 4 *apporter, v. 1.* 5 *Seigneur, n. m.* 6 *offrande, n. f.* 7 *fruit, n. m.* 8 *terre, n. f.* 9 *lui, pron. conj.* 10 *présenter, v. 1.* 11 *aussi, conj.* 12 *gras, adj.* 13 *premier né, adj. and part.* 14 *troupeau, pl. eaux, n. m.*

(C.) 1 *Avoir égard à, v. 3.* n. m. and prep. 2 *mais, conj.* 3 *il n'eut point d'égard.* 4 *Et, conj.*

(D.) 1 *Fort, adv.* 2 *fâché, adj.* 3 *parler à, v. 1.* 4 *quand, adv.* 5 *dans un champ.* 6 *se jeter sur, v. 1. and prep.* 7 *le, pron. conj. m.* 8 *tuer, v. 1.*

(E.) 1 *Seigneur, n. m.* 2 *dire, v. 4.* 3 *à, prep.* 4 *où, adv.* 5 *ton, ta, pl. tes, pron. adj.* 6 *savoir, v. 3.* 7 *gardien, n. m.* 8 *mon, ma, pl. mes, pron. adj.* 9 *faire, v. 5.* 10 *sang, n. m.* 11 *demander, v. 1.* 12 *vengeance, n. f.* 13 *maudire, v. 4.* 14 *quand, adv.* 15 *cultiver, v. 1.* 16 *terre, n. f.* 17 *elle, pron. nom. f.* 18 *produire, v. 4.* 19 *à l'avenir, adv.* 20 *pour toi, autant qu'elle pourra.* 21 *fugitif, n. m.* 22 *vagabond, n. m.* 23 *sur, prep.*

(F.) 1 *Châtiment, n. m.* 2 *surpasse mes forces.* 3 *comme, gabond,*

*gabond, it 5 shall come to pass 5 that 6 every one that findeth me 6 shall slay me 7.*

(G.) The Lord said unto him, *whosoever 1 slayeth 1 Cain, vengeance 2 shall be taken on him seven-fold 2.* He set 3 afterwards 4 a mark 5 upon 6 him 7, lest 8 any 9 finding him should kill him 9.

### The DICTIONARY.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| conj. 4 <i>je dois être.</i> 5 <i>il ar-</i> | <i>mettre, v. 4.</i> 4 <i>ensuite, adv.</i> |
| <i>rivera.</i> 6 <i>que celui qui me</i>     | 5 <i>marque, n. f.</i> 6 <i>sur, prep.</i>  |
| <i>trouvera.</i> 7 <i>me, pron. conj.</i>    | 7 <i>lui, pron. nom.</i> 8 <i>de</i>        |
| (G.) 1 <i>Quiconque tuera.</i> 2             | <i>peur que, conj.</i> 9 <i>celui qui</i>   |
| <i>sera puni au septuple.</i> 3              | <i>le trouveroit ne le tuât.</i>            |

### IV. *The Flood* 1.

(A.) God 1 seeing 2 that 3 the wickedness 4 of men 5 was great 6 in 7 the earth 8, repented 9 that 10 he had made them 10, *I will, said 11 he, destroy 12 man whom 13 I have created 14, with 15 all 16 the reptiles 17, birds 18, and 19 animals 20, for 21 it 22 repenteth me 22 that 23 I have made them 23.*

(B.) But 1 Noah 2 found 3 grace 4 in 5 the eyes 5 of the Lord 6, who 7 told 9 him 8, *the earth is filled 10 with 11*

### The DICTIONARY.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 <i>Déluge, n. m.</i>                        | 16 <i>t-out, pl. m. ous, adj.</i>                  |
| (A.) 1 <i>Dieu, n. m.</i> 2 <i>voir,</i>      | 17 <i>reptile, n. m.</i> 18 <i>ois-eau,</i>        |
| <i>v. 3.</i> 3 <i>que, conj.</i> 4 <i>mé-</i> | <i>pl. eaux, n. m.</i> 19 <i>et, conj.</i>         |
| <i>chanceté, n. f.</i> 5 <i>homme, n. m.</i>  | 20 <i>anim-al, pl. aux, n. m.</i>                  |
| 6 <i>grand, adj.</i> 7 <i>sur, prep.</i>      | 21 <i>car, conj.</i> 22 <i>je me re-</i>           |
| 8 <i>terre, n. f.</i> 9 <i>se repentir,</i>   | <i>pens. 23 de les avoir créés.</i>                |
| <i>v. 2.</i> 19 <i>de les avoir faits.</i>    | (B.) 1 <i>Mais, conj.</i> 2 <i>Noé, n.</i>         |
| 11 <i>dire, v. 4.</i> 12 <i>détruire,</i>     | <i>m. 2 trouver, v. 1.</i> 4 <i>grace,</i>         |
| <i>v. 4.</i> 13 <i>que, pron.</i> 14          | <i>n. f.</i> 5 <i>aux yeux.</i> 6 <i>Seigneur,</i> |
| <i>créer, v. 1.</i> 15 <i>avec, prep.</i>     | <i>n. m.</i> 7 <i>qui, pron.</i> 8 <i>lui,</i>     |
|   | <i>iniquity</i>                                    |



*iniquity 12; I will destroy the living 14 creatures 13; make an ark 15 of 16 Gopher wood 16, into 17 which 17 thou shalt come 18, thou 19, thy 20 sons 21, thy wife 22, thy sons wives, and of the living creatures two 23 of every sort 23, male 24 and female 25; take 26 thou of 27 all food that is eaten 27, and 28 it shall be for food for thee and for them 28.*

(C.) Noah did 1 all 2 that 2 God had commanded 3 him 4. He 5 was six hundred years old 5, when 6 he entered 7 into 8 the ark with his 9 family 10 and 11 the animals; and the Lord shut 12 them all in 12.

(D.) The flood was forty 1 days 2 upon 3 the earth, the waters 4 increased 5, the highest 6 mountains 7 were covered 8, all the living creatures which 9 were upon the face 10 of the ground 11 were destroyed 12; but the ark swam 13 upon the water, and those 14 that 15 were in 16 it 16 remained 17 alive 18.

THE DICTIONARY.

pron. conj. 9 *dire*, v. 4.  
10 *remplir*, v. 2. 11 *de*,  
prep. 12 *iniquité*, n. f.  
13 *créature*, n. f. 14 *vi-*  
*vant*, adj. 15 *arche*, n. f.  
16 *de bois de Gopher*. 17  
*dans laquelle*. 18 *entrer*, v.  
1. 19 *toi*, pron. nom. 20  
*ton*, *ta*, pl. *tes*, pron. adj.  
21 *fil*s, n. m. 22 *femme*,  
n. f. 23 *deux de chaque*  
*sorte*. 24 *mâle*, n. m. 25  
*fémelle*, n. f. 26 *prendre*,  
v. 6. 27 *de tout ce qui se*  
*mange*. 28 *Ça te servi-*  
*ra de nourriture à toi aussi*  
*bien qu'à eux*.

(C.) 1 *Faire*, v. 5. 2 *tout ce*  
*que*. 3 *lui*, pron. conj. 4  
*commander*, v. 1. 5 *il a-*

*voit six cens ans*. 6 *quand*,  
adv. 7 *entrer*, v. 1. 8  
*dans*, prep. 9 *sa*, pron.  
adj. f. 13 *famille*, n. f.  
11 *Ç*, conj. 12 *les y en-*  
*ferma tous*.

(D.) 1 *Quarante*, adj. und.  
2 *jour*, n. m. 3 *sur*, prep.  
4 *eau*, plur. *eaux*, n. f. 5  
*s'augmenter*, v. 1. 6 *haut*,  
adj. 7 *montagne*, n. f. 8  
*couvrir*, v. 2. 9 *qui*, pron.  
10 *face*, n. f. 11 *terre*, n.  
f. 12 *détruire*, v. 4. 13 *na-*  
*ger*, v. 1. 14 *ceux*, pron.  
nom. m. 15 *qui*, pron. 16  
*y*, pron. conj. 17 *rester*,  
v. 1. 18 *en vie*.

(E.) At

(E.) At 1 the end 1 of an hundred 2 and fifty 3 days God remembered 4 Noah and all those that were in 5, the ark with him 6; and 7 making a strong wind to pass over the earth 7, the waters assuaged 8 by 9 degrees 9.

(F.) When the ground was dry 1, God commanded 2 Noah to 3 go forth out of 3 the ark. He had remained 5 shut 6 up 6 therein 4 a 7 whole year 7. He obeyed 8 and immediately 10 built 9 an altar 11 to the Lord, upon 12 which 13 he offered 14 burnt-offerings 15.

### The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *Au bout*, 2 *c-ent*, pl. *ens*, adj. 3 *cinquante*, adj. und. 4 *se ressouvenir de*, v. 2. and prep. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *lui*, pron. nom. 7 *Et envoyant un vent fort sur la terre*. 8 *s'abaisser*, v. 1. 9 *peu à-peu*, adv.

(F.) 1 *S-ec*, *èche*, adj. 2 *com-*

*mander à*, v. 1. 3 *de sortir de*. 4 *y*, pron. conj. 5 *rester*, v. 1. 6 *enfermé*, p. p. 7 *un an entier*. 8 *obéir*, v. 2. 9 *bâtir*, v. 2. 10 *sur le champ*. 11 *autel*, n. m. 12 *sur*, prep. 13 *laquelle*, pron. nom. f. 14 *offrir*, v. 2. 15 *holocauste*, n. m.

### V. The Tower 1 of Babel 2.

(A.) After 1 the flood 2, the inhabitants 3 of the earth 4 spoke 5 but one language 5; and 6 it came to pass that 6 they 7 said one to another 7, *let us build 8 a city 9, and a tower whose 10 top 11 may 12 reach 12 unto 13.*

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Tour*, n. f. 2 *Babel*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Après*, prep. 2 *déluge*, n. m. 3 *habit-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 4 *terre*, n. f. 5 *ne parloient qu'une même langue*. 6 *Et il arriva*

*que*. 7 *ils se dirent les uns aux autres*. 8 *bâtir*, v. 2. 9 *ville*, n. f. 10 *dont*, pron. 11 *sommet*, n. m. 12 *s'élève*. 13 *jusqu'au*. 14 *ciel*, plur. *ieux*, n. m. 15 *faire*, v. 5. *heaven*

heaven 14, and let us make 15 us 16 a name 17 before 18 we are scattered abroad 18 upon 19 the face 20 of 21 the whole earth 21.

(B.) The Lord 1 came 2 down 2 to 3 see 4 the city and the tower, which 5 the children 6 of men 7 builded, and he said, behold 8, the people is one 8, and 9 they have all one 9 language 10; and 11 this they begin 11 to 12 do 13. And 14 now 14 nothing 15 will be restrained from them 15, which 16 they 17 have imagined to do 17. Let us then confound 18 their 19 language 19, that 20 they may not understand 21 one 22 another's speech 22.

(C.) So 1 the Lord scattered 3 them 2 abroad 3 from 4 thence 4 upon the face of the earth, and they left 5 off 5 to 6 build the city.

(D.) Therefore 1 is 2 the name of it called 2 Babel, because 3 the Lord did there 4 confound the language of all 5 the earth; and from thence did the Lord scatter 6 them upon the face of the whole earth.

# The D I C T I O N A R Y.

16 nous, pron. conj. 17  
nom, n. m. 18 avant que  
de nous séparer. 19 sur,  
prep. 20 surface, n. f. 21  
de la terre.

(B.) 1 Seigneur, n. m. 2 des-  
cendre, v. 6. 3 pour, prep.  
4 voir, v. 3. 5 que, pron.  
m. and f. 6 enf-ant, plur.  
ans, n. m. 7 homme, n. m.  
8 ce peuple ne forme qu'une  
même. 10 langue, n. f. 11  
Et voici ce qu'il commence.  
12 à, prep. 13 faire, v. 5.  
14 à présent, adv. 15 rien  
ne l'empêchera de faire. 16

ce que, pron. nom. m. 17  
il aura envie de faire. 18  
confondre, v. 6. 19 son  
language. 20 afin que, conj.  
21 ces gens-là ne puissent  
s'entendre les uns les au-  
tres.

(C.) 1 Ainsi, conj. 2 les, pron.  
conj. pl. 3 disperser, v. 1.  
4 de là. 5 cesser, v. 1. 6 de,  
prep.

(D.) 1 C'est pourquoi. 2 la  
tour fut appelée. 3 parce-  
que, conj. 4 y, pron. conj.  
5 t-out, plur. m. ous, adj.  
6 disperser, v. 1.



VI. *Abraham* 1 *prepares* 2 *to* 3 *sacrifice* 4 *his* 5  
*Son* 6 *Isaac* 7.

(A.) God 1 tempted 2 Abraham, and 3 said 5 to 4 him 4, *Abraham*; Abraham answered 6, *here* 7 *I am* 7.

(B.) God said, *take* 1 *now* 2 *thy* 3 *only* 4 *son* *Isaac* 5, *whom* 6 *thou lovest* 7, *get* 8 *thee* 8 *into* 9 *the land* 10 *of* *Moriah* 11, *and offer* 14 *him* 12 *there* 13 *for* 15 *a burnt-offering* 15 *upon* 16 *one* 17 *of the mountains* 18 *which* 19 *I* 20 *will tell thee of* 20.

(C.) Abraham rose 1 up 1 early 2 in the morning 2, saddled 3 his ass 4, took 5 two 8 of his young 9 men 9 with 6 him 7, and Isaac his son, clave 10 the wood 11 for 12 the burnt-offering 13, and went 14 into 15 the place 16 of 17 which 17 God had told 19 him 18.

(D.) On 1 the third day 1, lifting 2 up 2 his 3 eyes 3, he saw 4 the place afar 5 off 5, and said to his servants 6,

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Abraham*, n. m. 2 *se pré-*  
*parer*, v. 1. 3 *à*, prep. 4  
*sacrifier*, v. 1. 5 *son*, *sa*,  
 pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 6 *fil*,  
 n. m. 7 *Isaac*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *éprou-*  
*ver*, v. 1. 3 *et*, conj. 4 *lui*,  
 pron. conj. 5 *dire*, v. 4. 6  
*répondre*, v. 6. 7 *me voici*.

(B.) 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 *main-*  
*tenant*, adv. 3 *ton*, *ta*, pl.  
*tes*, pron. adj. 4 *unique*,  
 adj. 5 *Isaac*, n. m. 6 *que*,  
 pron. m. and f. 7 *aimer*, v. 1.  
 8 *va-t-en*. 9 *dans*, prep. 10  
*pays*, n. m. 11 *Moria*, n. m.  
 12 *le*, pron. conj. 13 *y*, pron.  
 conj. 14 *offrir*, v. 2. 15  
*en holocauste*. 16 *sur*, prep.

17 *un*, adj. 18 *montagne*,  
 n. f. 19 *que*, pron. m. and  
 f. 20 *je te montrerai*.

(C.) 1 *Se lever*, v. 1. 2 *de*  
*bon matin*. 3 *seller*, v. 1. 4  
*âne*, n. m. 5 *prendre*, v. 6.  
 6 *avec*, prep. 7 *lui*, pron.  
 nom. 8 *deux*, adj. 9 *do-*  
*mestique*, n. m. 10 *fendre*,  
 v. 6. 11 *bois*, n. m. 12 *pour*,  
 prep. 13 *holocauste*, n. m.  
 14 *s'en aller*, v. 1. 15 *à*,  
 prep. 16 *endroit*, n. m. 17  
*que*, pron. m. and f. 18 *lui*,  
 pron. conj. 19 *dire*, v. 4.

(D.) 1 *Le troisième jour*. 2  
*lever*, v. 1. 3 *les yeux*.  
 4 *voir*, v. 3. 5 *de loin*.  
 6 *domestique*, n. m. 7 *de-*  
*Abide*

*Abide* 7 *here* 8 *with the ass*; *I* 9 *and the lad* 10 *will* 11 *go* 11 *yonder* 12 *and* 13 *worship* 14, *and* 15 *come again to you* 15.

(E.) Abraham took 1 the wood of the burnt-offering, and laid 2 it upon Isaac his son. He himself 4 carried 3 the fire 5 and the knife 6.

(F.) As 1 they were 2 going 2 together 3, Isaac said to Abraham, *my* 4 *father* 5. Abraham answered, *here am I, my son*. Isaac said, *behold* 6 *the fire and the wood*; but 7 *where* 8 *is the lamb* 9 *for a* 10 *burnt-offering* 10? Abraham said, *God will provide* 11 *himself* 11 *a lamb for a burnt-offering*; and 12 so they went 12 both 13 of them together 13.

(G.) When 1 they were 2 come 2 to 3 the place God had told him of, Abraham built 5 an altar 6 there 4, laid 7 the wood in 7 order 7, bound 8 Isaac his son, laid him on 9 the altar upon the wood, stretched 10 forth 10 his 11 hand 11, and took the knife to 12 slay 14 him 13.

(H.) And the angel 1 of the Lord 2 called 3 unto 3 him out 4 of 4 heaven 5, and said, *Abraham, Abraham*. Abraham answered, *here I am*.

THE DICTIONARY.

*meurer*, v. 1. 8 *ici*, adv. 9 *moi*, pron. nom. m. and f. 10 *enf-ant*, pl. *ans*, n. m. 11 *nous irons*. 12 *là*, adv. 13 *pour*, prep. 14 *adorer*. 15 *Et puis nous reviendrons vous trouver*.

(E.) 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 *mettre*, v. 4. 3 *porter*, v. 1. 4 *lui même*, pron. nom. m. 5 *feu*, n. m. 6 *couteau*, n. m.

(F.) 1 *Comme*, conj. 2 *marcher*, v. 1. 3 *ensemble*, adv. 4 *mon, ma*, pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 5 *père*, n. m. 6 *voici*, adv. 7 *mais*, conj. 8 *où*,

adv. 9 *agneau*, n. m. 10 *l'holocauste*. 11 *se pourvoir de*, v. 3. and prep. 12 *Et ils s'avançoient*. 13 *tous les deux*

(G.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *arriver*, v. 1. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *il*, pron. conj. 5 *bâtir*, v. 2. 6 *autel*, n. m. 7 *ranger*, v. 1. 8 *lier*, v. 1. 9 *sur*, prep. 10 *étendre*, v. 6. 11 *la main*. 12 *pour*, prep. 13 *le*, pron. conj. 14 *égorger*, v. 1.

(H.) 1 *Ange*, n. m. 2 *Seigneur*, n. m. 3 *appeller*, v. 1. 4 *du*, prep. and art. 5 *ciel*, pl. *ieux*, n. m.

(I.) The

(I.) The angel said, lay not thy 1 hand 1 upon the lad, neither 2 do thou any thing unto him 2; for 3 now I know 4 that 5 thou fearest 6 God, seeing 7 thou hast not withheld 9 thy son, thy only son from 8-me 8.

(K.) Abraham lifted 1 up 1 his eyes, and seeing behind 2 him 3 a ram 4 caught 5 in 7 a thicket 8 by 6 his horns 6, took him, and offered him for 9 a burnt-offering 9 instead 10 of 10 his son.

### The DICTIONARY.

- (I.) 1 *La main*, 2 *Et ne lui* prep. 3 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 4 *belier*, n. m. 5 *retenu*, p. p. 6 *par les cornes*. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *buisson*, n. m. 9 *en holocauste*. 10 *au lieu de*, prep.
- (K.) 1 *Lever*, v. 1. 2 *derrière*,

VII. *The Children 1 of Israel 2 are 3 oppressed 3 by 4 the Egyptians 5. Moses 6 is born 6.*

(A.) After 1 the 2 death of Jacob 2 and his 3 children, there 4 arose 4 in 5 Egypt 6 a new 7 king 8, who 9, for- getting 10 the services 11 Joseph had 12 done 12 that 13 country 13, resolved 14 to 15 oppress 16 the children of Israel, who 17 had multiplied 19 very 18 much 18.

### The DICTIONARY.

- 1 *Enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 2 *Israel*, n. m. 3 *opprimer*, v. 1. 4 *par*, prep. 5 *Egyptien*, n. m. 6 *naissance de Moïse*. 7 *eau*, pl. *eaux*, adj. 8 *roi*, n. m. 9 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 10 *oublier*, v. 1. 11 *service*, n. m. 12 *que Joseph avoit rendus à*. 13 *ce pays là*. 14 *resoudre*, v. 5. 15 *de*, prep. 16 *opprimer*, v. 1. 17 *qui*, pron. 18 *beaucoup*, adv. 19 *se multiplier*, v. 1.
- (A.) 1 *Après*, prep. 2 *la mort de Jacob*. 3 *son*, *sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 4 *ils s'éleva*. 5 *en*, prep. 6 *Egypte*, n. f. 7 *nou-*

(B.) *Behold*



(B.) Behold 1, said 2 he to his people 3, the children of Israel are more 4 and 5 mightier 6 than 7 we 8. Come 9 on 9, let us deal 10 wisely 11 with them 11, lest 12 they multiply, and 13 it come to pass, that when there falleth out any war 13, they 14 join 14 unto 14 our 15 enemies 16, and 17 so get out of the land 17.

(C.) The Egyptians did set 1 task-masters 2 over 3 the Israelites 4, who 5 were forced 6 to 7 build 8 cities 9; but 10 the 11 more 11 they were 12 afflicted 12, the more they multiplied and grew 13.

(D.) The Hebrew 2 midwives 1 having refused 3 to 4 kill 5 the males 6 of the Israelites at 7 their birth 7, the king 8 commanded 9 all 10 his people 11 to 12 destroy 14 them 13, and to throw 15 them into 16 the Nile 17.

(E.) Then 2 it 1 came to pass 1, that 3 a woman 4 of the tribe 5 of Levi conceived 6 and bare 7 a son 8; and

The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *dire*, v. 4. 3 *peuple*, n. m. 4 *en plus grand nombre*. 5 *Et*, conj. 6 *puiss-ant*, plur. m. *ans*, adj. 7 *que*, conj. 8 *nous*, pron. nom. m. and f. 9 *al-lons*. 10 *se conduire*, v. 4. 11 *sagement à leur égard*. 12 *de peur que*, conj. 13 *Et que s'il arrive une guerre*. 14 *ils ne se joignent à*. 15 *notre*, pl. *nos*, adj. 16 *en-nemi*, n. m. 17 *Et qu'ils ne s'en aillent hors du pays*.

(C.) 1 *Etablir*, v. 2. 2 *sur-veil-lant*, pl. *ans*, n. m. 3 *sur*, prep. 4 *Israélite*, n. m. 5 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 6 *forcer*, v. 1. 7 *de*, prep. 8 *bâtir*, v. 2. 9 *ville*, n. f.

10 *mois*, conj. 11 *plus*, adv. 12 *affliger*, v. 1. 13 *deve-nir puissant*, v. 2. and adj. whose plural is *puissans*.

(D.) 1 *Sage-femme*, pl. *sages femmes*, n. f. 2 *des Hébreux*. 3 *refuser*, v. 1. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *tuer*, v. 1. 6 *mâle*, n. m. 7 *au tems de leur naissance*. 8 *roi*, n. m. 9 *ordonner à*, v. 1. 10 *t-ent*, pl. m. *ous*, adj. 11 *peuple*, n. m. 12 *de*, prep. 13 *les*, pron. conj. pl. 14 *détruire*, v. 4. 15 *jetter*, v. 1. 16 *dans*, prep. 17 *Nile*, n. m.

(E.) 1 *Il arriva*. 2 *donc*, conj. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *femme*, n. f. 5 *tribu*, n. f. 6 *concevoir*, v. 3. 7 *enfanter*, v. 1. 8 *filz*, when

when 9 she saw 10 that he was a 11 goodly child 11, she hid 13 him 12 three 14 months 14.

(F.) When she could 1 no 2 longer 2 hide him, she took 3 an ark 4 of bull-rushes 5, daubed 7 it 6 with 8 slime 9 and with pitch 10, laid 12 the child 13 therein 11, and laid 15 it 14 in 16 the flags 17 by 18 the 19 river's brink 19, his sister 20 standing 21 afar 22 off 22, to 23 wit 24 what 25 would be done to him 25.

(G.) And the king's daughter 1 came 2 down 2 to 3 wash 4 herself 4 at 5 the river, and her 6 maidens 7 walked 8 along 8 by 9 the river side 10; and when she saw the ark amongst 11 the flags, she sent 12 one 13 of her maids 14 to 15 fetch 16 it 16.

(H.) When she had opened 2 it 1, she saw the child; and behold 3 the babe 4 wept 5, and she had compassion 7 on 6 him 6, and said, *this 8 is one 8 of 9 the Hebrew's children 9.*

### The DICTIONARY.

n. m. 9 *quand*, adv. 10 *voir*, v. 3. 11 *beau*, adj.

m. 12 *le*, pron. conj. 13 *cacher*, v. 1. 14 *pendant trois mois*.

(F.) 1 *Pouvoir*, v. 3. 2 *plus*, adv. 3 *prendre*, v. 6. 4 *panier*, n. m. 5 *jonc*, n. m. 6 *le* pron. conj. 7 *enduire*, v. 4. 8 *de*, prep. 9 *bitume*, n. m. 10 *poix*, n. f. 11 *y*, pron. conj. 12 *mettre*, v. 4. 13 *enfant*, n. m. 14 *le*, pron. conj. 15 *placer*, v. 1. 16 *dans*, prep. 17 *ros-eau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 18 *sur*, prep. 19 *le bord du fleuve*. 20 *sœur*, n. f. 21 *se tenir*, v. 2. 22 *de loin*. 23 *pour*, prep. 24

*savoir*, v. 3. 25 *ce qui lui arriveroit*.

(G.) 1 *Fille*, n. f. 2 *descendre*, v. 6. 3 *pour*, prep. 4 *se laver*, v. 1. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *ses*, pron. adj. pl. 7 *filles*, n. f. 8 *se promener*, v. 1. 9 *sur*, prep. 10 *bord*, n. f. 11 *parmi*, prep. 12 *envoyer*, v. 1. 13 *un*, adj. 14 *suivante*, n. f. 15 *pour*, prep. 16 *l'aller chercher*, v. 1.

(H.) 1 *Le*, pron. conj. m. 2 *ouvrir*, v. 2. 3 *voici que*. 4 *enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 5 *pleurer*, v. 1. 6 *en*, pron. conj. 7 *pitié*. 8 *c'est un*. 9 *des enfans des Hébreux*.

(I.) *Hls*

(I.) His sister said to 1 her 1, shall I go 2 and 3 call to you 3 a nurse 4 of 5 the Hebrew women 5, that 6 she may nurse 7 the child for you?

(K.) The princess 1 said to her 2, take 3 this 4 child away 3, and nurse it 5 for me, and I will give 7 thee 6 thy 8 wages 8.

(L.) The woman took 1 the child and nursed it. The child grew 2. She brought 3 him to the king's daughter, who 4 adopted 5 him for 6 her 7 son, and called 8 him Moses 9, because 10 she had saved 11 him from. 12 being drowned 12.

THE DICTIONARY.

(I.) 1 *Lui*, pron. conj. 2 *aller*, v. 1. 3 *vous chercher*. 4 *nourrice*, n. f. 5 *d'entre les femmes des Hébreux*. 6 *afin que*, conj. 7 *allaiter*, v. 1.

(K.) 1 *Princesse*, n. f. 2 *lui*, pron. conj. 3 *emporter*, v. 1. 4 *cet*, pron. adj. m. 5 *le*, pron. conj. 6 *te*, pron. conj. 7

*donner*, v. 1. 8 *ton salaire*. (L.) 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 *grandir*, v. 2. 3 *apporter*, v. 1. 4 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 5 *adopter*, v. 1. 6 *pour*, prep. 7 *son*, pron. adj. m. 8 *nommer*, v. 1. 9 *Moïse*, n. m. 10 *parceque*, conj. 11 *empêcher*, v. 1. 12 *d'être noyé*.

VIII. *The Israelites 1 are driven 2 out 3 of 3 Egypt 4.*

(A.) God 1 having afflicted 2 Egypt with 3 several 4 plagues 5, and 6 king 7 Pharaoh 8 having nevertheless 9

THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Israélite*, n. m. 2 *chasser*, v. 1. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *Egypte*, n. f.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *affliger*, v.

3 *de*, prep. 4 *plusieurs*, adj. pl. 5 *plais*, n. f. 6 *et*, conj. 7 *roi*, n. m. 8 *Pharaon*, n. m. 9 *cependant*, conj. 10 *refusé*



refused 10 to 11 send 12 the children 13 of Israel out 14 of  
14 his 15 land 16, he at 18 last 18 resolved 17 to 19 destroy  
20 all 21 the first-born 21 of the Egyptians 22.

(B.) This 1 design 2 was 3 no sooner put into execution  
3 during 4 the night 5, but 6 Pharaoh rose 7 up 7, and 8  
all 9 his 10 servants 11, and all the Egyptians. There 12  
was 12 then 13 a great 14 cry 15 in 16 Egypt; for 17  
there was not a house 18 where 19 there was not one 20  
dead 21.

(C.) The king called 1 for 1 Moses 2 and 3 Aaron his 4  
brother 5 by 6 night 7, and said 9 to 8 them 8, get 10 up  
10, get 11 you forth 11 from 12 amongst 12 my 13 people 14,  
both 15 you and 16 the children of Israel, go 17 and serve 17  
the Lord 18, as 19 you have said. Take 20 your 21 flocks  
and your herds 21; be 22 gone 22, and bless 23 me 24.

### THE DICTIONARY.

*ser*, v. 1. 11 *de*, prep. 12  
*envoyer*, v. 1. 13 *enf-ant*,  
pl. *ans*, n. m. 14 *hors de*:  
15 *son*, *sa*, plur. *sés*, pron.  
adj. 16 *pays*, n. m. 17 *re-*  
*foudre*, v. 5. 18 *enfin*, adv.  
19 *de*, prep. 20 *détruire*,  
v. 4. 21 *tous les premiers*  
*nés*. 22 *Egyptien*, n. m.

(B.) 1 *ce*, *cet*, f. *cette*, pl. *ces*,  
pron. adj. 2 *Desssein*, n. m.  
3 *ne fut pas plutôt mis en ex-*  
*écution*. 4 *durant*, prep. 5  
*nuit*, n. f. 6 *que*, conj. 7  
*se lever*, v. 1. 8 *avec*, prep.  
9 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj.  
10 *sés*, pron. adj. plur. 11  
*domestique*, n. m. 12 *il y eut*.  
13 *alors*, adv. 14 *grand*,  
adj. 15 *cri*, n. m. 16 *en*,

prep. 17 *car*, conj. 18  
*maison*, n. f. 19 *où*, adv.  
20 *un*, adj. 21 *mort*, n. m.

(C.) 1 *Faire venir*, v. 5. 2  
*Moïse*, n. m. 3 *Et*, conj.  
4 *son*, pron. adj. m. 5  
*frère*, n. m. 6 *pendant*,  
prep. 7 *nuit*, n. f. 8 *leur*,  
pron. conj. 9 *dire*, v. 4.  
10 *se lever*, v. 1. 11 *sortir*,  
v. 2. 12 *du milieu de*. 13  
*mon*, *ma*, pl. *mes*, pron. adj.  
14 *peuple*, n. m. 15 *tant*.  
16 *que*, conj. 17 *allez ser-*  
*vir*. 18 *Seigneur*, n. m. 19  
*comme*, conj. 20 *prendre*,  
v. 6. 21 *vos troupeaux de*  
*gros Et de menu bétail*. 22  
*allez vous en*. 23 *bénir*, v.  
2. 24 *moi*, pron. conj.

(D.) The

(D.) The Egyptians were urgent 1 upon the people 2 that 3 they might send 5 them 4 out 5 of the land 6 in 7 haste 7; for 8 they said, *we 9 be all dead men 9.*

(E.) Before 1 the children of Israel set out 1, the Lord gave 3 them 2 favour 4 in 5 the fight of 5 the Egyptians, who 6 lent 7 them jewels 8 and 9 raiment 9.

(F.) The number 1 of 2 the men who 2 left 3 Egypt amounted 4 to 5 six 6 hundred thousand 6, besides 7 the children 8. A 9 mixt multitude 9 went 10 up 10 also 11 with 12 them 13, and 14 flocks and herds, even very much cattle 14.

(G.) The Lord went 1 before 2 them by 3 day 3 in 4 a pillar 5 of a cloud 6, to 7 lead 8 them 8 the way 9, and 10 by night 10 in a pillar of fire 11, to 12 give them light 12.

## THE DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 *Presser*, v. 1. 2 *peuple*, n. m. 3 *afin de*, conj. 4 *le*, pron. conj. 5 *faire sortir*, v. 5. and 2. 6 *pays*, n. m. 7 *à la hâte*. 8 *car*, conj. 9 *nous sommes tous morts*.

(E.) 1 *Avant le départ des enfans d'Israel*. 2 *leur*, pron. conj. 3 *faire trouver*, v. 5. 1. 4 *grace*, n. f. 5 *devant*, prep. 6 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 7 *prêter*, v. 1. 8 *joy-au*, plur. aux, n. m. 9 *des habits*.

(F.) 1 *Nombre*, n. m. 2 *de ceux qui*. 3 *quitter*, v. 1. 4 *se monter*, v. 1. 5 *à*,

prep. 6 *six cens mille*. 7 *outré*, prep. 8 *enf-ant*, pl. ans, n. m. 9 *un grande multitude de gens de toute espèce*. 10 *partir*, v. 2. 11 *aussi*, conj. 12 *avec*, prep. 13 *eux*, pron. nom. plur. 14 *Et ils emmenèrent du gros Et du menu bétail en abondance*.

(G.) 1 *Marcher*, v. 1. 2 *devant*, prep. 3 *pendant le jour*. 4 *dans*, prep. 5 *colonne*, n. f. 6 *nuée*, n. f. 7 *pour*, prep. 8 *leur montrer*. 9 *chemin*, n. m. 10 *Et pendant la nuit*. 11 *feu*, n. m. 12 *pour les éclairer*.

IX. *The Passage 1 of the Red 3 Sea 2.*

(A.) When 1 it 2 was told the 2 king 3 of Egypt 4, that 5 the Israelites 6 were 7 gone 7, his 8 heart 9 and that 10 of his servants 11 were 12 turned 12 against 13 them 13, and 14 they said 15, *why 16 have we done this 16, that 17 we let Israel go 17 from 18 serving us 18?*

(B.) Then 1 Pharaoh 2 got 3 in 4 his chariot 5, took 6 his people 7 with 8 him 9, pursued 10 the children 11 of Israel, and 12 found 14 them 13 encamped 15 near 16 the 16 sea 18 shore 17.

(C.) When the Egyptians 1 drew 2 nigh 2, the Israelites 3 lifted 3 up 3 their 4 eyes 4, and perceiving 5 that 6 the Egyptians were 7 marching 7 after 8 them 9, they 10 were fore afraid 10, and cried 11 up 11 unto the Lord 12.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Passage*, n. m. 2 *mer*, n. f.  
3 *rouge*, adj.

(A.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *on eut rapporté au.* 3 *roi*, n. m. 4 *Egypte*, n. f. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *Israélite*, n. m. 7 *étoient partis.* 8 *son, sa*, plur. *ses*, pron. adj. 9 *cœur*, n. m. 10 *celui*, pron. nom. m. 11 *domestique*, n. m. 12 *changer*, v. 1. 13 *à leur égard.* 14 *Et*, conj. 15 *dire*, v. 4. 16 *qu'est ce que nous avons fait.* 17 *de laisser aller Israël.* 18 *de sorte qu'il ne nous servira plus.*

(B.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *Pharaon*, n. m. 3 *monter*, v. 1. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *chariot*, n.

m. 6 *prendre*, v. 6. 7 *peuple*, n. m. 8 *avec*, prep. 9 *lui*, pron. nom. 10 *poursuivre*, v. 4. 11 *enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 12 *Et*, conj. 13 *le, la*, plur. *les*, pron. conj. 14 *trouver*, v. 1. 15 *campé*, p. p. 16 *près du.* 17 *rivage*, n. m. 18 *mer*, n. f.

(C.) 1 *Egyptien*, n. m. 2 *s'approcher*, v. 1. 3 *lever*, v. 1. 4 *les yeux.* 5 *s'apercevoir*, v. 3. 6 *que*, conj. 7 *marcher*, v. 1. 8 *après*, prep. 9 *eux*, pron. nom. m. and plur. 10 *ils eurent grand-peur.* 11 *crier*, v. 1. 12 *Seigneur*, n. m.

(D.) *They*,



(D.) They said also 1 to Moses 2, because 3 there were no graves in Egypt 3, hast thou taken 5 us 4 away 5 to 6 die 7 in 8 the wilderness 9? Wherefore 9 hast thou dealt thus with us, to carry us forth out of Egypt 9? Is 11 not this 11 the 12 word that 12 we did tell 14 thee 13 in 15 Egypt, saying, Let 16 us 17 alone 18 that 19 we may serve 20 the Egyptians? For 21 it 22 had been better 22 for 23 us 24 to 25 serve the Egyptians, than 26 we should die 26 in the wilderness.

(E.) Moses said unto the people, fear 1 ye not, stand 2 still 2, and see 3 the salvation 4 of the Lord 5, which 6 he will shew 8 you 7 to-day 9; for 10 the Egyptians 10 whom 11 you have seen 12 to-day, ye shall see 14 them 13 again 14 no 15 more 15. The Lord shall fight 16 for 17 you 18, and 19 you shall hold your peace 19.

(F.) The Lord said to Moses, speak 1 unto the children of Israel, that 2 they go 3 forward 3; but 4 lift 6 thou 5 up 6

THE DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 *Aussi*, conj. 2 *Moïse*, n. m. 3 *est-ce*, *parcequ'il n'y avoit point de tombeaux en Egypte*, que. 4 *nous*, pron. conj. 5 *emmener*, v. 1. 6 *pour*, prep. 7 *mourir*, v. 2. 8 *dans*, prep. 9 *désert*, n. m. 10 *pourquoi nous as-tu fait sortir ainsi d'Egypte?* 11 *n'est-ce pas*. 12 *ce que*, pron. nom. m. 13 *te*, pron. conj. 14 *dire*, v. 4. 15 *en*, prep. 16 *laisser*, v. 1. 17 *nous*, pron. conj. 18 *en repos*. 19 *afin que*, conj. 20 *servir*, v. 2. 21 *car*, conj. 22 *il auroit mieux valu*. 23 *pour*, prep. 24 *nous*, pron. nom. pl. 25 *de*, prep. 26 *que de mourir*.

(E.) 1 *Craindre*, v. 6. 2 *s'arrêter*, v. 1. 3 *voir*, v. 3. 4 *délivrance*, n. f. 5 *Seigneur*, n. m. 6 *que*, pron. m. and f. 7 *vous*, pron. conj. 8 *montrer*, v. 1. 9 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 10 *quant aux Egyptiens*. 11 *que*, pron. m. and f. 12 *voir*, v. 3. 13 *le*, la, pl. les, pron. conj. 14 *revoir*, v. 3. 15 *plus*, adv. 16 *combattre*, v. 4. 17 *pour*, prep. 18 *vous*, pron. nom. sing. and plur. 19 *Et vous demeurerez tranquilles*.

(F.) 1 *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *que*, conj. 3 *avancer*, v. 1. 4 *mais*, conj. 5 *toi*, pron. nom. m. and f. 6 *lever*, v. 1. 7 *ton*, ta, pl. tes, pron. adj. 8

thy 7 rod 8, and stretch 9 out 9 thy hand 10 over 11 the sea 12, and divide 13 it; and the children of Israel shall go 14 on 15 dry ground 15 through 16 the midst of 16 the sea. And I will harden 17 the hearts 18 of the Egyptians, and they shall follow 19 them; and 20 will get me honour 20 upon 21 Pharaoh, and upon all 22 his host 23, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen 24, and the Egyptians shall know 25 that 26 I am the Lord.

(G.) The angel 1 of God 2, who 3 went 4 before 5 the camp 6 of 7 Israel 7, removed 8, and went 9 behind 10 them 11; and the pillar 12 of the cloud 13 went 14 from 15 before their face 15, and stood 16 behind them; and 17 it came 17 between 18 the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel, and it was a cloud of darkness 19 to 20 them 20, but 21 it gave 22 light 23 by 24 night 24 to 25 these 25, so 26 that 26 the 27 one 27 came 28 not near 28 the others 29 all 30 the night 31.

### The DICTIONARY.

*verge*, n. f. 9 *étendre*, v. 6.  
 10 *main*, n. f. 11 *sur*, prep.  
 12 *mer*, n. f. 13 *séparer*, v.  
 1. 14 *marcher*, v. 1. 15 à  
*sec*. 16 *au milieu de*. 17 *en-*  
*durcir*, v. 2. 18 *cœur*, n. m.  
 19 *suiivre*, v. 4. 20 *Et je*  
*serai glorifié*. 21 *au sujet de*.  
 22 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj.  
 23 *armée*, n. f. 24 *cavalier*,  
 n. m. 25 *savoir*, v. 3. 26  
*que*, conj.  
 (G.) 1 *Ange*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*,  
 n. m. 3 *qui*, pron. m. and  
 f. 4 *marcher*, v. 1. 5 *de-*  
*vant*, prep. 6 *camp*, n. m.  
 7 *des Israélites*. 8 *se reti-*

*rer*, v. 1. 9 *aller*, v. 1.  
 10 *derrière*, prep. 11 *eux*,  
 pron. nom. pl. 12 *colonne*,  
 n. f. 13 *nuée*, n. f. 14 *s'en*  
*aller*, v. 1. 15 *de devant*  
*eux*. 16 *s'arrêter*, v. 1. 17  
*Et se mit*. 18 *entre*, prep.  
 19 *ténèbres*, n. f. pl. 20 à  
*ceux là*. 21 *mais*, conj.  
 22 *donner*, v. 1. 23 *lumière*,  
 n. f. 24 *pendant la nuit*.  
 25 à *ceux-ci*. 26 *de sorte*  
*que*, conj. 27 *les uns*. 28  
*approcher de*, v. 1. 29 *au-*  
*tre*, pron. nom. 30 *de toute*.  
 31 *nuit*, n. f.

(H.) *Moses*

(H.) Moses having stretched 1 out 1 his hands over the sea, the Lord caused 2 the sea to go back 2 by 4 a 5 strong 6 east 5 wind 5 all 3 that night 3, and 7 made it dry land 7.

(I.) And the children of Israel went 1 into 2 the midst of 2 the sea upon 3 dry ground 3; and the waters 4 were 5 a wall unto them 5 on 6 their right hand 6 and on 7 their left 7.

(K.) The Egyptians pursued 2 them 1, and went 3 in 3 after 4 them 5 to the midst of the sea. In 6 the morning 8 watch 7, the Lord looked 9 unto 9 their host through 10 the 10 pillar of fire 11, and of the cloud, and troubled 12 them; and having ordered 13 Moses to 14 stretch forth his hand over the sea, he did 15 it, and the waters returned 16, and covered 17 the chariots, the horsemen, and all the host of Pharaoh, so 18 that 18 there 19 remained not so much as one of them 19.

(L.) But 1 the children of Israel walked 2 upon 3 dry land 3 in the midst of the sea, and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand and on their left.

THE DICTIONARY.

(H.) 1 *étendre*, v. 6. 2 *fit reculer la mer*. 3 *durant toute la nuit*. 4 *par*, prep. 5 *un vent d'est*. 6 *qui étoit violent*. 7 *Et la mit à sec*.

(I.) 1 *Entrer*, v. 1. 2 *au milieu*. 3 *à sec*. 4 *eau*, plur. *eaux*, n. f. 5 *leur servoient de muraille*. 6 *à droite*. 7 *à gauche*.

(K.) 1 *Les*, pron. conj. plur. 2 *poursuivre*, v. 4. 3 *entrer*, v. 1. 4 *après*, prep. 5 *eux*, pron. nom. m. and

pl. 6 *vers*, prep. 7 *veille*, n. f. 8 *matin*, n. m. 9 *regarder*, v. 1. 10 *au travers de la*. 11 *feu*, n. m. 12 *mettre en déroute*, v. 4. prep. and n. f. 13 *commander à*, v. 1. 14 *de*, prep. 15 *faire*, v. 5. 16 *se réunir*, v. 2. 17 *couvrir*, v. 2. 18 *de sorte que*, conj. 19 *il n'en resta pas un seul*.

(L.) 1 *Mais*, conj. 2 *mar- cher*, v. 1. 3 *à sec*.



(M.) Thus 1 the Lord saved 2 Israel that 3 day 3 out 4 of the hand 4 of the Egyptians; and Israel, seeing 5 the Egyptians dead 6 upon 7 the sea shore 8, feared 9 the Lord, and believed 10 the Lord, and his 11 servant 12 Moses.

## The DICTIONARY.

(M.) 1 *Ainsi*, conj. 2 *délivrer*, v. 1. 3 *ce jour-là*. 4 *des mains*. 5 *voir*, v. 3. 6 *mort*, p. p. 7 *sur*, prep. 8 *rivage*, n. m. 9 *craindre*, v. 6. 10 *croire*, v. 5. 11 *son*, pron. adj. m. 12 *serviteur*, n. m.

X. The 1 Children of Israel 1, murmuring 2 in 3 the Wilderness 4 for 5 want of Bread 5, God 6 sends 8 them 7 Quails 9 and 10 Manna 11.

(A.) The Israelites 1 being in the wilderness, and finding 2 themselves 2 without 3 bread 4, murmured 5 against 6 Moses 7 and Aaron 8. The Lord 9, to 10 put 11 an 12 end 12 to their 13 complaints 14, said 15 to Moses, *speaking* 16 to the children of Israel saying, at 17 even 17 ye shall eat

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Les Israélites*. 2 *murmurer*, v. 1. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *désert*, n. m. 5 *parcequ'ils n'ont point de pain*. 6 *Dieu*, n. m. 7 *leur*, pron. conj. pl. 8 *envoyer*, v. 1. 9 *caille*, n. f. 10 *Et*, conj. 11 *manne*, n. f. (A.) 1 *Israélite*, n. m. 2 *se trouver*, v. 1. 3 *sans*, prep. 4 *pain*, n. m. 5 *murmurer*, v. 1. 6 *contre*, prep. 7 *Moïse*, n. m. 8 *Araön*, n. m. 9 *Seigneur*, n. m. 10 *pour*, prep. 11 *mettre*, v. 4. 12 *fin*. 13 *leur*, pron. adj. m. and f. 14 *plainte*, n. f. 15 *dire*, v. 4. 16 *parler*, v. 18 *fielle*

18 *flesh* 19, and 20 *in the morning* 20 *ye shall be* 21 *filled*  
21 *with* 22 *bread*, and *ye shall know* 23 *that* 24 *I am the*  
*Lord your God.*

(B.) And 1 *it came to pass* 1, that 2 *at* 3 *even* 3 *the* 4  
*quails came up and covered* 4 *the camp* 5, and in 6 *the*  
*morning* 6 *there* 7 *lay* 7 *round* 9 *about* 9 *the host* 10 *on* 8  
*the ground* 8 *a round* 12 *thing* 11 *as* 13 *small as* 13 *the*  
*hoar-frost* 14.

(C.) The children of Israel, knowing not what 1 *it* 2  
*was*, called 4 *it* 3 *manna* 5; and Moses said unto 6 *them*  
6, *This* 7 *is* 7 *bread which* 8 *the Lord has given* 9 *unto you*  
*to* 10 *eat* 11; *gather* 12 *of* 13 *it* 13 *an omer* 14 *for* 15 *every*  
*man* 15.

(D.) The children of Israel gathered it, some 1 *more* 2,  
*some* 3 *less* 4; and when 5 *they did mete* 6 *it*, he 7 *that* 8  
*gathered* 9 *much* 9 *had* 10 *nothing over* 10, and he *that*  
*gathered little* 11, *had* 12 *no lack* 12.

# The DICTIONARY.

1. 17 *ce soir*. 18 *manger*,  
v. 1. 19 *viande*, n. f. 20  
21 *demain au matin*. 21 *raf-*  
*fasser*, v. 1. 22 *de*, prep.  
23 *savoir*, v. 3. 24 *que*,  
conj.

(B.) 1 *Et il arriva*. 2 *que*,  
conj. 3 *vers le soir*. 4 *des*  
*cailles vinrent couvrir*. 5  
*camp*, n. m. 6 *le lendemain*  
*au matin*. 7 *il y eut*. 8 *sur*  
*la terre*. 9 *autour de*. 10  
*armée*, n. f. 11 *chose*, n. f.  
12 *rond*, adj. 13 *aussi pe-*  
*tite que*. 14 *gelée blanche*,  
n. f. and adj. f.

(C.) 1 *Ce que*, pron. nom. m.  
2 *ce*, pron. nom. m. 3 *le*,

*la*, pl. les, pron. conj. 4  
*appeller*, v. 1. 5 *manne*, n.  
f. 6 *leur*, pron. conj. 7  
*voilà*. 8 *que*, pron. m. and  
f. 9 *donner*, v. 1. 10 *à*,  
prep. 11 *manger*, v. 1. 12  
*ramasser*, v. 1. 13 *en*, pron.  
conj. 14 *omer*, n. m. 15  
*par tête*.

(D.) 1 *Les uns*. 2 *plus*, adv.  
3 *les autres*. 4 *moins*, adv.  
5 *quand*, adv. 6 *mesurer*,  
v. 1. 7 *celui*, pron. nom.  
m. 8 *qui*, pron. m. and f.  
9 *en ramassa beaucoup*. 10  
*n'en avoit pas plus qu'il ne*  
*lui en falloit*. 11 *peu*, adv.  
12 *n'en avoit pas moins*.

(E.) Moses 1 said, let 2 no man leave of it 2 till 3 the 3 morning 4. Some 5 of the Israelites 5 hearkened 7 not unto 6 him 6; they left 9 of 8 it 8, it 10 bred worms 10, and 11 stank 11; and Moses was 12 worth 12 with 13 them 14.

(F.) It 1 came to pass 1 that 2 on 3 the sixth day 3 they gathered twice 4 as much bread 4, viz. 5 two 6 omers for 7 one man 7. Moses said to them, keep 8 a part 10 of 9 it 9 for 11 to-morrow 12 which 13 is a 14 sabbath unto the Lord 14, wherein 15 you 16 are to do 16 no 17 manner 18 of work 19. They did 20 as 21 they were commanded 21, and it 22 did not stink 22, neither 23 was there any worm therein 23.

(G.) Moses said, eat that 1 to-day 2, for 3 to-day ye 4 shall find none 4 in 5 the fields 6. Six 8 days 8 ye shall gather it 7, but 9 on 10 the seventh day 10, which 11 is the sabbath, there 12 shall be none 12.

### THE DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *Moïse*, n. m. 2 *que* personne n'en garde. 3 *jusqu'au*. 4 *matin*, n. m. 5 *quelques Israélites*. 6 *lui*, pron. conj. 7 *obéir*, v. 2. 8 *en*, pron. conj. 9 *laisser*, v. 1. 10 *il s'y engendra des vers*. 11 *Et la manne pua*. 12 *être fâché*, v. pass. 13 *contre*, prep. 14 *eux*, pron. nom. m. pl.

(F.) 1 *Il arriva*. 2 *que*, conj. 3 *le sixième jour*. 4 *deux fois autant de pain qu'à l'ordinaire*. 5 *c'est-à-dire*. 6 *deux*, adj. 7 *par tête*. 8 *garder*, v. 1. 9 *en*, pron. conj. 10 *partie*, n. f. 11 *pour*, prep. 12 *demain*. 13 *qui*,

pron. m. and f. 14 *le sabbath du Seigneur*. 15 *dans lequel*. 16 *vous ne devez faire*. 17 *aucun*, pron. adj. 18 *sorte*, n. f. 19 *ouvrage*, n. m. 20 *faire*, v. 5. 21 *comme on leur avoit commandé*. 22 *la manne ne pua point*. 23 *Et on n'y trouva point de vers*.

(G.) 1 *La*, pron. conj. f. 2 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 3 *car*, conj. 4 *vous n'en trouverez point*. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *champ*, n. m. 7 *la*, pron. conj. f. 8 *pendant six jours*. 9 *mais*, conj. 10 *le septième jour*. 11 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 12 *il n'y en aura point*.

(H.) There



(H.) There came to pass that there 2 went out some of the people 2 on 1 the seventh day 1 to 3 gather it, and they 4 found none 4. The children of Israel did eat manna forty 5 years 5, until 6 they came 7 unto 8 the borders 9 of the land 10 of Canaan. This kind 11 of bread 12 was like 13 coriander 15 seed 14, white 16, and 17 the taste of it was like wafers 17 made 18 with 19 honey 20.

The DICTIONARY.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(H.) 1 <i>Au septième jour.</i> 2<br/>quelques uns d'entre le peuple<br/>sortirent. 3 <i>pour,</i> prep. 4<br/>ils n'en trouvèrent point. 5<br/>pendant quarante ans. 6<br/>jusqu'à ce que. 7 <i>arriver,</i><br/>v. 1. 8 <i>sur,</i> prep. 9 <i>fron-</i><br/><i>tière,</i> n. f. 10 <i>terre,</i> n. f.</p> | <p>11 <i>forte,</i> n. f. 12 <i>pain,</i><br/>n. m. 13 <i>comme,</i> conj. 14<br/><i>graine,</i> n. f. 15 <i>coriandre,</i><br/>n. m. 16 <i>et</i> blanche. 17<br/><i>et</i> elle avoit le goût de<br/>beignets. 18 <i>fait,</i> p. p. 19<br/><i>avec,</i> prep. 20 <i>miel,</i> n. m.</p> |
|--|--|

XI. *The Israelites* 1 *murmur* 2 *for* 3 *water* 3  
at 4 *Rephidim* 5.

(A.) The children 1 of Israel having pitched 2 in 3 Rephidim, there 4 was there no water for them 4 to 5 drink 6, and they chid 7 with 8 Moses 9, and 10 said 11, *give* 12 us 13 *water that* 14 *we may* 15 *drink.* Moses said unto 16

The DICTIONARY.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1 <i>Israélite,</i> n. m. 2 <i>murmurer,</i><br/>v. 1. 3 <i>faute d'eau.</i> 4 <i>à,</i><br/>prep. 5 <i>Réphidim,</i> n. m.<br/>(A.) 1 <i>Enf-ant,</i> pl. ans, n.<br/>m. 2 <i>camper,</i> v. 1. 3 <i>à,</i><br/>prep. 4 <i>il n'y avoit point</i><br/><i>d'eau pour eux.</i> 5 <i>à,</i> prep.</p> | <p>6 <i>boire,</i> v. 5. 7 <i>se fâcher,</i><br/>v. 1. 8 <i>contre,</i> prep. 9<br/><i>Moïse,</i> n. m. 10 <i>et</i>, conj.<br/>11 <i>dire,</i> v. 4. 12 <i>donner,</i> v.<br/>1. 13 <i>nous,</i> pron. conj. pl.<br/>14 <i>afin que,</i> conj. 15 <i>pour</i><br/><i>voir,</i> v. 3. 16 <i>leur,</i> pron.<br/>L 5 them</p> |
|--|--|

them 16, *Why* 17 *chide* you with me? *wherefore* 18 *do* you tempt 19 *the Lord* 18?

(B.) The people 1, being 2 *thirsty* 2, said, *wherefore* 3 *is this* that 3 *thou* 4 *hast brought* us up 4 out 5 of 5 *Egypt* 6, to 7 *kill* 8 us 11, and our 12 *children* and our 13 *cattle* 13 with 9 *thirst* 10?

(C.) And Moses cried 1 unto 2 *the Lord* 3, saying, *What* 4 *shall I* do 5 unto this people? they 6 be 6 almost 7 ready 8 to 9 *stone* 11 me 10.

(D.) The Lord said unto Moses, go 1 on 1 before 2 the people, and take 3 with 4 thee 5 of 6 the elders of *Israel* 6, and thy rod 10 *wherewith* 11 *thou smotest* 12 the river 13, take in 7 thy 8 hand 9 and go 14. Behold 15, I will stand 15 before 16 thee 17 there 15 upon 18 the rock 19 in 20 *Horeb*, and thou shalt smite 21 the rock, and there 22 shall come water out of it 22, that 23 the people may 24 drink.

### THE DICTIONARY.

conj. pl. 17 *pourquoi*, adv. 18 *pourquoi*, adv. 19 *ten-ter*, v. 1. 20 *Seigneur*, n. m.

(B.) 1 *Peuple*, n. m. 2 *ayant soif*. 3 *pourquoi*, adv. 4 *nous avez-vous fait sortir*. 5 *de*, prep. 6 *Egypte*, n. f. 7 *pour*, prep. 8 *nous faire mourir*. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *soif*, n. f. 11 *nous*, pron. nom. m. pl. 12 *nos*, pron. adj. pl. 13 *nos troupeaux*.

(C.) 1 *Crier*, v. 1. 2 *vers*, prep. 3 *Seigneur*, n. m. 4 *que*, pron. nom. m. 5 *faire*, v. 5. 6 *il est*. 7 *presque*, adv. 8 *prêt*, adj. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *me*, pron. conj. 11 *lapider*, v. 1.

(D.) 1 *Passer*, v. 1. 2 *dewant*, prep. 3 *prendre*, v. 6. 4 *avec*, prep. 5 *toi*, pron. nom. 6 *quelques-uns des anciens d'Israel*. 7 *en*, prep. 8 *ton*, *ta*, plur. *tes*, pron. adj. 9 *main*, n. f. 10 *baguette*, n. f. 11 *avec laquelle*. 12 *frapper*, v. 1. 13 *rivière*, n. f. 14 *s'en aller*, v. 1. 15 *je me tiendrai là*. 16 *devant*, prep. 17 *toi*, pron. nom. 18 *sur*, prep. 19 *rocher*, n. m. 20 *dans*, prep. 21 *frapper*, v. 1. 22 *il en sortira de l'eau*. 23 *afin que*, conj. 24 *pour voir*, v. 3.

(E.) *Mose*

(E.) Moses did so 1 in 2 the fight 2 of the elders 3 of Israel. Water immediately 5 came 4 out 4 of the rock, and the people had 6 enough of it 6, for 7 themselves 8, their 9 children and their cattle 10.

The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *Ainsi*, adv. 2 *à la vue*. 3 *ancien*, n. m. 4 *sortir*, v. 2. 5 *aussitôt*, adv. 6 *en eut assez*. 7 *pour*, prep. 8 *lui-même*, pron. nom. m. 9 *son, sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 10 *bétail*, n. m.

XII. *The Walls 1 of Jericho 2 fall 3 down 3.*

(A.) Jericho being straitly 1 shut 2 up 2 because 3 of the 3 children 4 of Israel, the Lord said 6 unto Joshua 7, *I have given 8 into 9 thy 10 hands 11 Jericho. Ye shall compass 15 that 16 city 17, all 12 ye 12 men 13 of war 14, once 18 a day 18 for 19 six 20 days 21. Seven 22 priests 23 shall bear 24 before 25 the ark 26 seven trumpets 27 of rams 29 horns 28. The seventh 30 day ye shall compass the city seven times 31, and 32 the priests shall blow 33 with 34 the trumpets.*

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Muraille*, n. f. 2 *Jérico*, n. m. 3 *tomber*, v. 1. (A) 1 *Soigneusement*, adv. 2 *fermer*, v. 1. 3 *à cause des*. 4 *enf-ant*, pl. *ans*, n. m. 5 *seigneur*, n. m. 6 *dire*, v. 4. 7 *Josué*, n. m. 8 *mettre*, v. 4. 9 *entre*, prep. 10 *ton, ta*, pl. *tes*, pron. adj. 11 *main*, n. f. 12 *vous tous*. 13 *homme*, n. m. 14 *guerre*, n. f. 15 *faire le tour de*, v. 5. n. m. and art. 16 *ce, cet*, *cette*, pl. *ces*, pron. adj. 17 *vile*, n. f. 18 *une fois par jour*. 19 *durant*, prep. 20 *six*, adj. plur. 21 *jour*, n. m. 22 *sept*, adj. pl. und. 23 *prêtre*, n. m. 24 *porter*, v. 1. 25 *devant*, prep. 26 *arche*, n. f. 27 *trompette*, n. f. 28 *corne*, n. f. 29 *bélier*, n. m. 30 *septième*, adj. 31 *fois*, n. f. 32 *&*, conj. 33 *sonner*, v. 1. 34 *de*, prep.

L 6 (B.) *When*



(B.) *When 1 ye hear 2 the sound 3 of the trumpet, all 4 the people 5 shall 6 shout with a great shout 6; the walls of the city shall fall down, and the people shall ascend 7 up 7 every 8 man 8 straight 9 before him 10.*

(C.) *Joshua repeated 1 the words 2 of the Lord to the children of Israel. They did 3 what 4 they 5 were commanded to do 5. As 6 soon as 6 they shouted with a great shout, the walls of Jericho fell down. The Israelites 7 went 8 up 8 into 9 the city, every man straight before him, and took 11 it 10.*

(D.) *There was in 1 Jericho a 2 harlot 2 who 3 had concealed 4 the spies 5 whom 6 Joshua had sent 7 to 8 view 9 the country 10. These 11 two 11 young 12 men 13 had promised 14 to 15 save 17 her 16 with 18 her 19 family 20. She and her relations 21 were 22 no sooner sent 22 to the camp 23, but 24 the children of Israel, according 25 to 25 the order 26 they had received 27 from 28*

### The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *entendre*, v. 6. 3 *son*, n. m. 4 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj. 5 *peuple*, n. m. 6 *jettera un grand cri de réjouissance*. 7 *monter*, v. 1. 8 *chacun*, pron. nom. m. 9 *tout droit*. 10 *soi*, pron. nom. m. and f. sing. and plur.

(C.) 1 *Répéter*, v. 1. 2 *parole*, n. f. 3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *ce que*, pron. nom. m. 5 *on leur commanda de faire*. 6 *dès que*, conj. 7 *Israélite*, n. m. 8 *monter*, v. 1. 9 *dans*, prep. 10 *la*, pron. conj. f. 11 *prendre*, v. 6.

(D.) 1 *à*, prep. 2 *une femme de mauvaise vie*. 3 *qui*,

pron. m. and f. 4 *cacher*, v. 1. 5 *espion*, n. m. 6 *que*, pron. m. and f. 7 *envoyer*, v. 1. 8 *pour*, prep. 9 *examiner*, v. 1. 10 *pays*, n. m. 11 *ces deux*. 12 *jeune*, adj. 13 *homme*, n. m. 14 *promettre*, v. 4. 15 *de*, prep. 16 *le, la*, plur. *les*, pron. nom. 17 *sauver*, v. 1. 18 *avec*, prep. 19 *son, sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 20 *famille*, n. f. 21 *par-ent*, pl. *ens*, n. m. 22 *ne furent pas plutôt envoyés*. 23 *camp*, n. m. 24 *que*, conj. 25 *selon*, prep. 26 *ordre*, n. m. 27 *recevoir*, v. 3. 28 *de*, prep. 29 *Dieu*, n. m. 30 *God*

God 29, destroyed 30 all 31 that was 31 in 32 the city, men, women 33 and children, and burnt 34 it.

## The DICTIONARY.

*détruire*, v. 4. 31 *tout ce* 33 *femme*, n. f. 34 *bruler*,  
qui étoit. 32 *dans*, prep. v. 1.

XIII. *Joshua* 1 *rescues* 2 *Gideon* 3 and 4 *stops* 5  
the *Sun* 6 and *Moon* 7.

(A.) The five 1 kings 2 of the Amorites 3, hearing 4 that 5 the Gibeonites 6 had made 7 peace 8 with 9 the children 10 of Israel, gathered 11 themselves 11 together 11, and went 12 to 13 encamp 13 before 14 Gideon, and 15 made war against it 15.

(B.) The men 1 of that 2 city 3 sent 4 to Joshua, saying 5 *Slack* 6 *not thy* 7 *hands* 8 *from* 9 *thy servants* 10; *come* 11 *up* 11 to 13 *us* 14 *quickly* 12, and *save* 15 *us*, for 16 all 17 the kings of the Amorites are gathered together against 18 us.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jofué* n. m. 2 *délivrer*, v. 1. 3 *Gabaön*, n. m. 4 *Et*, conj. 5 *arrêter*, v. 1. 6 *soleil*, n. m. 7 *lune*, n. f.  
(A) 1 *cinq*, adj. pl. und. 2 *roi*, n. m. 3 *Amorréen*, n. m. 4 *apprendre*, v. 6. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *Gabaönite*, n. m. 7 *faire*, v. 5. 8 *paix*, n. f. 9 *avec*, prep. 10 *enf-ant*, pl. ans, n. m. 11 *s'assembler*, v. 1. 12 *aller*, v. 1. 13 *camper*. 14 *devant*, prep. 15 *Et lui firent la guerre*.  
(B.) 1 *Habit-ant*, plur. ans, n. m. 2 *ce*, *cette*, pl. ces, pron. adj. 3 *ville*, n. f. 4 *envoyer*, v. 1. 5 *dire*, v. 4. 6 *retirer*, v. 1. 7 *ton*, *ta*, pl. tes, pron. adj. 8 *main*, n. f. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *servi-teur*, n. m. 11 *monter*, v. 1. 12 *promptement*, adv. 13 *vers*, prep. 14 *nous*, pron. nom. 15 *sauver*, v. 1. 16 *car*, conj. 17 *t-out*, plur. m. ous, adj. 18 *contre*, prep.

(C.) So

(C.) So 2 Joshua ascended 1 from 3 Gilgal 4, he 5 and all 6 the people of war 6 with 7 him 8, and all 9 the mighty men of valour 9.

(D.) And the Lord 1 said unto Joshua, *fear* 3 *them* 2 *not*; for I have delivered 4 *them* into 5 *thy* hands; there 6 *shall* not a man of *them* stand before thee 6.

(E.) Joshua therefore 2 came 1 unto 4 *them* 4 suddenly 3; and the Lord slew 6 a part 6 of 5 *them* 5 at 7 Gibeon and put 8 the rest 9 to 10 flight 10. As 11 they fled 11, he cast 12 down 12 great 13 stones 14 from 15 heaven 15 upon 16 *them* 16, and a great 17 number 18 of 19 *them* 19 died 20.

(F.) Joshua then 1 said in 2 the fight 2 of Israel, *Sun* 3, *stand* 4 *thou* still 4 upon 5 Gideon, and *thou* 6 *moon* 7 in 8 the valley 9 of Ajalon. And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed 10, until 11 the people 12 had avenged 13 themselves 13 upon 14 their 15 enemies 16.

### [ The D I C T I O N A R Y .

(C.) 1 *Monter*, v. 1. 2 *donc*, conj. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *Guilgal*, n. m. 5 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 6 *tout le peuple propre à la guerre*. 7 *avec*, prep. 8 *lui*. 9 *tous les hommes forts & courageux*.

(D.) 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *le*, la, plur. les, pron. nom. 3 *craindre*, v. 6. 4 *livrer*, v. 1. 5 *entre*, prep. 6 *il n'y aura aucun d'eux qui puisse te résister*.

(E.) 1 *Marcher*, v. 1. 2 *donc*, conj. 3 *au plus vite*. 4 *contre eux*. 5 *en*, pron. conj. 6 *tua une partie*. 7 *à*, prep. 8 *mettre*, v. 4. 9 *reste*, n. m. 10 *en fuite*.

11 *comme ils s'enfuyoient*. 12 *faire tomber*, v. 5. 1. 13 *gr-os*, offe. adj. 14 *pierre*, n. f. 15 *du-ciel*. 16 *sur eux*. 17 *grand*, adj. 18 *nombre*, n. m. 19 *d'entre eux*. 20 *mourir*, v. 2.

(F.) 1 *Donc*, conj. 2 *en présence*. 3 *soleil*, n. m. 4 *s'arrêter*, v. 1. 5 *sur*, prep. 6 *toi*, pron. nom. m. and f. 7 *lune*, n. f. 8 *dans*, prep. 9 *vallée*, n. f. 10 *ne bougea point*. 11 *jusqu'à ce que*. 12 *peuple*, n. m. 13 *se venger*, v. 1. 14 *de*, prep. 15 *ses*, pron. adj. plur. 16 *ennemi*, n. m.



(G.) The greatest 1 part 2 of the Amorites perished 3 that 4 day 4 with 5 their 6 five kings, and 7 there were but few 7 that 8 escaped 9 death 10, by 11 entering 11 into 12 fenced 13 cities.

## The DICTIONARY.

(G.) 1 *Grand*, adj. 2 *partie*, n. f. 3 *périr*, v. 2. 4 *ce jour-là*. 5 *avec*, prep. 6 *leur*, pron. adj. 7 *Et il n'y en eût qu'un petit nombre*. 8 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 9 *éviter*, v. 1. 10 *mort*, n. f. 11 *en entrant*. 12 *dans*, prep. 13 *muré*, p. p.

XIV. *Gideon* 1 *defeats* 2 *the Midianites* 3 *with* 4 *Trumpets* 5, *Pitchers* 6 *and* 7 *Lamps* 8.

(A.) The children 1 of Israel did 2 evil 3 in 4 the fight 4 of the Lord 5, who 6 delivered 8 them 7 into 9 the hands 10 of Midian 11. After 12 they had been oppressed 13 seven 14 years 14, he took 16 pity 17 of 15 them 15 and resolved 18 to 19 save 20 them.

(B.) Gideon was pitched 1 upon 1 to 2 be their leader 2 against 3 their 4 enemies 5. This 6 great 7 man 8 having

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Gédéon*, n. m. 2 *défaire*, v. 3. 3 *Madianite*, n. m. 4 *avec*, prep. 5 *trompette*, n. f. 6 *cruche*, n. f. 7 *Et*, conj. 8 *lampe*, n. f. (A.) 1 *Enf-ant*, pl. *ans*, n. m. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *le mal*. 4 *en présence*. 5 *Seigneur*, n. m. 6 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 7 *le, la*, pl. *les*, pron. conj. 8 *livrer*, v. 1. 9 *entre*, prep. 10 *main*, n. f. 11 *Madian*, n. m. 12 *après que*. 13 *opprimer*, v. 1. 14 *pendant sept ans*. 15 *en*, pron. conj. 16 *avoir*, v. aux, 3. 17 *pitié*, n. f. 18 *résoudre*, v. 5. 19 *de*, prep. 20 *sauver*, v. 1. (B.) 1 *Choisir*, v. 2. 2 *pour les conduire*. 3 *contre*, prep. 4 *leur*, pron. adj. 5 *ennemi*, gathered

gathered 9 together 9 a great number 10 of his 11 countrymen 12, the Lord said 14 to 13 him 13, *the people* 15 *that* 16 *are* 16 *with thee* 17, *are* 18 *too many* 18 *for* 19 *me to give* 19 *the Midianites into their hands, lest* 20 *I* rael *vaunt* 21 *themselves* 21 *against* 22 *me* 23, *saying my own hand has saved* 25 *me* 24. Now 26 *therefore* 27 *go* 28 *to* 28, and 29 *proclaim, saying* 29, *whosoever* 30 *is fearful* 31 *and afraid* 32, *let him return* 33.

(C.) There 4 returned 4 of the people twenty 1 two 2 thousand 3, and there 5 remained 5 ten 6 thousand. The Lord then 7 said to Gideon, *the people are yet* 8 *too many; bring* 9 *them down* 9 *into* 10 *the water* 11; *I will try* 14 *them* 12 *for* 15 *thee there* 13; and *that* 16 *of* 17 *whom* 17 *I* 18 *say unto thee* 18, *this* 19 *shall go with thee, the same shall go with thee; and of* 20 *whomsoever I say unto thee* 20, *this* 21 *shall not go with thee, the same shall not go.*

### THE DICTIONARY.

n. m. 6 *ce, cette*, pl. *ces*,  
pron. adj. 7 *grand*, adj. 8  
*homme*, n. m. 9 *assembler*,  
v. 1. 10 *nombre*, n. m. 11  
*son, sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj.  
12 *compatriote*, n. m. 13  
*lui*, pron. conj. 14 *dire*,  
v. 4. 15 *peuple*, n. m. 16  
*qui est* 17 *toi*, pron. nom.  
18 *est en trop grand nombre*.  
19 *pour que je livre*. 20 *de*  
*peur que*, conj. 21 *se glori-*  
*fier*, v. 1. 22 *contre*, prep.  
23 *moi*, pron. nom. 24 *me*,  
pron. conj. 25 *délivrer*, v.  
1. 26 *maintenant*, adv. 27  
*donc*, conj. 28 *aller*, v. 1.  
29 *dire à haute voix*, v. 4.  
prep. adj. and n. f. 30  
*quiconque*, pron. nom. m.

31 *craint-if, iwe*, adj. 32  
*peur-eux, euse*, adj. 33 *s'en*  
*retourner*, v. 1.

(C.) 1 *Vingt*, adj. pl und.  
2 *deux*, adj. pl. 3 *milles*,  
adj. pl. 4 *s'en retournerent*.  
5 *il en resta*. 6 *dix*, adj. pl.  
7 *alors*, adv. 8 *encore*, adv.  
9 *faire descendre*, v. 5. 6.  
10 *vers*, prep. 11 *eau*, n.  
f. 12 *les*, pron. conj. 13 *y*,  
pron. conj. 14 *essayer*, v.  
1. 15 *pour toi*. 16 *celui*,  
pron. nom. m. 17 *dont*,  
pron. m. and f. 18 *je te*  
*dirai*. 19 *celui-ci*, pron.  
nom. m. 20 *celui dont je te*  
*dirai*. 21 *celui-là*, pron.  
nom. m.

(D.) So 1 Gideon brought down 1 the people unto the water, and the Lord said unto him, every 2 one that lappeth of the water 2 with 3 his tongue 3, as 4 a dog 5 lappeth, him 6 shalt thou set 7 by 8 himself 8, likewise 9 every 10 one that boweth down upon his knees 10 to 11 drink 12.

(E.) The number 1 of them 2 that 3 lapped 4, putting 5 their 6 hand 7 to their mouth 8, were 9 three hundred men 9; but 10 all 11 the rest 12 of the people bowed 13 down upon their knees 13 to drink water.

(F.) And the Lord said unto Gideon, by 3 the three 4 hundred 5 men 6 that lapped will I save 2 you 1, and deliver 7 the Midianites into thy hands; and let 8 all the other people go 8 every 9 man 9 unto 10 his place 10.

(G.) Gideon sent 1 the rest of the Israelites every 2 man 2 to his tent 3, retained 4 the three hundred men, went 5 with them to 6 meet 6 the enemy 7; and having put 8 in 9 every man's hand 9 a trumpet and an empty 10 pitcher with a lamp within 11 the pitcher, he said to them

# The D I C T I O N A R Y.

(D.) 1 *Gédéon fit, donc descendre.* 2 *quiconque lappera l'eau.* 3 *avec la langue.* 4 *comme,* prep. 5 *chien,* n. m. 6 *le,* pron. conj. 7 *mettre,* v. 4. 8 *à part.* 9 *pareillement,* adv. 10 *tous ceux qui plieront le genou.* 11 *pour,* prep. 12 *boire,* v. 5.

(E.) 1 *Nombre,* n. m. 2 *ceux,* pron. nom. pl. 3 *qui,* pron. m. and f. 4 *lapper,* v. 1. 5 *en portant.* 6 *leur,* pron. adj. 7 *main,* n. f. 8 *bouche,* n. f. 9 *fut de trois cens hommes.* 10 *mais,* conj. 11 *tout,* adj. 12 *reste,* n. m. 13 *plia le genou.*

(F.) 1 *Vous,* pron. conj. 2 *délivrer,* v. 1. 3 *par.* prep. 4 *trois,* adj. plur. 5 *c-ent,* pl. ens, adj. 6 *homme,* n. m. 7 *livrer,* v. 1. 8 *que tout le peuple s'en aille.* 9 *chacun,* pron. nom. m. 10 *en son lieu.*

(G.) 1 *Renvoyer,* v. 1. 2 *chacun,* pron. nom. m. 3 *tête,* n. f. 4 *retenir,* v. 4. 5 *aller,* v. 1. 6 *à la rencontre de.* 7 *ennemi,* n. m. 8 *mettre,* v. 4. 9 *à la main de chacun d'eux.* 10 *vuide,* adj. 11 *dans,* prep. 12 *leur,* pron. conj. 13 *quand,* conj. 14 *je serai*  
12, *when*



12, when 13 I come 14 to 15 the outside of 15 the Midianites' camp 16, it 17 shall be that as I do, so shall ye do 17.

(H.) When Gideon and his three hundred men came 1 to the outside of the camp, he blew 2 his trumpet, broke 3 his pitcher, and held 4 his lamp in 5 his left 6 hand.

(I.) Then 1 the three hundred men did 2 the 3 same 3; and the Midianites were 4 affrighted 4, cried 5, and fled 6; and the Lord set 7 every 9 man's 10 sword 8 against 11 his fellow 12, so 13 that 13 the enemies killed 14 one 14 another 14. Those 15 that 16 fought 17 for 17 their safety 18 in 19 the flight 20 were 21 all taken 21 and killed 22 by 23 the children of Israel.

### The DICTIONARY.

*arrivé.* 15 *près du.* 16  
camp, n. m. 17 *vous ferez*  
*comme je ferai.*

(H.) 1 *Arriver*, v. 1. 2 *son-*  
*ner de*, v. 1. and prep. 3  
*briser*, v. 1. 4 *tenir*, v. 2.  
5 *dans*, prep. 6 *gauche*,  
adj.

(I.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *faire*, v.  
5. 3 *la même chose.* 4 *épou-*  
*vanter*, v. 1. 5 *crier*, v. 1.  
6 *s'enfuir*, v. 2. 7 *tourner*,

v. 1. 8 *épée*, n. f. 9 *chaque*,  
adj. 10 *soldat*, n. m. 11  
*contre*, prep. 12 *compagnon*,  
n. m. 13 *de sorte que*, conj.  
14 *s'entretuer*, v. 1. 15  
*ceux*, pron. nom. m. 16  
*qui*, pron. 17 *chercher*, v.  
1. 18 *sûreté*, n. f. 19  
*dans*, prep. 20 *fuite*, n. f.  
21 *prendre*, v. 6. 22 *tuer*,  
v. 1. 23 *par*, prep.

### XV. David 1 kills 2 Goliath 3.

(A.) The Philistines 1 being the 3 most inveterate 3 enemies 2 of the Israelites 4, were almost 5 continually 6

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *David*, n. m. 2 *tuer*, v. 1.  
3 *Goliath*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Philistin*, n. m. 2 *en-*  
*nemi*, n. m. 3 *les plus invé-*

*térés.* 4 *Israélite*, n. m. 5  
*presque*, adv. 6 *toujours*,  
adv. 7 *en guerre.* 8 *avec*,  
at

at 7 war 7 with 8 them 9. Having once 10 gathered 11 together 11 their 12 forces 13 they marched 14 against 15 them, and 16 pitched 17 between 18 Shocoh 19 and Azekah 20.

(B.) King 1 Saul 2 and the children 3 of Israel were then 4 gathered together and pitched by 5 the valley 6 of Elah 7.

(C.) The Philistines stood 1 on 2 a mountain 3 on 4 the one side 4, and Israel stood on a mountain on 5 the other side 5; and there was as a valley between them.

(D.) And there 1 went out 1 of the camp 2 of the Philistines a champion 3 named 4 Goliath, whose 5 height 6 was six 7 cubits and a span 7.

(E.) When 1 he was in 2 the hearing of Israel 2, he cried 3 out 3 and said 5 to 4 them 4, why 6 are 7 you come 7 out 7 to 8 set 9 your 10 battle 11 in 12 array 13? Am I not a 14 Philistine 14 and you 15 servants 16 to 17 Saul 17? Choose 18 a man 20 for 19 you 19, and let him come 21

## The DICTIONARY.

prep. 9 *eux*, pron. nom. m.

pl. 10 *une fois*. 11 *assembler*, v. 1. 12 *leur*, pron.

adj. 13 *forces*, n. f. pl. 14

*marcher*, v. 1. 15 *contre*,

prep. 16 *&*, conj. 17 *camper*,

v. 1. 18 *entre*, prep.

19 *Soco*, n. m. 20 *Azéca*,

n. m.

(B.) 1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *Saül*,

n. m. 3 *enf-ant*, plur. *ans*,

n. m. 4 *alors*, adv. 5 *près*

*de*. 6 *vallée*, n. f. 7 *Ela*,

n. m.

(C.) 1 *être*, v. aux, 4. 2 *sur*,

prep. 3 *montagne*, n. f. 4

*d'un côté*. 5 *de l'autre côté*.

(D.) 1 *Il sortit*. 2 *camp*, n.

m. 3 *champion*, n. m. 4

*nommé*, p. p. 5 *dont*, pron.

m. and f. 6 *hauteur*, n. f.

7 *de six coudées & une palme*.

(E.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *à por-*

*tée d'être entendu des Isra-*

*élites*. 3 *s'écrier*, v. 1. 4

*leur*, pron. conj. 5 *dire*, v.

4. 6 *pourquoi*, adv. 7 *sortir*,

v. 2. 8 *pour*, prep. 9

*ranger*, v. 1. 10 *votre*, pl.

*vos*, adj. 11 *armée*, n. f.

12 *en*, prep. 13 *bataille*,

n. f. 14 *Philistin*. 15 *vous*,

pron. nom. pl. 16 *serviteur*,

n. m. 17 *de Saül*. 18 *choi-*

*sir*, v. 2. 19 *vous*, pron.

conj. 20 *homme*, n. m. 21

down

down 21 to 22 me 23. If 24 he kills 26 me 25, we shall be your servants 27; but 28 if I 29 prevail against him 29, and 30 kill him 30, you shall serve 32 us 31.

(F.) Saul and the children 1 of Israel, considering 2 the height and strength 3 of that 4 man, were 6 afraid 6 of 5 him 5; and tho' 7 he came 8 out 8 for 9 several 10 days 11 to 12 challenge 14 them 13, none 15 durst 16 go 17 out 17 against 18 him 19.

(G.) At 1 that time 1 David was sent 2 by 3 his 4 father 5 to 6 carry 7 provisions 8 to his three 9 brothers 10 that 11 were in Saul's army 12. When 13 he was there 13, the 14 Philistine happened to come out 14 of his camp; and David hearing 15 his challenge 16, said to those 17 who 18 were near 19 him, that 20 he would fight 21 him 22, if 23 the king 24 gave 26 him 25 leave 27 so 28 to do 28.

### THE DICTIONARY.

*descendre*, v. 6. 22 *vers*, prep. 23 *moi*, pron. nom. 24 *si*, conj. 25 *me*, pron. conj. 26 *tuer*, v. 1. 27 *esclave*, n. m. 28 *mais*, conj. 29 *je suis plus fort que lui*. 30 *Et que je le tue*. 31 *nous*, pron. conj. 32 *servir*, v. 2. (F.) 1 *Enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 2 *considérer*, v. 1. 3 *force*, n. f. 4 *cet*, pron. adj. m. 5 *en*, pron. conj. 6 *avoir peur*, v. aux. and n. f. 7 *quoique*, conj. 8 *sortir*, v. 2. 9 *pendant*, prep. 10 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. m. and f. 11 *jour*, n. m. 12 *pour*, prep. 13 *leur*, pron. conj. pl. 14 *faire un défi*, v. 5. adj. and n. m. 15 *aucun d'eux*. 16 *ôser*, v. 1. 17

*sortir*, v. 2. 18 *contre*, prep. 19 *lui*, pron. nom. m. (G.) 1 *En ce tems-là*. 2 *envoyer*, v. 1. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *son, sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 3 *père*, n. m. 6 *pour*, prep. 7 *porter*, v. 1. 8 *provision*, n. f. 9 *trois*, adj. plur. 10 *frère*, n. m. 11 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 12 *armée*, n. f. 13 *lorsqu'il y fut*. 14 *il arriva que le Philistin sortit*. 15 *entendre*, v. 6. 16 *défi*, n. m. 17 *ceux*, pron. nom. m. pl. 18 *qui*, pron. 19 *près de* 20 *que*, conj. 21 *se battre contre*, v. 4. and prep. 22 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 23 *si*, conj. 24 *roi*, n. m. 25 *lui*, pron. conj. 26 *donner*, v. 1. 27 *permission*, n. f. 28 *de le faire*.

(H.) These



(H.) These 1 words 2 being reported 3 to Saul, he sent 4 for 4 David; and seeing 5 that 6 he was very 7 young 8 and weak 9, he said 11 to 10 him 10, *thou art not able* 12 to 13 go 14 against this 15 *Philistine*, to 16 fight 16 with 17 him; for 18 thou 19 art 19 but 20 a 21 youth 22, and he 23 a 24 man of war 24 from 25 his 26 youth 27.

(I.) David said to Saul, thy 1 servant 2 kept 3 his 5 father's sheep 4; and when 6 a lion 7 or 8 a bear 9 came 10 to 11 take 11 a lamb 12 out 13 of my 14 flock 15, I went 16 out 16 after 17 him 18, smote 20 him 19, and delivered 21 the lamb out 22 of 22 his mouth 23; and when he arose 24 against me 25, I caught 26 him by 27 his 28 beard 28, smote him and slew 29 him. I hope 30 that 31 this 32 un-circumcised 33 *Philistine* shall be as 34 the lion and the bear, seeing 35 that 35 he has defied 36 the armies 37 of the living 39 God 38.

### The DICTIONARY.

(H.) 1 *Ces*, pron. adj. pl. 2 *parole*, n. f. 3 *rapporter*, v. 1. 4 *envoyer chercher*, v. 1. 1. 5 *voir*, v. 3. 6 *que*, conj. 7 *très*, adv. 8 *jeune*, adj. 9 *foible*, adj. 10 *lui*, pron. conj. 11 *dire*, v. 4. 12 *capable*, adj. 13 *de*, prep. 14 *aller*, v. 1. 15 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 16 *pour combattre*. 17 *contre*, prep. 18 *car*, conj. 19 *tu n'es*. 20 *que*, conj. 21 *un*, adj. 22 *jeune homme*, adj. and n. m. 23 *lui est*. 24 *guerrier*. 25 *dès*, prep. 26 *sa* pron. adj. f. 27 *jeunesse*, n. f.

(I.) 1 *Ton*, pron. adj. m. 2 *serviteur*, n. m. 3 *garder*, v. 1. 4 *brébis*. n. f. 5 *son*, *sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 6 *quand*, conj. 7 *lion*, n. m.

8 *ou*, conj. 9 *ours*, n. m. 10 *venir*, v. 2. 11 *prendre*. 12 *agn-eau*, pl. *eaux*, n. m. 13 *de*, prep. 14 *mon*, pron. adj. m. 15 *troupeau*, n. m. 16 *sortir*, v. 2. 17 *après*, prep. 18 *lui*, pron. nom. 19 *le*, pron. conj. m. 20 *frapper*, v. 1. 21 *délivrer*, v. 1. 22 *de*, prep. 23 *gueule*, n. f. 24 *se lever*, v. 1. 25 *moi*, pron. nom. 26 *prendre*, v. 6. 27 *par*, prep. 28 *la barbe*. 29 *tuer*, v. 1. 30 *espérer*, v. 1. 31 *que*, conj. 32 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 33 *incirconci*, adj. 34 *comme*, conj. 35 *vû que*. 36 *désier*, v. 1. 37 *armée*, n. f. 38 *Dieu*, n. m. 39 *vivant*, adj.

(K.) *Saul*

(K.) Saul said to David, *go, and the Lord* 1 *be with* 2 *thee* 3. David took his staff 4 and his sling 5; and having chosen 6 five 7 smooth 9 stones 8 out 10 of a brook 10, he drew 11 near 11 the Philistine, put 12 a stone in his sling, flung 14 it 13, smote him in 15 his 15 forehead 16, and 17 made him fall upon his face to the earth 17. He then 19 run 18 to his enemy 20, took his sword 21, slew him, and 22 cut off his head 22.

(L.) When the Philistines saw 1 that 2 their 3 champion 4 was dead 5, they fled 6; and the children of Israel having pursued 8 them 7, made 10 a great 11 slaughter 12 of 9 them 9.

### The DICTIONARY.

(K.) 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *avec*, prep. 3 *toi*, pron. nom. 4 *bâton*, n. m. 5 *fronde*, n. f. 6 *choisir*, v. 2. 7 *cing*, adj. und. plur. 8 *caillou*, plur. 9 *oux*, n. m. 10 *un*, adj. 11 *dans un ruisseau*. 12 *s'avancer*, v. 1. 13 *le*, pron. conj. m. 14 *lancer*, v. 1. 15 *au*. 16 *front*, n. m. 17 *Et le fit tomber sur le vi-*

*sage*. 18 *courir*, v. 2. 19 *alors*, adv. 20 *ennemi*, n. m. 21 *épée*, n. f. 22 *Et lui coupa la tête*.

(L.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *que*, conj. 3 *leur*, pron. adj. 4 *champion*, n. m. 5 *mourir*, v. 2. 6 *s'enfuir*, v. 2. 7 *les*, pron. conj. pl. 8 *poursuivre*, v. 4. 9 *en*, pron. conj. 10 *faire*, v. 5. 11 *grand*, adj. 12 *carnage*, n. m.

## XVI. *The Queen* 1 *of Sheba* 2 *admires* 3 *Solomon's* 5 *wisdom* 4.

(A.) The queen of *Sheba*, having heard 1 of the fame 2 of *Solomon*, came 3 to *Jerusalem* 4, with 5 a grand 6 re-

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Reine*, n. f. 2 *Séba*, n. f. 3 *admirer*, v. 1. 4 *sagesse*, n. f. 5 *Salomon*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *entendre parler*, v. 6. 1. 2 *réputation*, n. f. 3 *venir*, v. 2. 4 *Jérusalem*, n. f. 5 *tinne*.

tinue 7 in 8 order to prove him with 8 hard 10 questions  
9. Solomon answered 11 them 12 all 12; and 13 there  
14 was 14 nothing 15 hid 16 from him 16 which 17 he  
told her not 17.

(B.) When 1 the queen of Sheba saw 2 his 3 wisdom,  
the house 4 that 5 he had built 6, the 7 meat 7 of his table  
8, the 9 sitting of his servants 9, the attendance 10 of his  
ministers 11, and their 12 apparel 13, his cup-bearers 14  
and their apparel, and his 15 ascent by which he went up  
into the 15 house 16 of the Lord 17, there 18 was no more  
spirit in her 18.

(C.) And she said 1 to the king 2, it 9 was a true re-  
port 9 which 3 I heard 4 in 5 my 6 own land 6 of thy 7 acts  
8, and of thy wisdom; howbeit 10 I believed 11 not their  
words 12 until 13 I came 14, and my 15 eyes 16 had seen it  
17; and behold 18 the 19 one half 19 of the greatness 20 of

### The DICTIONARY.

*avec*, prep. 6 *grand*, adj.  
7 *train*, n. m. 8 *pour lui*  
*proposer des*. 9 *question*, n.  
f. 10 *difficile*, adj. 11 *ré-*  
*pondre*, v. 6. 12 *à toutes ces*  
*questions*. 13 *Et*, conj. 14  
*il n'y eut*. 15 *rien*, n. m.  
16 *qu'il n'entendit*. 17 *Et*  
*qu'il ne lui dit*.

(B.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *voir*,  
v. 3. 3 *son, sa*, pl. *ses*, pron.  
adj. 4 *maison*, n. f. 5 *que*,  
pron. m. and f. 6 *bâtir*,  
v. 2. 7 *les mets*. 8 *table*, n.  
f. 9 *l'ordre selon lequel ses*  
*officiers étoient assis à table*.  
10 *assiduité*, n. f. 11 *mi-*  
*nistre*, n. m. 12 *leur*, pron.  
adj. 13 *habille-ment*, plur.  
*ens*, n. m. 14 *échançon*, n.

m. 15 *l'escalier par lesquels*  
*il montoit au*. 16 *temple*,  
n. m. 17 *seigneur*, n. m.  
18 *elle fut toute étonnée*.

(C.) 1 *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *roi*, n.  
m. 3 *ce que*, pron. nom. m.  
4 *entendre dire*, v. 6. 4. 5  
*dans*, prep. 6 *mon pays*. 7  
*ton, ta*, pl. *tes*, pron. adj.  
8 *action*, n. f. 9 *étoit véri-*  
*table*. 10 *cependant*, conj.  
11 *croire*, v. 5. 12 *discours*,  
n. m. 13 *jusqu'à ce que*. 14  
*venir*, v. 2. 15 *mon, ma*,  
pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 16 *œil*,  
plur. *yeux*, n. m. 17 *le, la*,  
pl. *les*, pron. conj. 18 *voi-*  
*ci*. 19 *la moitié*. 20 *gran-*  
*deur*, n. f. 21 *m'a été, ca-*  
*chée*, 22 *car*, conj. 23 *ex-*  
*thy*



*thy wisdom was 21 not told me 21, for 22 thou exceedest 23 the 24 same that I heard 24.*

(D.) *Happy 1 are thy men 2, and happy are these 3 servants 4 who 5 stand 6 continually 7 before 8 thee 9, and bear 10 thy wisdom.*

(E.) *Blessed 1 be the Lord thy God 2, who 3 delighted 4 in 5 thee, to 6 set 8 thee 7 on 9 his throne 10, to 11 be king 11 for 12 the Lord thy God. Because 13 thy God loved 14 Israel 15, therefore 16 made he thee 16 king 17 over 18 them 19, to 20 do 21 judgment and justice 21.*

(F.) *And she gave 1 the 1 king an hundred and twenty 2 talents 3 of gold 4, great 5 abundance 6 of 7 spices 7, and precious 9 stones 8.*

(G.) *And king Solomon gave unto the queen of Sheba whatsoever 1 she asked 2, besides 3 that 4 which 4 Solomon gave her of 5 his own accord 5 ; to 6 she turned 7 and went 8 to 9 her 10 own country 10, she 11 and her servants 12.*

### The DICTIONARY.

*céder, v. 1. 24 tout ce qui j'ai oui dire de toi.*

(D.) 1 *Heur-eux, euse, plur. m. eux, adj. 2 domestique, n. m. 3 ce, cette, plur. ces, pron. adj. 4 officier, n. m. 5 qui, pron. m. and f. 6 être, v. aux. 4. 7 continuellement, adv. 8 devant, prep. 9 toi, pron. nom. m. and f. 10 entendre, v. 6.*

(E.) 1 *Bénir, v. 2. 2 Dieu, n. m. 3 qui, pron. m. and f. 4 se plaire, v. 5. 5 en, prep. 6 pour, prep. 7 te, pron. conj. m. and f. 8 établir, v. 2. 9 sur, prep. 10 trône, n. m. 11 afin que tu sois roi. 12 pour, prep. 13 parceque, conj. 14 aimer, v. 1. 15 les Israélites.*

*16 il t'a fait. 17 roi, n. m. 18 sur, prep. 19 eux, pron. nom. m. pl. 20 pour, prep. 21 leur rendre justice.*

(F.) 1 *Donner au, v. 1. prep. and art. 2 cent vingt. 3 tal-ent, plur. ens, n. m. 4 or, n. m. 5 grand, adj. 6 quantité, n. f. 7 de drogues aromatiques. 8 pierre, n. f. 9 prêt-ieux, ieuse, adj.*

(G.) 1 *Tout ce que, pron. nom. m. 2 demander, v. 1. 3 outre, prep. 4 ce que, pron. nom. m. 5 de son plein gré. 6 ensuite, adv. 7 s'en retourner, v. 1. 8 s'en aller, v. 1. 9 dans, prep. 10 son pays. 11 elle, pron. nom. f. 12 serviteur, n. m.*

XVII. *Elisha* 1 multiplies 2 the widow's 4 oil 3.

(A.) There 3 cried 3 a certain 1 woman 2 unto 4 Elisha, saying 5, thy 6 servant 7 my 8 husband 9 is dead 10, and 11 thou knowest 11 that 12 thy servant did fear 13 the Lord 14; and 15 the creditor 15 is come 16 to take 17 my two 18 sons 19 to 20 be bondsmen 20.

(B.) And 1 Elisha said unto her, what 2 shall I do 3 for 4 thee 5? tell 6 me 7, what hast thou in 8 the house 8? and she said, thy handmaid 9 has 10 not any thing 10 in the house, save 11 a pot 12 of oil.

(C.) Then he said, go 1 and 2 borrow 2 empty 4 vessels 3 of all 5 thy neighbours 6, borrow 7 not a few 7; and when 8 thou 9 art come in 9, thou shalt shut 10 the door 11 upon 12 thee 13, and upon thy sons, thou 14 shalt pour out 14 into 15 all those vessels, and thou shalt set 16 aside 16 those 17 that 17 are full 18.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Elisée*, n. m. 2 *multiplier*,  
v. 1. 3 *huile*, n. f. 4 *veuve*,  
n. f.

(A.) 1 *Certain*, adj. 2 *femme*,  
n. f. 3 *cria*, 4 *vers*, prep.  
5 *dire*, v. 4. 6 *ton*, *ta*, pl.  
*tes*, pron. adj. 7 *serviteur*,  
n. m. 8 *mon*, *ma*, pl. *mes*,  
pron. adj. 9 *mari*, n. m.  
10 *mourir*, v. 2. 11 *Et* tu  
fais. 12 *que*, conj. 13  
*craindre*, v. 6. 14 *seigneur*,  
n. m. 15 *Et* son créancier.  
16 *venir*, v. 2. 17 *prendre*,  
v. 6. 18 *deux*, adj. plur.  
19 *filz*, n. m. 20 *pour en*  
*faire des esclaves*.

(B.) 1 *Et*, conj. 2 *que*, pron.  
nom. m. 3 *faire*, v. 5. 4

*pour*, prep. 5 *toi*, pron.  
nom. m. and f. 6 *à dire*, v.  
4. 7 *moi*, pron. conj. 8 *à*  
*la maison*. 9 *servante*, n. f.  
10 *n'a*. 11 *que*, conj. 12  
*pot*, n. m.

(C.) 1 *Aller*, v. 1. 2 *emprun-*  
*ter*. 3 *vaise*, n. m. 4 *vide*,  
adj. 5 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*,  
adj. 6 *voisin*, n. m. 7 *n'en*  
*empruntes pas un petit*  
*nombre*. 8 *quand*, conj. 9  
*tu seras rentrée chez toi*. 10  
*fermer*, v. 1. 11 *porte*, n. f.  
12 *sur*, prep. 13 *toi*, pron.  
nom. 14 *tu verseras de*  
*l'huile*. 15 *dans*, prep. 16  
*faire ôter*, v. 5. 1. 17 *ceux*  
*qui*. 18 *plein*, adj.

M

(D.) The

(D.) The woman went 2 from 2 him 1, shut the door upon her and upon her sons who 3 brought 5 the vessels to 4 her 4, and she poured out.

(E.) And it 2 came to pass 2, when 1 the vessels were full, that 3 she said unto her son, *bring me yet 4 a vessel*. And he said unto her, *there 5 is not a vessel more 5*. And the oil stayed 6.

(F.) Then 1 she came, and told 2 the 3 man 3 of God 4 what 5 had happened 6; and he said, *sell 7 the oil, and pay 8 thy debt 9, and live 10 thou 11 and thy children 12 of the rest 13*.

### The DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 *Le*, pron. conj. 2 *quitter*, v. 1. 3 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 4 *lui*, pron. conj. 5 *apporter*, v. 1.

(E.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *il arriva*. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *encore*, adv. 5 *il n'y a plus de vase*. 6 *s'arrêter*, v. 1.

(F.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *dire*, v. 4. 3 *à l'homme*. 4 *Dieu*, n. m. 5 *ce qui*, pron. nom. m. 6 *arriver*, v. 1. 7 *vendre*, v. 6. 8 *payer*, v. 1. 9 *dette*, n. f. 10 *vivre*, v. 4. 11 *toi*, pron. nom. m. and f. 12 *enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 13 *reste*, n. m.

### XVIII. *Elisha* 1 *causes* 2 *iron* 3 *to* 2 *swim* 2.

(A.) The sons 1 of the prophets 2 said 3 unto Elisha, *behold 4 now 5, the place 6 where 7 we dwell 8 with 9 thee 10*

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Elisée*, n. m. 2 *faire nager*, v. 5. 1. 3 *fer*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Enf-ant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 2 *prophète*, n. m. 3 *dire*, v. 4. 4 *voir*, v. 3.

5 *maintenant*, adv. 6 *endroit*, n. m. 7 *où*, adv. 8 *demeurer*, v. 1. 9 *avec*, prep. 10 *toi*, pron. nom. m. and f. 11 *trop*, adv. 12



is. too 11 *strait* 12 *for* 13 *us* 15. *Let us go* 15, *we* 16 *pray thee* 16, *unto Jordan* 17, *and* 18 *take thence every man* 18 *a* 19 *beam* 19, *and let us make* 20 *a place there* 21, *where we may* 22 *dwell*; and 23 *he answered* 24, *go ye*.

(B.) One 1 *said*, *be* 2 *content* 2, *I pray thee*, and *go* 3 *with thy* 4 *servants* 5; and *he answered*, *I* 6 *will go* 6.

(C.) So 1 *he went* 2 *with them*; and when 3 *they came* 4 *to Jordan*, they cut 5 *down* 5 *wood* 6; but 7 *as* 8 *one was felling* 9 *a beam*, the 10 *ax head* 10 *fell* 11 *into* 12 *the water* 13; and *he cried* 14 and *said*, *alas* 15 *master* 16; for 17 *it* 18 *was borrowed* 18.

(D.) And the man 1 *of God* 2 *said*, *where fell it?* and *he shewed* 3 *him the place*. And *he cut down a stick* 4, and *cast* 5 *it in thither* 5, and the iron did swim 6. *Take* 7 *it up* 7, *said* *Elisba*; and the man put 8 *out his hand* 8, and took 9 *it up* 9.

## The DICTIONARY.

*étroit*, adj. 13 *pour*, prep. 14 *nous*, pron. nom. 15 *aller*, v. 1. 16 *nous t'en prions*. 17 *Jourdain*, n. m. 18 *Et que chacun de nous y prenne*. 19 *une pièce de bois*. 20 *faire*, v. 5. 21 *y*, pron. conj. 22 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 23 *Et*, conj. 24 *répondre*, v. 6.

(B.) 1 *L'un d'eux*. 2 *ne te sâches pas*. 3 *venir*, v. 2. 4 *ton, ta*, plur. *tes*, pron. adj. 5 *serviteur*, n. m. 6 *je le veux bien*.

(C.) 1 *Ainsi*, conj. 2 *aller*, v. 1. 3 *quand*, conj. 4

*arriver*, v. 1. 5 *couper*, v. 1. 6 *bois*, n. m. 7 *mais*, conj. 8 *comme*, conj. 9 *abattre*, v. 4. 10 *le fer de la coignée*. 11 *tomber*, v. 1. 12 *dans*, prep. 13 *eau*, n. f. 14 *crier*, v. 1. 15 *hélas!* 16 *mon maître*. 17 *car*, conj. 18 *il l'avoit emprunté*.

(D.) 1 *Homme*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*, n. m. 3 *montrer*, v. 1. 4 *morceau de bois*. 5 *l'y jetta*. 6 *nager*, v. 1. 7 *prends le*. 8 *étendit la main*. 9 *prendre*, v. 6.

XIX. *Hezekiah 1 receiving 2 a message of death 2, by 3 prayer has 3 his 4 life 5 lengthened. 6.*

(A.) Hezekiah, king 1 of Judah 2, being 3 sick unto death 3, the prophet 4 Isaiah 5 came 6 to him 6, and 7 said 8, *thus 9 saith the Lord, set 10 thy 11 house 12 in 13 order 14, for 15 thou shalt die 16, and not live 17.*

(B.) Then Hezekiah turned 1 his face 2 to 3 the wall 4, and prayed 5 unto 5 the Lord 6, saying, *I beseech 8 thee 7 O Lord, remember 9 now 10 how 11 I have walked 12 before 13 thee 14 in 15 truth 16, and with 17 a perfect 19 heart 18, and have done 20 that 21 which 21 is good 22 in 23 thy sight 23; and he wept 24 fore 25.*

(C.) And 1 it came to pass 1 before 2 Isaiah was gone 3 into 4 the 5 middle court 5, that 6 the word 7 of the Lord came 8 to him 8, saying,

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Exéchias*, n. m. 2 *étant menacé de mort.* 3 *obtient par ses prières que.* 4 *son, sa*, plur. *sés*, pron. adj. 5 *vie*, n. f. 6 *sera prolongée.*

(A.) 1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *Juda*, n. m. 3 *étant très-malade.* 4 *prophète*, n. m. 5 *Isaïe*, n. m. 6 *vint le trouver.* 7 *Et*, conj. 8 *dire*, v. 4. 9 *voilà ce que.* 10 *mettre*, v. 4. 11 *ton, ta*, pl. *tes*, pron. adj. 12 *maison*, n. f. 13 *en*, prep. 14 *ordre*, n. m. 15 *car*, conj. 16 *mourir*, v. 2. 17 *vivre*, v. 4.

(B.) 1 *Tourner*, v. 1. 2 *visage*, n. m. 3 *vers*, prep. 4 *muraille*, n. f. 5 *prier*,

v. 1. 6 *seigneur*, n. m. 7 *te*, pron. conj. 8 *prier*, v. 1. 9 *se souvenir*, v. 2. 10 *maintenant*, adv. 11 *comme.* 12 *marcher*, v. 1. 13 *devant*, prep. 14 *toi*, pron. nom. m. and f. 15 *dans*, prep. 16 *vérité*, n. f. 17 *avec*, prep. 18 *cœur*, n. m. 19 *parfait*, adj. 20 *faire*, v. 5. 21 *ce que*, pron. nom. m. 22 *b-on, onne*, adj. 23 *à tes yeux.* 24 *pleurer*, v. 1. 25 *amèrement*, adv.

(C.) 1 *Or il arriva que.* 2 *avant que*, conj. 3 *entrer*, v. 1. 4 *dans*, prep. 5 *la cour du milieu.* 6 *que*, conj. 7 *parole*, n. f. 8 *lui fut adressée.*

(D.) *Turn*

(D.) Turn 1 again 1 and tell 2 Hezekiah, thus saith the Lord, the God 3 of David 4 thy father 5, I have heard 6 thy prayer 7; I have seen 8 thy tears 9; I will heal 11 thee 10; on 12 the third day 12 thou shalt go 13 up 13 to the house 14 of the Lord.

(E.) And I will add 1 unto 1 thy days 2 fifteen 3 years 4; and I will deliver 5 thee and Jerusalem 6 out 7 of the hands 7 of the king 8 of Assyria 9.

(F.) And Isaiah said, take 1 a lump 2 of figs 3. And they took and laid 5 it 4 on 6 the boyl 7, and he recovered 8.

(G.) And Hezekiah said unto Isaiah, what 1 shall be the sign 2 that 3 the Lord 4 will heal 6 me 5, and that I shall go 8 up 8 into 9 the 9 house 10 of the Lord the 7 third day 7?

(H.) And Isaiah said, to 1 prove 2 thee that 3 the Lord will do 4 the thing 5 that 6 he has spoken 7, shall the shadow 8 go 9 forward 9 ten 10 degrees 10, or 11 go 12 back 12 ten degrees?

The DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 *S'en retourner*, v. 1. 2 dire à, v. 4. and prep. 3 Dieu, n. m. 4 David, n. m. 5 père, n. m. 6 exaucer, v. 1. 7 prière, n. f. 8 voir, v. 3. 9 pleurs, n. f. pl. 10 te, pron. conj. 11 guérir, v. 2. 12 dans trois jours. 13 aller, v. 1. 14 temple, n. m.

(E.) 1 *Ajouter à*, v. 1. and prep. 2 jour, n. m. 3 quinze, adj. und. pl. 4 an, n. m. 5 délivrer, v. 1. 6 Jérusalem, n. f. 7 des mains. 8 roi, n. m. 9 Assirie, n. f.

(F.) 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 masse, n. f. 3 figure, n. f. 4 la,

pron. conj. f. 5 mettre, v. 4. 6 sur, prep. 7 ulcère, n. m. 8 guérir, v. 2.

(G.) 1 *Quel*, adj. 2 signe, n. m. 3 que, pron. m. and f. 5 seigneur, n. m. 5 me, pron. conj. 6 guérir, v. 2. 7 dans trois jours. 8 monter, v. 1. 9 au, prep. and art. m. 10 temple, n. m.

(H.) 1 *Pour*, prep. 2 prouver, v. 1. 3 que, conj. 4 faire, v. 5. 5 chose, n. f. 6 dont, pron. m. and f. 7 parler, v. 1. 8 ombre, n. f. 9 avancer, v. 1. 10 de dix degrés. 11 ou, conj. 12 reculer, v. 1.



(I.) And Hezekiah answered 1, it 2 is a light thing 2 for 3 the shadow to 4 go 5 forward 5 ten 6 degrees 6; nay 7, but let the shadow 7 return 8 backward 8 ten degrees.

(K.) And Isaiah cried 1 unto 2 the Lord, and the Lord brought 3 the shadow ten 4 degrees 4 backwards 3, by 5 which it had gone down 5 in 6 the dial 7 of Ahaz 8.

## The DICTIONARY.

(I.) 1 Répondre, v. 6. 2 il est facile. 3 à, prep. 4 de, prep. 5 avancer, v. 1. 6 de dix degrés. 7 je souhaite donc que l'ombre. 8 reculer, v. 1.

(K.) 1 Crier, v. 1. 2 vers, prep. 3 faire reculer, v. 5.

1. 4 des dix degrés. 5 qu'elle avoit parcourus. 6 sur, prep. 7 quadr.-ant, plur. ans, n. m. 8 Achaz, n. m.

XX. Shadrach 1, Meshach 2, and 3 Abednego 4, are cast 5 into 6 a burning 8 furnace 7, and come 10 out 9 of 9 it 9 unburt 11.

(A.) Nebuchadnezzar 1, king 2 of Babylon 3, having made 4 an image 5 of gold 6, whose 7 height 8 was three-score 9 cubits 9, and 10 the breadth thereof 10 six 11 cubits

## The DICTIONARY.

1. Chédrac, n. m. 2 Méchac, n. m. 3 &, conj. 4 Abed-négo, n. m. 5 jetter, v. 1. 6 dans, prep. 7 fournaise, n. f. 8 brulant, adj. 9 en, pron. conj. 10 sortir, v. 2. 11 sans avoir reçu aucun mal.

(A.) 1 Nabucodonosor, n. m. 2 roi, n. m. 3 Babilone, n. f. 4 faire, v. 5. 5 statue, n. f. 6 or, n. m. 7 dont, pron. m. and f. 8 hauteur, n. f. 9 de soixante coudées. 10 & la largeur. 11 de six 11, set .

11, set 13 it 12 up 13 in 14 a plain 15, near 16 Babylon, the 17 capital 17 of his 18 empire 19, and ordered 20 his subjects 21 to 22 worship 23 it.

(B.) Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who 1 had 2 been set over the 2 affairs 3 of the province 4 of Babylon, being in 5 the 5 number 6 of 7 those 7 who 8 refused 9 to 10 fall 11 down 11 before 12 the idol 13, were accused 14 of disobedience 15, and brought 16 before the king, who in 17 his rage and fury 17 spoke 19 thus 20 to 18 them 18.

(C.) *Is it true 1, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego? Do 2 ye not serve 2 my 3 gods 4, nor 5 worship 5 the 6 golden image 6 which 7 I have set 8 up 8? Now 9 if 10 at 11 the time ye hear 11 the sound 12 of all 13 kinds 14 of musical 16 instruments 15, ye fall down and worship it, well 17; but 18*

# The DICTIONARY.

*coudées.* 12 *le, la*, pl. *les*,  
pron. conj. 13 *mettre*, v. 4.  
14 *dans*, prep. 15 *plaine*,  
n. f. 16 *près de*, prep. 17  
*capitale*. 18 *son, sa*, pl. *ses*,  
pron. adj. 19 *empire*, n. m.  
20 *commander*, à, v. 1. and  
prep. 21 *sujet*, n. m. 22  
*de*, prep. 23 *adorer*, v. 1.

(B.) 1 *Qui*, pron. m. and f.  
sing. and pl. 2 *avoient été*  
*chargés des*. 3 *affaire*, n. f.  
4 *province*, n. f. 5 *du*, prep.  
and art. m. 6 *nombre*, n. m.  
7 *de ceux*. 8 *qui*, pron. m.  
and f. 9 *refuser*, v. 1. 10  
*de*, prep. 11 *se prosterner*,  
v. 1. 12 *devant*, prep. 13  
*idole*, n. f. 14 *accuser*, v.  
1. 15 *désobéissance*, n. f. 16

*amener*, v. 1. 17 *dans la*  
*rage & la fureur dont il é-*  
*toit agité*. 18 *leur*, pron.  
conj. pl. 19 *parler*, v. 1.  
20 *ainsi*, adv.

(C.) 1 *Vrai*, adj. 2 *que vous*  
*ne servez pas*. 3 *mon, ma*,  
pl. *mes*, pron. adj. 4 *Dieu*,  
plur. *ieux*, n. m. 5 *& que*  
*vous n'adorez pas*. 6 *la sta-*  
*tue d'or*. 7 *que*, pron. m.  
and f. 8 *élever*, v. 1. 9  
*maintenant*, adv. 10 *si*,  
conj. 11 *au moment que*  
*vous entendrez*. 12 *son*, n.  
m. 13 *tout*, plur. m. *ous*,  
adj. 14 *sorte*, n. f. 15 *in-*  
*strument*, plur. *ens*, n. m.  
16 *de musique*. 17 *vous*  
*seriez pardonnés*. 18 *mais*,

*if ye worship not, ye shall be cast into 19 the midst 19 of a burning furnace; and who 20 is that God 20 that 21 shall deliver 23 you 22 out 24 of 24 my hands 25?*

(D.) Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, answered 1 and said 2 to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we 3 are not careful 3 to 4 answer thee 5 in 6 this 7 matter 8. Our 9 God, whom 9 we serve 10, is able 11 to 12 deliver us 13 from 14 the burning furnace, and he will deliver us out of thy 15 hand, O king. But if 16 not 16, be 17 it known unto thee 17 that 18 we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which 19 thou hast set up.

(E.) Nebuchadnezzar hearing 1 these words 2, commanded 3 the 3 most mighty 5 men 4 that 6 were 6 in 7 his army 8 to 9 bind 10 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, and to cast them into a burning furnace. It was so 11 hot 11, that 12 the flame 13 of the fire 14 slew 15 the executioners 16. As 17 to the 17 three 18 young 19 men 19, they walked 20 in 21 the midst 21 of the fire and 22 received no hurt 22.

### THE DICTIONARY.

conj. 19 *au milieu*. 20 *qui est le dieu*. 21 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 22 *vous*, pron. conj. 23 *délivrer*, v. 1. 24 *de*, prep. 25 *main*, n. f.  
(D.) 1 *Répondre*, v. 6. 2 *dire*, v. 4. 3 *nous ne nous soucions pas*. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *te*, pron. conj. 6 *sur*, prep. 7 *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, plur. *ces*, pron. adj. 8 *sujet*, n. m. 9 *le dieu que*. 10 *servir*, v. 2. 11 *capable*, adj. 12 *de*, prep. 13 *nous*, pron. conj. pl. 14 *de*, prep. 15 *ton*, *ta*, pl. *tes*, pron. adj. 16 *s'il ne nous délivre pas*. 17

*sache*. 18 *que*, conj. 19 *que*, pron. m. and f.

(E.) 1 *Entendre*, v. 6. 2 *parole*, n. f. 3 *commander aux*, v. 1. prep. and art. pl. 4 *homme*, n. m. 5 *fort*, adj. 6 *qu'il y eut*. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *armée*, n. f. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *lier*, v. 1. 11 *si chaude*, 12 *que*, conj. 13 *flamme*, n. f. 14 *feu*, n. m. 15 *tuer*, v. 1. 16 *bourr-eau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 17 *quant aux*. 18 *trois*, adj. pl. 19 *jeunes gens*. 20 *marcher*, v. 1. 21 *au milieu*. 22 *sans recevoir aucun mal*.

(F.) Ne-



(F.) Nebuchadnezzar, surprized 1 at 2 this wonderful 4 event 3, came 5 near 5 to 6 the mouth 7 of the furnace, and said, *Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, ye servants 8 of 9 the most high God 9, come 10 forth 10 and come 11 hither 12.*

(G.) When 1 they came 2 out 2 of the furnace, there 3 was not 3 an hair 4 of 5 their head 5 singed 6, nor 7 were their coats changed 7, nor 8 the smell of fire had passed 8 on 9 them 10.

(H.) Then 1 Nebuchadnezzar said, *blessed 2 be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who 3 has sent 4 his angel 5 and delivered his servants 6 that 7 have 8 trusted 8 in 9 him 10, and have changed 11 the king's word 12, and yielded 13 their 14 bodies 15, that 16 they might not serve 16 nor 17 worship any 18 God, except 19 their own God 19.*

## THE DICTIONARY.

(F.) 1 *Surprendre*, v. 6. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *évènement*, plur. 4 *extraordinaire*, adj. 5 *s'approcher*, v. 1. 6 *de*, prep. 7 *embouchure*, n. f. 8 *serviteur*, n. m. 9 *du très-haut*. 10 *sortir*, v. 2. 11 *venir*, v. 2. 12 *ici*, adv.

(G.) 1 *Quand*, adv. 2 *sortir*, v. 2. 3 *il n'y eut pas*. 4 *cheveu*, pl. *eux*, n. m. 5 *de leur tête*. 6 *débrûlé*. 7 *leurs habits n'étoient point changés*. 8 *l'odeur du feu n'avoit point passé*. 9 *sur*, prep. 10 *eux*, pron. nom. plur.

(H.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *béni*, p. p. 3 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 4 *envoyer*, v. 1. 5 *ange*, n. m. 6 *serviteur*, n. m. 7 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 8 *avoir espérance*, v. aux. 3. and n. f. 9 *en*, prep. 10 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 11 *changer*, v. 1. 12 *parole*, n. f. 13 *abandonner*, v. 1. 14 *leur*, pron. adj. 15 *corps*, n. m. 16 *afin de ne servir*. 17 *ni*, conj. 18 *aucun*, adj. 19 *à l'exception de leur*.

(I.) Therefore 1 I make 2 a decree 3 that 4 every 5 man 5 who 6 speaks 6 any 7 thing amiss 7 against 8 the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, shall be cut 9 in pieces 9 and his house 10 destroyed 11, because 12 there 13 is no other God 13 that 14 can 15 deliver after 16 this sort 16.

(K.) Then the king promoted 1 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.

### The DICTIONARY.

- (I.) *C'est pourquoi*, conj. 7 10 *maison*, n. f. 11 *détruire*, faire, v. 5. 3 *édit*, n. m. 4 v. 4. 12 *parceque*, conj. 13 *par lequel il est ordonné que*. 14 *il n'y a point d'autre Dieu*. 5 *tout homme*. 6 *qui dira*. 14 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 7 *quelque chose de mal*. 8 15 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 16 *de contre*, prep. 9 *mettre en* cette man ère. *pièces*, v. 4. prep. and n. f. (K.) 1 *Avancer*, v. 1.

## XXI. Daniel 1 is cast 2 into 3 the 4 den of lions 4.

(A.) It 1 pleased 1 king 2 Darius 3 to 4 set 5 over 6 his kingdom 6 an 7 hundred and twenty 7 princes 8, and 9 over 10 these 10 three 11 presidents 12, of 13 whom 13 Daniel was the first 14. This 15 good 16 man 17 was preferred

### The DICTIONARY.

- 1 *Daniel*, n. m. 2 *jetter*, v. 1. 7 *cent vingt*. 8 *satrape*, n. m. 9 *et*, conj. 10 *au dessus d'eux*. 11 *trois*, adj. plur. 12 *gouverneur*, n. m. 13 *dont*, pron. m. and f. 14 *premier*, adj. 15 *ce*, cet, cette, pl. ces, pron. adj. 16 18 above
- (A.) 1 *Il plut au*. 2 *roi*, n. m. 3 *Darius*, n. m. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *établir*, v. 2. 6 *pour gouverner son royaume*.

18 above 19 the 19 presidents and princes, because 20 an  
21 excellent spirit was in him 21.

(B.) The presidents and princes sought 1 to 2 find 3 oc-  
casion 4 against 5 him 5 concerning 6 the kingdom 7;  
but 8 seeing 9 that 10 he was faithful 11, they 12 said 12  
to 13 one another 13, *we shall not find any 14 occasion 14*  
*against 15 Daniel except 16 we find it against him 16 con-*  
*cerning 17 the law 18 of his 19 God 20.*

(C.) They waited 1 upon 1 the king, and said 3 to 2  
him 2, *king Darius live 4 for 5 ever 6. We have consulted*  
*7 together 8 and made 9 a decree 10, that 11 whosoever 12*  
*shall ask 13 any 14 thing 14 of 15 any 15 god, or 16 man,*  
*save 17 of thee 17, O king, he shall be cast 18 into 19 the 20*  
*den of lions 20.*

(D.) Now 1, O king, establish 2 the decree 3, and sign 4  
the writing 5; that 6 it 7 be not changed 7, according 8 to 8

# The DICTIONARY.

*honnête*, adj. 17 *homme*, n.  
m. 18 *élever*, v. 1. 19 *au*  
*dessus des*. 20 *parceque*, conj.  
21 *il avoit beaucoup de ca-*  
*pacité.*

(B.) 1 *Tâcher*, v. 1. 2 *de*,  
prep. 3 *trouver*, v. 1. 4  
*quelque occasion*. 5 *de l'ac-*  
*cuser*. 6 *au sujet du*. 7 *roy-*  
*aume*, n. m. 8 *mais*, conj.  
9 *voir*, v. 3. 10 *que*, conj.  
11 *fidèle*, adj. 12 *ils se di-*  
*rent*. 13 *les uns aux autres*.  
14 *rien à dire*. 15 *contre*,  
prep. 16 *à moins que nous*  
*ne l'accusons*. 17 *sur*, prep.  
18 *l-oï*, pl. oix, n. f. 19  
*son*, *sa*, pl. *les*, pron. adj.  
20 *Dieu*, n. m.

(C.) 1 *Aller trouver*, v. 1. 1.  
2 *lui*, pron. conj. 3 *dire*,  
v. 4. 4 *vivre*, v. 4. 5 *pour*,  
prep. 6 *toujours*, adv. 7  
*consulter*, v. 1. 8 *ensemble*,  
adv. 9 *faire*, v. 5. 10 *édit*,  
n. m. 11 *par lequel il est*  
*ordonné que*. 12 *celui qui*.  
13 *demander*, v. 1. 14  
*quelque chose*. 15 *à quelque*.  
16 *ou*, conj. 17 *à moins que*  
*ce ne soit à toi*. 18 *jetter*,  
v. 1. 19 *dans*, prep. 20  
*la fosse aux lions*.

(D.) 1 *Maintenant*, adv. 2  
*confirmer*, v. 1. 3 *ordon-*  
*nance*, n. f. 4 *signer*, v. 1.  
5 *écrit*, n. m. 6 *afin que*,  
conj. 7 *on n'y change rien*.

M. 6 the



the law 9 of the Medes 10 and Persians 11, which 12 altereth 13 not 13.

(E.) Darius signed the decree; and as 1 soon as 1 Daniel heard 2 what 3 had been done 4, he went 5 into 6 his house 7; and his windows 8 being open 9 towards 10 Jerusalem 11, he kneeled 12 upon his knees 12 three 13 times a-day 13, prayed 14 to 14 his God and gave 15 him thanks 15 as 16 he had done before 17.

(F.) The presidents and princes, having found 2 him 1 praying 3 and 4 making supplication before 4 his God, went 5 to 5 the king, and said, *Daniel, O king, regardeth 6 not thee 6, nor 7 the 8 decree 8 that 9 thou hast signed, but maketh his petition 10 three times a-day.*

(G.) When 1 Darius heard these words 2, he 3 was fore displeased 3 with 4 himself 5, and 6 set his heart on Daniel to deliver him 6, but his presidents and princes insisting 7 that 8 the 9 law of the Medes and Persians was, that 9 no 10 decree, which the king establisheth, may be changed

### THE DICTIONARY.

8 *selon*, prep. 9 *l-oi*, pl. *oix*, n. f. 10 *Mède*, n. m. 11 *Perse*, n. m. 12 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 13 *est irrévocable*.

(E.) 1 *Desque*, conj. 2 *apprendre*, v. 6. 3 *ce que*, pron. nom. m. 4 *faire*, v. 5. 5 *entrer*, v. 1. 6 *dans*, prep. 7 *maison*, n. f. 8 *fenêtre*, n. f. 9 *ouvrir*, v. 2. 10 *vers*, prep. 11 *Jérusalem*, n. f. 12 *se mettre à genoux*, v. 4. prep. and n. m. 13 *trois fois par jour*. 14 *prier*, v. 1. 15 *rendre graces*, v. 6. and n. f. pl. 16 *comme*, conj. 17 *auparavant*, adv.

(F.) 1 *Le*, pron. conj. m. 2 *trouver*, v. 1. 3 *en prière*. 4 *en demandant des graces à*. 5 *aller trouver*, v. 1. 1. 6 *ne se soucie ni de toi*. 7 *ni*, conj. 8 *du décret*. 9 *que*, pron. m. and f. 10 *prière*, n. f.

(G.) 1 *Quand*, adv. 2 *parole*, n. f. 3 *il fut très-fâché*. 4 *contre*, prep. 5 *lui-même*, pron. nom. m. 6 *Et fit tous ses efforts pour délivrer Daniel*. 7 *soutenir*, v. 2. 8 *que*, conj. 9 *selon la loi des Medes Et des Perses*. 10 *on ne pouvoit faire de changement à aucun édit du Roi*. 10 il 10, he

10, he 11 commanded, and they brought Daniel 11, and 12 cast him into 12 the den of lions.

(H.) Now 1 the king spake 2 and said unto Daniel, thy 3 God 3, whom 4 thou servest 5 continually 6, will deliver 8 thee 7.

(I.) And 1 a stone was brought 1 and 2 laid 2 upon 3 the mouth 4 of the den 5; and the king sealed 7 it 6 with 8 his 9 own signet 9, and with the signet of his lords 10; that 11 the purpose might not be changed 11 concerning 12 Daniel.

(K.) Then 1 Darius went 2 to 2 his palace 3, passed 4 the night 5 fasting 6, neither 7 were instruments of musick brought before him 7, and his 8 sleep 8 went 9 from 10 him 11.

(L.) Very 1 early in the morning 1 he went to the den of lions, and with 2 a lamentable 4 voice 3 he said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant 5 of the living 6 God, is thy 7 God, whom 8 thou servest continually, able 9 to 10 deliver thee from 11 the 11 lions.

The DICTIONARY.

*ordonna qu'on lui amenât Daniel. 13 Et qu'on le jetât dans.*

(H.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *parler*, v. 1. 3 *le Dieu*. 4 *que*, pron. m. and f. 5 *servir*, v. 2. 6 *sans cesse*. 7 *te*, pron. conj. 8 *délivrer*, v. 1.

(I.) 1 *On apporta une pierre. 2 qui fut mise. 3 sur*, prep. 4 *embouchure*, n. f. 5 *fosse*, n. f. 6 *la*, pron. conj. f. 7 *sceller*, v. 1. 8 *de*, prep. 9 *son sceau*. 10 *satrape*, n. m. 11 *afin que rien ne fût changé. 12 touchant*, prep.

(K.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *aller* à, v. 1. and prep. 3 *palais*, n. m. 4 *passer*, v. 1. 5 *nuit*, n. f. 6 *sans prendre de nourriture. 7 on ne lui fit point venir les instrumens de musique. 8 le sommeil. 9 s'éloigner*, v. 1. 10 *de*, prep. 11 *lui*, pron. nom. m.

(L.) 1 *Le lendemain de grand matin. 2 de*, prep. 3 *voix*, n. f. 4 *triste*, adj. 5 *serviteur*, n. m. 6 *vivant*, adj. 7 *ton*, pron. adj. m. 8 *que*, pron. m. and f. 9 *capable*, adj. 10 *de*, prep. 11 *des*, prep. and art. pl.

(M.) Daniel

(M.) Daniel answered 1, O king live for ever. My 2 God has sent 3 his angel 4, and hath shut 5 the lions mouths 6 that 7 they have not hurt me 7: for 8 as much as 8 before 10 him 11 innocency 9 was found in me 9; and also 12 before thee, O king, have 13 I done no hurt 13.

(N.) Daniel having been taken 1 out 1 of the den, the king ordered 2 his accusers 4 to 3 be thrown into it 3, which 5 was immediately 7 executed 6, and the lions 8 brake 9 all 10 their bones 11 in 9 pieces 9, the 12 moment 12 they 13 came at the 13 bottom 14 of the den.

### The DICTIONARY.

(M.) 1 Répondre, v. 6. 2 mon, pron. adj. m. 3 en-  
voyer, v. 1. 4 ange, n. m.  
5 fermer, v. 1. 6 gueule,  
n. f. 7 de sorte, qu'ils ne  
m'ont fait aucun mal. 8  
parceque. 9 j'ai été trouvé  
innocent. 10 devant, prep.  
11 lui, pron. nom. m. 12  
même, conj. 13 je n'ai fait  
aucun mal.

(N.) 1 Retirer, v. 1. 2 or-  
donner, v. 1. 3 qu'on y jettât.  
4 accusateur, n. m. 5 ce  
qui, pron. nom. m. 6 ex-  
écuter, v. 1. 7 sur le champ.  
8 lion, n. m. 9 mettre en  
pièces, v. 4. prep. and n. f.  
pl. 10 t-out, plur. m. ous,  
adj. 11 as, n. m. 12 au  
moment. 13 qu'ils arriva-  
rent au. 14 fond, n. m.

XXII. The wise 1 men 1 come 2 to 2 Christ 3  
and 4 worship 6 him 5.

(A.) When 1 Jesus was born 1 in 2 Bethlem 3 of Judea  
4, in 5 the days 5 of king 6 Herod 7, there 8 came wise

### The DICTIONARY.

1 Mage, n. m. 2 venir trou-  
ver, v. 2. 1. 3 Jésus-  
Christ, n. m. 4 Et, conj.  
5 le, pron. conj. m. 6 a-  
dorer, v. 1.

(A.) 1 Jésus étant né. 2 à,  
prep. 3 Béthléem, n. m. 4  
Judée, n. f. 5 au tems. 6  
roi, n. m. 7 Hérode, n. m.  
8 des mages vinrent. 9 de,  
men.



men 8 from 9 the east 10 to 11 Jerusalem 12, saying 13, where 14 is he 15 that 16 is born 17 king of the Jews 18 ? for 19 we have seen 20 his 21 star 22 in 23 the east, and are come 24 to 25 worship him 26.

(B.) When 1 Herod had heard these things 1, he was troubled 2, and all 3 Jerusalem 3 with 4 him 5 ; and 6 when 7 he had gathered 7 all the chief 8 priests 9 and scribes 10 of the people 11, he demanded 13 of 12 them 12 where Christ 14 should 15 be born 15.

(C.) And they said unto 1 him 1, in 2 Bethlem of Judea 3, for 4 thus it is written 4 ; and thou 5, Bethlem, in 6 the land 7 of Judah 8, art not the least 9 amongst 10 the 11 princes 11 of 12 Juda 12, for out 13 of thee 13 shall come 14 a governor 15 that 16 shall rule 17 my 18 people 19 Israel 20.

(D.) Then 1 Herod, when 2 he had privily called the wise men 2, enquired 3 diligently 4 what 5 time 5 the 6

THE DICTIONARY.

prep. 10 *orient*, n. m. 11

à, prep. 12 *Jérusalem*, n.

f. 13 *dire*, v. 4. 14 *où*,

adv. 15 *celui*, pron. nom.

m. 16 *qui*, pron. m. and

f. 17 *naître*, v. 5. 18 *juif*,

n. m. 19 *car*, conj. 20

*voir*, v. 3. 21 *son, sa*, pl.

*ses*, pron. adj. 22 *étoile*, n.

f. 23 *en*, prep. 24 *venir*,

v. 2. 25 *pour*, prep. 26 *le*,

pron. conj. m.

(B.) 1 *Hérode ayant entendu*

*ces choses*. 2 *troubler*, v. 1.

3 *Et toute la ville de Jérusalem*.

4 *avec*, prep. 5

*lui*, pron. nom. m. 6 *Et*,

conj. 7 *ayant assemblé*. 8

*princip-al*, plur. m. *aux*,

adj. 9 *sacrificateur*, n. m.

10 *scribe*, n. m. 11 *peuple*,

n. m. 12 *leur*, pron. conj.

plur. 13 *démander*, v.

1. 14 *le Christ*. 15 *devoit*

*naître*.

(C.) 1 *Lui*, pron. conj. 2 *à*,

prep. 3 *Judée*, n. f. 4 *car*

*il est écrit*. 5 *toi*, pron. nom.

m. and f. 6 *dans*, prep. 7

*terre*, n. f. 8 *Juda*, n. m.

9 *moindre*, adj. 10 *entre*,

prep. 11 *les premières villes*.

12 *de Juda*. 13 *de toi*. 14

*sortir*, v. 2. 15 *conducteur*,

n. m. 16 *qui*, pron. m.

and f. 17 *gouverner*, v. 1.

18 *mon, ma*, pl. *mes*, pron.

adj. 19 *peuple*, n. m. 20

*Israël*, n. m.

(D.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *ayant*

*fait venir en secret les mages*.

3 *s'enquérir*, v. 1. 4 *exacte-*

*star*

# 256 EXERCISES upon the

star appeared to them 6; and he sent 8 them 7 to Beth-  
 lelem, and said, go 9, and search 10 diligently 11 for 12 the  
 young child 12; and when 13 you have found him 13, bring  
 14 me word again 14, that 15 I 16 may go, and worship  
 him also 16.

(E.) When 1 they had heard 2 the king, they departed  
 3; and the star which 4 they 5 saw 5 in the east, went 6  
 before 7 them 8, till 9 it came and stood 9 over 10 where  
 10 the 11 young child was 11.

(F.) When they saw 1 the star, they 2 rejoiced with ex-  
 ceeding great joy 2; and when 3 they were come 3 into 4  
 the house 5, they saw the young child with Mary 6 his  
 mother 7, and fell 8 down 8 and worshipped him; and 9  
 when they had opened 9 their 10 treasures 11, they pre-  
 sented 13 unto 12 him 12 gold 14, frankincense 15, and  
 myrrh 16.

(G.) And being warned 1 in 2 a dream 2, that 3 they  
 should not return 3 to 4 Herod, they departed 5 into 6 their  
 7 own 7 country 8 another 9 way 9.

## The DICTIONARY.

*ment*, adv. 5 *du tems que*.  
 6 *l'étoile leur étoit apparue*.  
 7 *les*, pron. conj. pl. 8 *en-  
 voyer*, v. 1. 9 *aller*, v. 1.  
 10 *s'informer*, v. 1. 11 *avec  
 soin*. 12 *du petit enfant*.  
 13 *quand vous l'aurez  
 trouvé*. 14 *venez me le dire*.  
 15 *afin que*, conj. 16 *j'aïlle  
 aussi l'adorer*.

(E.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *en-  
 tendre*, v. 6. 3 *s'en aller*,  
 v. 1. 4 *que*, pron. m. and  
 f. 5 *ils avoient vûe*. 6  
*marcher*, v. 1. 7 *devant*,  
 prep. 8 *eux*, pron. nom.  
 pl. 9 *jusqu'à ce qu'elle  
 s'arrêta*. 10 *sur le lieu où*.  
 11 *étoit le petit enfant*.

(F.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *ils en  
 eurent une fort grande joie*.  
 3 *étant entrés*. 4 *dans*, prep.  
 5 *maison*, n. f. 6 *Marie*,  
 n. f. 7 *mère*, n. f. 8 *se  
 prosterner*, v. 1. 9 *Et après  
 avoir ouvert*. 10 *leur*, pron.  
 adj. 11 *trésor*, n. m. 12  
*lui*, pron. conj. 13 *pré-  
 senter*, v. 1. 14 *or*, n. m.  
 15 *encens*, n. m. 16 *mirrhe*,  
 n. f.

(G.) 1 *Avertir*, v. 2. 2 *en  
 songe*. 3 *de ne pas retourner*.  
 4 *vers*, prep. 5 *se retirer*,  
 v. 1. 6 *dans*, prep. 7  
*leur*, pron. adj. m. and f.  
 8 *pays*, n. m. 9 *par un  
 autre chemin*.

**XXIII. Christ 1 fasteth 2, is tempted 3, and 4  
overcometh 6.**

(A.) Jesus 1 was led 2 up 2 of 3 the spirit 4 into 5 the wilderness 6, to 7 be tempted of 8 the devil 9; and when 10 he had fasted 11 forty 12 days 13 and forty nights 14, he 15 was afterwards an hungred 15.

(B.) Then 1 the tempter 2 came 3 to 4 him 5, and said 6, if 7 thou be the son 8 of God 9, command 10 that 11 these 12 stones 13 be 14 made 14 bread 15.

(C.) Jesus answered 1, it 2 is written 3, man 4 shall not live 5 by 6 bread 6 alone 7, but 8 by 9 every 10 word 11 that 12 proceedeth 13 out 13 of 13 the mouth 14 of God.

(D.) Then the devil took 2 him 1 up 2 into 3 the holy 4 city 5, and sat 6 him on 7 the pinnacle 8 of the temple

**The DICTIONARY.**

1 *Jésus-Christ*, n. m. 2 *jeuner*,  
v. 1. 3 *tenter*, v. 1. 4 *Ê*,  
conj. 5 *remporter la vic-*  
*toire*, v. 1. art. and n. f.

(A.) 1 *Jésus*, n. m. 2 *con-*  
*duire*, v. 4. 3 *par*, prep.  
4 *esprit*, n. m. 5 *dans*, prep.  
6 *désert*, n. m. 7 *pour*, prep.  
8 *par*, prep. 9 *diable*, n. m.  
10 *quand*, adv. 11 *jeuner*,  
v. 1. 12 *quarante*, adj. pl.  
und. 13 *jour*, n. m. 14  
*nuit*, n. f. 15 *enfin il eut*  
*faim*.

(B.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *tenta-*  
*teur*, n. m. 3 *s'approcher*,  
v. 1. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *lui*,  
pron. nom. m. 6 *dire*, v. 4.  
7 *si*, conj. 8 *fi*, n. m. 9

*Dieu*, n. m. 10 *ordonner*,  
v. 1. 11 *que*, conj. 12 *ce*,  
*cette*, pl. *ces*, pron. adj. 13  
*pierre*, n. f. 14 *se changer*,  
v. 1. 15 *en pain*.

(C.) 1 *Répondre*, v. 6. 2 *il*,  
pron. subj. m. 3 *écrire*, v.  
4. 4 *l'homme*. 5 *vivre*, v.  
4. 6 *de pain*. 7 *seul*, adj.  
8 *mais*, conj. 9 *de*, prep.  
10 *t-out*, plur. m. *ous*, adj.  
11 *parole*, n. f. 12 *qui*,  
pron. m. and f. 13 *sortir*  
*de*, v. 2. and prep. 14  
*bouche*, n. f.

(D.) 1 *Le*, pron. conj. m. 2  
*transporter*, v. 1. 3 *dans*,  
prep. 4 *saint*, adj. 5 *citée*,  
n. f. 6 *mettre*, v. 4. 7 *sur*,  
9, and



9, and said unto him, *if thou be the son of God, cast* 10 *thyself* 10 *down* 11; *for* 12 *it is written, he* 13 *shall give his* angels charge concerning thee 13, and in 16 their hands 17 they shall bear 15 thee 14 up 15, lest 18 thou 19 dash thy foot 19 against 20 a 21 stone 21.

(E.) Jesus said to him, *it is written again* 1, *thou shalt not tempt the Lord* 2 *thy* 3 *God*.

(F.) Again 1 the devil took him up into 2 an exceeding 3 high 4 mountain 5, shewed 6 him all 7 the kingdoms 8 of the earth 9 and their glory 10, and said to him, *I will give* 11 *thee all these things* 12, *if thou wilt fall* 13 *down* 13 and worship 15 me 14.

(G.) Jesus said to him, get 1 thee 1 hence 2, *satan* 3; *for it is written, thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and* 4 *thou shalt only serve him* 4. Then 5 the devil left 6 him; and the angels 7 came 8 and ministered 10 unto 9 him 9

### THE DICTIONARY.

prep. 8 *pinnacle*, n. m. 9 *temple*, n. m. 10 *se jeter*, v. 1. 11 *en bas*. 12 *car*, conj. 13 *il commandera à ses anges d'avoir soin de toi*. 14 *te*, pron. conj. 15 *porter*, v. 1. 16 *dans*, prep. 17 *main*, n. f. 18 *de peur*, conj. 19 *que tu ne te heurtes le pied*. 20 *contre*, prep. 21 *quelque pierre*.

(E.) 1 *Encore*, adv. 2 *seigneur*, n. m. 3 *ton*, pron. adj. m.

(F.) 1 *Ensuite*, adv. 2 *sur*,

prep. 3 *très*, adv. 4 *haut*, adj. 5 *montagne*, n. f. 6 *montrer*, v. 1. 7 *t-out*, pl. m. ous, adj. 8 *royaume*, n. m. 9 *terre*, n. f. 10 *gloire*, n. f. 11 *donner*, v. 1. 12 *chose*, n. f. 13 *se prosterner*, v. 1. 14 *me*, pron. conj. 15 *adorer*, v. 1.

(G.) 1 *Retire-toi*. 2 *d'ici*. 3 *Satan*, n. m. 4 *Et tu ne serviras que lui seul*. 5 *alors*, adv. 6 *quitter*, v. 1. 7 *ange*, n. m. 8 *venir*, v. 2. 9 *le*, pron. conj. m. 10 *servir*, v. 2.

XXIV. *John* 1 *Baptist* 1 *is beheaded* 2.

(A.) Herod 1 the tetrarch 2, hearing 3 of the fame 4 of Jesus 5, said 6 to his 7 servants 8, *this* 9 *is John the Baptist* 9, *whom* 10 *I have beheaded*; *he is risen* 11 *from* 12 *the* 12 *dead* 13, *therefore* 14 *mighty* 15 *works* 16 *do* 17, *show forth themselves* 17 *in* 18 *him* 19.

(B.) For 1 Herod had laid 2 hold 2 on 2 John 3, bound 5 him 4, and 6 put 7 him in 8 prison 8 for 9 Herodias 10 sake 9, his brother 12 Philip's 13 wife 11. For John had said unto 14 him 14, *it* 15 *is not lawful for thee* 15 *to* 16 *have* 18 *her* 17.

(C.) He 1 would have been glad 1 to 2 put 3 him to 4 death 4, but 5 he feared 6 the multitude 7, because 8 they counted 9 him as 10 a prophet 11.

(D.) When 1 Herod's birth-day was kept 1, the daughter 2 of Herodias danced 3 before 4 the 5 assembly 5, and

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jean-Baptiste*, n. m. 2 *décapiter*, v. 1.

(A.) 1 *Hérode*, n. m. 2 *tétrarque*, n. m. 3 *entendre parler*, v. 6. 1. 4 *réputation*, n. f. 5 *Jésus*, n. m. 6 *dire*, v. 4. 7 *son*, *sa*, pl. *sés*, pron. adj. 8 *serviteur*, n. m. 9 *c'est Jean Baptiste*. 10 *que*, pron. m. and f. 11 *ressusciter*, v. 1. 12 *des*, prep. and art. 13 *mort*, n. m. 14 *c'est pourquoi*. 15 *grand*, adj. 16 *merveille*, n. f. 17 *se montrer*, v. 1. 18 *en*, prep. 19 *lui*, pron. nom. m.

(B.) 1 *Car*, conj. 2 *se saisir de*, v. 2. 3 *Jean*, n. m. 4 *le*, pron. conj. m. 5 *lier*, v. 1.

6 *Et*, conj. 7 *mettre*, v. 4. 8 *en prison*. 9 *à cause de*, prep. 10 *Hérodias*, n. f. 11 *femme*, n. f. 12 *frère*, n. m. 13 *Philippe*, n. m. 14 *lui*, pron. conj. 15 *il ne s'est pas permis*. 16 *de*, prep. 17 *le*, *la*, pl. *les*, pron. conj. 18 *avoir*, v. 3.

(C.) 1 *Il auroit été bien aisé*. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *mettre*, v. 4. 4 *à mort*. 5 *mais*, conj. 6 *craindre*, v. 6. 7 *peuple*, n. m. 8 *parceque*, conj. 9 *regarder*, v. 1. 10 *comme*. 11 *prophète*, n. m.

(D.) 1 *Comme on célébroit le jour de la naissance d'Hérode*. 2 *filles*, n. f. 3 *danse*, v. 1. 4 *de-vant*, prep. 5 *les con-pleased*

pleased 6 Herod. Whereupon 7 he promised 8 with 9 an oath 9 to 10 give 12 her 11 whatsoever 13 she would ask 14.

(E.) And 1 she 2 being before instructed 2 of 3 her mother 4, said, *give me 5 here 6 John Baptist's head 7 in 8 a charger 9.*

(F.) And the king 1 was sorry 2; nevertheless 3 for 4 the oath-sake 4, and 5 them 5 who 6 sat 7 with 9 him at 8 meat 8, he commanded 10 it 11 to be given her 11. And 12 he sent, and beheaded 12 John in the prison 13.

(G.) And his head was brought 1 in a charger, and given to the damsel 2, who 3 carried 4 it to her mother.

(H.) And his disciples 1 came 2, took 3 up 3 the body 4, and buried 5 it.

### The DICTIONARY.

*vives.* 6 *plaire à*, v. 5.  
and prep. 7 *de sorte que*,  
conj. 8 *promettre*, v. 4. 9  
*avec serment.* 10 *de*, prep.  
11 *lui*, pron. conj. m. and  
f. 12 v. 1. 13 *tout ce que*.  
14 *demander*, v. 1.

(E.) 1 *Or*, conj. 2 *cette fille*  
*étant auparavant instruite.*  
3 *par*, prep. 4 *mère*, n. f.  
5 *moi*, pron. conj. 6 *ici*,  
adv. 7 *tête*, n. f. 8 *dans*,  
prep. 9 *bassin*, n. m.

(F.) 1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *fâché*,  
adj. 3 *cependant*, conj. 4

*accuse du serment.* 5 *de*  
*ceux.* 6 *qui*, pron. m. and  
f. 7 *étaient.* 8 *à table.* 9  
*avec*, prep. 10 *commander*,  
v. 1. 11 *qu'on la lui don-*  
*nât.* 12 *il envoya dé-*  
*capiter.* 13 *prison*, n. f.

(G.) 1 *Apporter*, v. 1. 2 *de-*  
*moiselle*, n. f. 3 *qui*, pron.  
m. and f. 4 *porter*, v. 1.

(H.) 1 *Disciple*, n. m. 2  
*venir*, v. 2. 3 *emporter*,  
v. 1. 4 *corps*, n. m. 5  
*enterrer*, v. 1.



XXV. Five 1 thousand 1 fed 2 with 3 five 4 loaves 5 and 6 two 7 fishes 8.

(A.) When 1 Jesus heard 1 that 2 John 3 had been beheaded 4, he went 5 into 6 a desert 7 place 7, where 8 a great 9 multitude 10 followed 12 him 11 on 13 foot 13 out 14 of 14 the 14 cities 15. As 16 there 17 were 17 amongst 18 them 19 several 20 sick 21, he was moved 22 with 23 compassion 24 toward 25 them 26, and healed 28 them 27.

(B.) When 1 it was evening 1, his 2 disciples 3 came 4 to 5 him 5, saying 6, *this 7 is a desert place 7, and the time 8 is now 9 past 10; send 11 the 12 multitude 12 away 11 that 13 they may go 14 into 15 the villages 16, and 17 buy themselves 17 victuals 18.*

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 Cinq mille personnes. 2 ras-  
sasié, p. p. 3 avec, prep. 4  
cinq, adj. pl. und. 5 pain,  
n. m. 6 &, conj. 7 deux,  
adj. pl. 8 poisson, n. m.

(A.) 1 Jésus ayant appris. 2  
que, conj. 3 Jean, n. m. 4  
décapiter, v. 1. 5 aller, v.  
1. 6 dans, prep. 7 désert,  
n. m. 8 où, adv. 9 grand,  
adj. 10 multitude, n. f. 11  
le, pron. conj. 12 suivre,  
v. 4. 13 à pied. 14 des,  
prep. and art. 15 ville, n.  
f. 16 comme, conj. 17 il y  
avait. 18 parmi, prep. 19  
eux, pron. nom. plur. 20  
plusieurs, adj. pl. m. and f.  
21 malade, n. m. 22 tou-

cher, v. 1. 23 de, prep.  
24 compassion, n. f. 25 en-  
vers, prep. 26 eux, pron.  
nom. m. plur. 27 le, la,  
plur. les, pron. conj. 28  
guérir, v. 2.

(B.) 1 Comme il se faisoit tard.  
2 son, sa, plur. ses, pron.  
adj. 3 disciple, n. m. 4  
venir, v. 2. 5 le trouver.  
6 dire, v. 4. 7 cet endroit-ci  
est désert. 8 tems, n. m. 9  
maintenant, adv. 10 passer,  
v. 1. 11 renvoyer, v. 1. 12  
cette multitude de gens. 13  
afin que, conj. 14 aller, v.  
1. 15 dans, prep. 16 vil-  
lage, n. m. 17 pour s'achet-  
ter. 18 vivres, n. m. pl.

(C.) Jesus

(C.) Jesus said to 1 them 1, they need 2 not depart 3, give 4 ye them 5 to 6 eat 7. They said to him, we 8 have here but 8 five 9 loaves and two fishes. He said, bring 10 them hither 12 to 11 me 11.

(D.) And he commanded 1 the multitude to 2 sit 3 down 3 on 4 the grass 5, took 6 the five loaves and the two fishes, and looking 7 up 7 to 8 heaven 9, he blessed 10, brake 11, and gave them to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude.

(E.) And they did eat 1, and were filled 2; and they took 3 up 3 of 7 the fragments that remained 7 twelve 4 baskets 5 full 6; and they 8 that 9 had eaten 10 were about 11 five thousand 12 men 13, besides 14 women 15 and children 16.

### The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 *Leur*, pron. conj. 2 *avoir besoin*, v. aux. 3. and n. m. 3 *de s'en aller*. 4 *donner*, v. 1. 5 *leur*, pron. conj. 6 *à*, prep. 7 *manger*, v. 1. 8 *nous n'avons ici que*. 9  *cinq*, adj. plur. und. 10 *apporter*, v. 1. 11 *moi*, pron. conj. 12 *ici*, adv.

(D.) 1 *Commander à*, v. 1. and prep. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *s'asseoir*, v. 3. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *herbe*, n. f. 6 *prendre*, v. 6. 7 *lever les yeux*, v. 1. art. and n. m. 8 *vers*,

prep. 9 *ciel*, n. m. 10 *bénir*, v. 2. 11 *rompre*, v. 6.

(E.) 1 *Manger*, v. 1. 2 *raffasser*, v. 1. 3 *ramasser*, v. 1. 4 *douze*, adj. pl. und. 5 *panier*, n. m. 6 *plein*, adj. 7 *des morceaux qui restoient*. 8 *ceux*, pron. nom. plur. and m. 9 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 10 *manger*, v. 1. 11 *environ*, adv. 12 *mille*, adj. 13 *homme*, n. m. 14 *sans*, prep. 15 *femme*, n. f. 16 *enf-ant*, plur. ans, n. m.

XXVI. *Christ* 1 *teacheth* 2 *out* 3 *of* 3 *Peter's* 5 *ship* 4. *A miraculous* 7 *draught* 6 *of fishes* 8.

(A.) As 1 the people 2 pressed 3 upon 3 Christ, to 4 hear 5 the word 6 of God 7, he stood 8 by 9 the lake 9 of Gennafereth 10, and 11 saw 12 two 13 ships standing 14 by the lake 14; but 15 the fishermen 16 were gone 18 out 18 of 17 them 17, and were washing 19 their 20 nets 21.

(B.) He entered 1 into 2 one 3 of the ships, which 4 was 5 Simon's, and prayed 7 him 6 that 8 he would thrust out 8 a 9 little 9 from the land 10; and he sat 11 down 11, and taught 12 the people out of the ship.

(C.) Now 1 when 2 he had left speaking 2, he said 3 to Simon, *launch* 4 *out* 4 *into* 5 *the deep* 5, and let 6 down 6 your 7 nets 8 for 9 a draught 9. Simon said to him, *master* 10, *we have toiled* 11 *all* 12 *the night* 13, and have

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus-Christ*, n. m. 2 *enseigner*, v. 1. 3 *du*, prep. and art. m. 4 *batt-eau*, pl. eaux, n. m. 5 *pierre*, n. m. 6 *pêche*, n. f. 7 *miracul-eux*, euse, adj. 8 *poisson*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Gomme*, conj. 2 *peuple*, n. m. 3 *presser*, v. 1. 4 *pour*, prep. 5 *entendre*, v. 6. 6 *parole*, n. f. 7 *Dieu*, n. m. 8 *se tenir*, v. 2. 9 *sur le bord du lac*. 10 *Génézareth*, n. m. 11 *Et*, conj. 12 *appercevoir*, v. 3. 13 *deux*, adj. pl. 14 *qui étoient près du rivage*. 15 *or*, conj. 16 *pêcheur*, n. m. 17 *en*, pron. conj. 18 *sortir*, v. 2. 19

*laver*, v. 1. 20 *leur*, pron. adj. 21 *filet*, n. m.

(B.) 1 *Entrer*, v. 1. 2 *dans*, prep. 3 *un*, adj. 4 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 5 *appartenir à*, v. 2. and prep. 6 *le*, pron. conj. m. 7 *prier*, v. 1. 8 *de l'éloigner*. 9 *un peu*. 10 *rivage*, n. m. 11 *s'asseoir*, v. 3. 12 *enseigner*, v. 1.

(C.) 1 *Et*, conj. 2 *quand il eût cessé de parler*. 3 *dire*, v. 4. 4 *faites avancer le bateau*. 5 *en pleine eau*. 6 *jetter*, v. 1. 7 *voire*, pl. vos, pron. adj. 8 *filer*, n. m. 9 *pour pêcher*. 10 *maître*, n. m. 11 *travailler*, v. 1. taken



taken 15 nothing 14; nevertheless 16 at 17 thy 18 word 19  
I will let down the net 20.

(D.) When 1 they had done 2 this 3, they enclosed 4  
a great 5 multitude 6 of fishes; and their net brake 7.  
And they beckoned 8 to their partners 9 who 10 were in  
the other 11 ship, that 12 they should come and help  
them 12. They came 13 and filled 14 both 15 the ships  
15, so 16 that 16 they began 17 to 18 sink 19.

(E.) When Simon Peter saw 1 it 1, he fell 2 down 2 at  
3 Jesus's knees 4, saying, depart 5 from 6 me 7, O Lord 8,  
for 9 I am a 10 sinful man 10. For he was astonished 11  
at 12 the draught 12 of the fishes which 13 they had taken,  
as 14 well as 14 those 15 who 16 were with 17 him 18.

(F.) Jesus said to Simon, fear 1 not; for henceforth 2  
thou shalt catch 3 men 4; and when they had brought 5  
their ships to 6 land 7, they forsook 8 all 9, and followed  
11 him 10.

### The DICTIONARY.

12 t-out, plur. m. *ous*, adj.

13 nuit, n. f. 14 rien, n. m.

15 prendre, v. 6. 16 ce-

pendant, conj. 17 sur, prep.

18 ton, *ta*, plur. *tes*, pron.

adj. 19 parole, n. f. 20

filet, n. m.

(D.) 1 Quana, conj. 2 faire,

v. 5. 3 cela, pron. nom. m.

4 prendre, v. 6. 5 grand,

adj. 6 quantité, n. f. 7

rompre, v. 6. 8 faire signe,

v. 5. and n. m. 9 camarade,

n. m. 10 qui, pron. m.

and f. 11 autre, adj. 12

de venir les aider. 13 ve-

nir, v. 2. 14 remplir, v. 2.

15 les deux batteaux. 16

de sorte que, conj. 17 com-

mencer, v. 1. 18 à, prep.

19 s'enfoncer, v. 1.

(E.) 1 Vit cela. 2 se jeter, v.

1. 3 aux, prep. and art. 4

gen-cu, plur. *oux*, n. m. 5

se retirer, v. 1. 6 de, prep.

7 moi, pron. nom. 8 sei-

gneur, n. m. 9 car, conj.

10 un pêcheur. 11 étonner,

v. 1. 12 à la vue. 13 que,

pron. m. and f. 14 aussi

bien que. 15 ceux, pron.

nom. pl. and m. 16 qui,

pron. m. and f. 17 avec,

prep. 18 lui, pron. nom.

m.

(F.) 1 Craindre, v. 6. 2 à

l'avenir. 3 prendre, v. 6.

4 homme, n. m. 5 amener,

v. 1. 6 à, prep. 7 terre,

n. f. 8 abandonner, v. 1.

9 tout, n. m. 10 le, pron.

conj. m. 11 suivre, v. 4.

XXVII. *The Centurion's* 2 *faith* 1. *Christ* 3  
*healeth* 4 *his* 5 *servant* 6.

(A.) Christ having entered 1 Capernaum 2, a centurion 3, whose 4 servant was sick 5 and 6 ready 7 to 8 die 9, sent 10 to 11 him 12 the elders 13 of the Jews 14, beseeching 16 him 15 that 17 he would come and heal 17 his servant.

(B.) When 1 these 2 men 3 came 4 to 5 Jesus, they besought 7 him 6 instantly 6, saying 8, that 9 *he was worthy for whom he should do this* 9; for 10 *he loveth* 11 *our* 12 *nation* 13, and *he hath built* 15 *us* 14 *a synagogue* 16.

(C.) Then 2 Jesus went 1 with 3 them 4; and when he was not far 5 from the house 5, the centurion sent friends 7 to 6 him 6, saying to him, *trouble* 8 *not thyself* 8, for 9 *I* 10 *am not worthy that thou shouldest enter* 10 *under* 11 *my roof* 11. *Wherefore* 12 *neither thought I myself worthy* 12 to 13

THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Foi*, n. f. 2 *centurion*, n. m.

3 *Jésus-Christ*, n. m. 4

*guérir*, v. 2. 5 *son*, pron.

adj. m. 6 *domestique*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Entrer*, v. 1. 2 *dans*

*Capernaüm*. 3 *centurion*, n.

m. 4 *dont*, pron. m. and f.

5 *malade*, adj. 6 *Et*, conj.

7 *prêt*, adj. 8 *à*, prep. 9

*mourir*, v. 2. 10 *envoyer*,

v. 1. 11 *vers*, prep. 12

*lui*, pron. nom. m. *ancien*,

n. m. 14 *Juif*, n. m. 15

*le*, pron. conj. m. 16 *prier*,

v. 1. 17 *de venir guérir*.

(B.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *ces*,

pron. adj. pl. 3 *gens*, n. m.

pl. 4 *arriver*, v. 1. 5 *près*

*de*. 6 *le*, pron. conj. m. 7

*prier instamment*, v. 1. and

adv. 8 *dire*, v. 4. 9 *qu'il mé-*

*ritoit qu'on lui rendit ce ser-*

*vice*. 10 *car*, conj. 11 *ai-*

*mer*, v. 1. 12 *notre*, pl. *nos*,

pron. adj. 13 *nation*, n. f. 14

*nous*, pron. conj. pl. 15 *bâ-*

*tir*, v. 2. 16 *synagogue*, n. f.

(C.) 1 *Aller*, v. 1. 2 *donc*,

conj. 3 *avec*, prep. 4 *eux*,

pron. nom. pl. and m. 5

*loin de la maison*. 6 *lui*,

pron. conj. 7 *ami*, n. m.

8 *s'incommoder*, v. 1. 9 *car*,

conj. 10 *je ne mérite pas*

*que tu entres*. 11 *dans ma*

*maison*. 12 *c'est pourquoi*

N

come

come 14 unto 15 thee 15 ; but 16 say 17 in 17 a word 18,  
and my 19 servant 20 shall be healed 21.

(D.) When 1 Jesus heard these things 1, he marvelled 3  
at 3 him 2, and said to the people 4 that 5 followed 6 him,  
I say unto 7 you 7, I have not found 8 so 9 great 10 faith 11,  
no 12 not in Israel 12.

(E.) And they 1 that 2 were 3 sent 3, returning 4 to  
the house 5, found the servant whole 8, that 6 had been  
sick 7.

### The DICTIONARY.

*aussi* je ne me suis pas jugé  
digne. 13 *de*, prep. 14  
*venir*, v. 2. 15 *te trouver*.  
16 *mais*, conj. 17 *dire*, v.  
4. 18 *parole*, n. f. 19 *mon*,  
pron. m. sing. 20 *domestique*, n. m. 21 *guérir*,  
v. 2.

(D.) 1 *Jésus ayant entendu*  
*ces choses*. 2 *le*, pron. conj.  
3 *admirer*, v. 1. 4 *peuple*,  
n. m. 5 *qui*, pron. m. and

f. 6 *suiivre*, v. 4. 7 *vous*,  
pron. conj. 8 *trouver*, v.  
1. 9 *aussi*, conj. 10 *grand*,  
adj. 11 *foi*, n. f. 12 *même*  
*en Israël*.

(E.) 1 *Ceux*, pron. nom. pl.  
and m. 2 *qui*, pron. m.  
and f. 3 *avoient été en-*  
*voyés*. 4 *retourner*, v. 1.  
5 *maison*, n. f. 6 *qui*, pron.  
m. and f. 7 *malade*, adj.  
8 *guéri*, p. p.

## XXVIII. *Jairus's* 2 daughter 1 raised 3 from the dead 3.

(A.) A 1 ruler of the synagogue 1, called 2 *Jairus*, came  
3 to 3 *Jesus*, fell 4 down 4 at 5 his 6 feet 7, and 8 besought

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Fille*, n. f. 2 *Jairus*, n. m.  
3 *ressuscité*. p. p.

(A.) 1 *Un chef de synagogue*.  
2 *nommé*, p. p. 3 *venir*  
*trouver*, v. 2. 1. 4 *se jeter*,

v. 1. 5 *à*, prep. 6 *son*, *sa*,  
pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 7 *pied*,  
n. m. 8 *Et*, conj. 9 *le*,  
pron. conj. m. 10 *prier*, v.  
1. 11 *de vouloir bien venir*.

10 him



10 him 9 that 11 he would come 11 into 12 his house 13, to 14 cure 15 his only 17 daughter 16, who 18 was a dying 18.

(B.) Jesus consented 1 to 2 go 3 with 4 him 5 ; and as 6 they went 7 along 7, there 8 came 8 one 9 from 10 the ruler of the synagogue 10, saying 11 to his master 12, *thy 13 daughter is dead 14, trouble 15 not the master.*

(C.) Jesus hearing 1 this 2, said 3 to the ruler of the synagogue, *fear 4 not, believe 5 only 6, and thy daughter shall 7 be made 7 whole 7.*

(D.) And when 1 he came 2 to the house, he 3 suffered no man to go in 3, save 4 Peter 5, James 6, John 7, and the father 8 and mother 9 of the girl 10.

(E.) They all 2 wept 1 and bewailed 4 her 3 ; but 5 he said, *weep 6 not 6 ; she is not dead, but sleepeth 7 ;* and they laughed 8 him 9 to 8 scorn 8, knowing 10 that 11 she was dead.

(F.) And he put 2 them 1 all 3 out 2, took 4 the girl by

## The DICTIONARY.

12 *dans*, prep. 13 *maison*, n. f. 14 *pour*, prep. 15 *guérir*, v. 2. 16 *filles*, n. f. 17 *unique*, adj. 18 *qui se mouroit*.

(B.) 1 *Consentir*, v. 2. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *avec*, prep. 5 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 6 *comme*, conj. 7 *s'avancer*, v. 1. 8 *il vint*. 9 *une personne*. 10 *de chez le chef de la synagogue*. 11 *qui dit*. 12 *maître*, n. m. 13 *ta*, pron. adj. f. 14 *mourir*, v. 2. 15 *incommoder*, v. 1.

(C.) 1 *Entendre*, v. 6. 2 *ceci*, pron. nom. m. 3 *dire*, v. 4. 4 *craindre*, v. 6. 5 *croire*, v. 5. 6 *seulement*, adv. 7 *adv. 7 sera guérie*.

(D.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *venir*, v. 2. 3 *il ne laissa entrer personne*. 4 *excepté*, prep. 5 *Pierre*, n. m. 6 *Jacques*, n. m. 7 *Jean*, n. m. 8 *père*, n. m. 9 *mère*, n. f. 10 *filles*, n. f.

(E.) 1 *Pleurer*, v. 1. 2 *t-out*, plur. m. ous, adj. 3 *la*, pron. conj. f. 4 *plaindre*, v. 6. 5 *mais*, conj. 6 *ne pleurez point*. 7 *dormir*, v. 2. 8 *je moquer de*, v. 1. and prep. 9 *lui*, pron. nom. 10 *savoir*, v. 3. 11 *que*, conj.

(F.) 1 *Les*, pron. conj. pl. 2 *faire sortir*, v. 5. 2. 3 *t-out*, pl. m. ous, adj. 4 *prendre*, N 2 5 the

5 the hand 6, and 7 called 7, saying *maid* 8, *arise* 9. And her spirit 10 came 11 again 11; and she arose 12 *straitway* 13; and he commanded 14 to 15 give 17 her 16 meat 17.

(G.) And her parents 1 were astonished 2; but he charged 4 them 3 that 5 they should tell no man 5 what 6 was done 6.

### The DICTIONARY.

v. 6. 5 *par*, prep. 6 *main*,  
n. f. 7 *Et il l'appella*. 8  
*filie*, n. f. 9 *se lever*, v. 1.  
10 *esprit*, n. m. 11 *re-ve-*  
*nir*, v. 2. 12 *se lever*, v. 1.  
13 *à l'instant*. 14 *ordonner*,  
v. 1. 15 *de*, prep. 16 *lui*,

pron. conj. 17 *donner à*  
*manger*.

(G.) 1 *Par-ent*, pl. *ens*, n. m.  
3 *étonner*, v. 1. 4 *leur*, pron.  
conj. pl. 5 *commander*, v.  
1. 6 *de ne dire à personne*.  
7 *ce qui étoit arrivé*.

## XXIX. *Christ* 1 *washes* 2 *his disciples* 4 *feet* 3.

(A.) Before 1 the 2 feast of the passover 2, Jesus having ended 3 his 4 supper 4, rose 5 from 6 table 7, laid 8 aside 8 his garments 9, took 10 a towel 11, girded 12 himself 12, poured 13 water 14 into 15 a basin 16, and 17 began 18 to 19 wash his disciples feet, and to wipe 21 them 20 with 22 the towel wherewith 23 he was girded 24.

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus-Christ*, n. m. 2 *laver*,  
v. 1. 3 *piéd*, n. m. 4 *son*,  
*sa*, plur. *sés*, pron. adj. 5  
*disciple*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Avant*, prep. 2 *la*  
*fête de pâque*. 3 *achever*, v.  
1. 4 *de souper*. 5 *se lever*,  
v. 1. 6 *de*, prep. 7 *table*,  
n. f. 8 *ôter*, v. 1. 9 *habit*,  
n. m. 10 *prendre*, v. 6.

11 *serviette*, n. f. 12 *s'en*  
*ceignit*. 13 *verser*, v. 1.  
14 *eau*, n. f. 15 *dans*,  
prep. 16 *bassin*, n. m. 17  
*Et*; conj. 18 *commencer*,  
v. 1. 19 *à*, prep. 20 *les*,  
pron. conj. pl. 21 *essuyer*,  
v. 1. 22 *avec*, prep. 23  
*dont*, pron. m. and f. 24  
*ceindre*, v. 6.

(B.) When

(B.) When 1 he came 2 to Simon 3 Peter 4, Peter said 6 unto 5 him 5, Lord 7, dost 8 thou wash my feet 8? Jesus answered 9, what 12 I do 13 thou knowest 10 not now 11; but 14 thou 15 shalt know 15 hereafter 16.

(C.) Peter said unto him, thou shalt never 1 wash my feet. Jesus answered him 2, if I wash thee 3 not, thou 4 hast no part 4 with me 5.

(D.) Simon Peter said unto him, Lord, not ~~1~~ my 2 feet 2 only 1, but 3 also 3 my 4 hands 4 and my 5 head 5. Jesus said to him, he 6 that 6 is washed 7, needeth 8 not, save to wash his feet 8, for 9 he is clean 10 every 11 whit 11; and ye are clean, but not 12 all 12. For he knew 13 who 14 should betray him 14; therefore 15 said he, ye are not all 16 clean.

(E.) So 1 after he had washed their feet 1, and 2 had taken 2 his garments, and 3 was set down again 3, he said unto them, know ye what I have done to you? ye call 5 me 4 master 6 and lord; and ye say well 7; for so 8 I am 8. If 9

The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 Quand, conj. 2 venir, v. 2. 3 Simon, n. m. 4 Pierre, n. m. 5 lui, pron. conj. 6 dire, v. 4. 7 seigneur, n. m. 8 me lavez vous les pieds? 9 répondre, v. 6. 10 savoir, v. 3. 11 à présent, adv. 12 ce que, pron. nom. m. 13 faire, v. 5. 14 mais, conj. 15 tu le jauras. 16 dans la suite.

(C.) 1 Jamais, adj. 2 lui, pron. conj. 3 te, pron. conj. 4 tu n'auras point de part. 5 moi, pron. nom.

(D.) 1 Non seulement. 2 les pieds. 3 mais aussi. 4 les

maines. 5 la tête. 6 celui qui. 7 purifier, v. 1. 8 a seulement besoin qu'on lui lave les pieds. 9 car, conj. 10 n-et, ette, adj. 11 partout, adv. 12 non pas tous. 13 savoir, v. 3. 14 qui étoit celui qui devoit le trahir. 15 c'est pourquoi. 16 tout, pl. m. ous, adj.

(E.) 1 Ainsi donc après qu'il leur eût lavé les pieds. 2 qu'il eût repris. 3 Et qu'il se fut remis à table. 4 me, pron. conj. 5 appeler, v. 1. 6 maître, n. m. 7 bien, adv. 8 je le suis. 9 si, conj.



*I* 11 then 10, your 12 lord and master 12, have washed your feet, ye ought 13 also 14 to 15 wash one another's feet 15; for I 16 have given you an example 16, that 17 ye shall do as 18 I have done to 19 you 19.

The DICTIONARY.

10 *donc*, conj. 11 *moi*,  
pron. nom. m. and f. 12  
*qui suis votre seigneur &*  
*votre maître.* 13 *devoir*,  
v. 3. 14 *aussi.* 15 *vous*

*laver les pieds les uns aux*  
*autres.* 16 *je vous ai montré*  
*l'exemple.* 17 *afin que*, conj.  
18 *comme*, conj. 19 *vous*,  
pron. conj.

XXX. Judas 1 betrays 2 Jesus 3.

(A.) One 1 of the twelve 2 apostles 3, called 4 Judas Iscariot 5, went 6 unto 6 the chief 7 priests 8, and 9 said 11 unto 10 them 10, *what* 12 *will you give* 14 *me* 13, and *I will deliver* 16 *Jesus unto* 15 *you* 15? and 17 they covenanted with him for 17 thirty 18 pieces 19 of silver 20.

(B.) One day 1 that 2 Jesus was at 3 a place 4 named 5 Gethsemane, a great 6 multitude 7 came 8 from 9 them 9 with 10 swords 11 and staves 12 in 13 order to seize him 13.

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Judas*, n. m. 2 *trahir*, v. 2.

3 *Jésus*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Un*, adj. 2 *douze*, adj.

pl. und. 3 *apôtre*, n. m. 4

*appelé*, p. p. 5 *Iscariot*,

n. m. 6 *aller trouver*, v. 1.

1. 7 *princip-al*, pl. m. *aux*,

adj. 8 *sacrificateur*, n. m.

9 *&*, conj. 10 *leur*, pron.

conj. 11 *dire*, v. 4. 12 *que*,

pron. nom. m. 13 *me*, pron.

conj. 14 *donner*, v. 1. 15

*vous*, pron. conj. 16 *livrer*,

v. 1. 17 *& ils convinrent*

*delui donner.* 18 *trente*, adj.

pl. und. 19 *pièce*, n. f. 20

*argent*, n. m.

(B.) 1 *Four*, n. m. 2 *que*. 3

*à*, prep. 4 *endroit*, n. m.

5 *nommé*, p. p. 6 *grand*,

adj. 7 *troupe de gens*. 8 *ve-*

*nir*, v. 2. 9 *de leur part*.

10 *avec*, prep. 11 *épée*,

n. f. 12 *bâton*, n. m. 13

Judas

Judas was with them 14, and he had given them 15 a sign 16, saying, *whomsoever* 17 *I shall kiss* 18, *that* 19 *same is* *Jesus* 19, *bold* 20 *him* *fast* 20.

(C.) When 1 he was near 2 *Jesus*, he said unto 3 him 3, *bail* 4 *master* 5; and he kissed 7 him 6. *Jesus* said unto him, *friend* 8, *wherefore* 9 *art thou come?* Then came they, and laid 10 hands 11 on 12 *Jesus*, and took 13 him.

THE DICTIONARY.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>pour se saisir de lui.</i> 14                   | <i>de.</i> 3 <i>lui</i> , pron. conj. 4 <i>je</i> |
| <i>eux</i> , pron. adj. plur. 15                   | <i>te salue.</i> 5 <i>maître</i> , n. m. 6        |
| <i>leur</i> , pron. conj. 16 <i>sign-</i>          | <i>le</i> , pron. conj. 7 <i>baiser</i> , v.      |
| <i>al</i> , pl. <i>aux</i> , n. m. 17 <i>celui</i> | 1. 8 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 9 <i>pour-</i>            |
| <i>que.</i> 18 <i>baiser</i> , v. 1. 19            | <i>quoi</i> , adv. 10 <i>mettre</i> , v. 4.       |
| <i>c'est Jésus.</i> 20 <i>saisissez</i>            | 11 <i>main</i> , n. f. 12 <i>sur</i> , prep.      |
| <i>vous de lui.</i>                                | 13 <i>se saisir de</i> , v. 2. and                |
| (C.) 1 <i>Quand</i> , conj. 2 <i>près</i>          | prep.   |

XXXI. *Jesus* 1 *is crucified* 2.

(A.) *Jesus* being condemned 1 to 2 be crucified 3, the soldiers 4 of the governor 5 of the Jews 6 took 8 him 7 into 9 the common 10 hall 10, stripped 11 him, put 12 on 12 him a scarlet 14 robe 13, put 15 a crown of thorns upon 15 his 16 head 16, and 17 a reed 18 in 19 his 20 right hand 20, bowed 21 the knee 22 before 23 him 24.

THE DICTIONARY.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 <i>Jésus</i> , n. m. 2 <i>crucifier</i> ,   | 12 <i>revêtir de</i> , v. 2. and prep.         |
| v. 1.   | 13 <i>robe</i> , n. f. 14 <i>d'ecarlante.</i>  |
| (A.) 1 <i>Condamner</i> , v. 1. 2             | 15 <i>lui mirent une couronne</i>              |
| <i>à</i> , prep. 3 <i>crucifier</i> , v. 1. 4 | <i>d'épine sur.</i> 16 <i>la tête.</i> 17      |
| <i>soldat</i> , n. m. 5 <i>gouverneur</i> ,   | 18 <i>et</i> , conj. 18 <i>ros-eau</i> , plur. |
| n. m. 6 <i>juif</i> , n. m. 7 <i>le</i> ,     | <i>eaux</i> , n. m. 19 <i>à</i> , prep.        |
| pron. conj. m. 8 <i>mener</i> , v. 1.         | 20 <i>la main droite.</i> 21 <i>fléchir</i> ,  |
| 9 <i>dans</i> , prep. 10 <i>prétoire</i> ,    | v. 2. 22 <i>gen-ou</i> , pl.                   |
| n. m. 11 <i>dépouiller</i> , v. 1.            | <i>oux</i> , n. m. 23 <i>devant</i> , prep.    |
|   | N 4 and  |

and mocked 25 him 26, saying 27, *hail* 28, *king* 29 of the *Jews*.

(B.) They also 2 spit 1 on 3 him 4, took 5 the reed and smote 6 him on 7 the head 7; and after 8 they had mocked him, they 9 took the robe off from him 9, put 10 his own raiment on him 10, and led 11 him away 11 to 12 crucify him.

(C.) There 3 were 3 also 3 two 1 malefactors 2 led 3 with 4 him to 5 be put 6 to 6 death 7; and when 8 the foldiers were come 9 to 10 a place 10 called 11 Calvary 12, they crucified him and 13 the malefactors 13, one 14 on his right 14, and 15 the other on his left 15.

(D.) Then 1 Jesus said 2, *father* 3, *forgive* 4 *them* 4; for 5 *they know* 6 *not what* 7 *they do* 8; and they 9 parted 9 his 10 raiment 11 and 12 cast lots 12.

(E.) The people 1 stood 2 beholding 2; and 3 the rulers

### The DICTIONARY.

24 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 25  
*se mocquer de*, v. 1. and  
prep. 26 *lui*, pron. nom.  
m. 27 *dire*, v. 4. 28 *nous*  
*te saluons*. 29 *roi*, n. m.

(B) 1 *Cracher*, v. 1. 2 *aussi*,  
conj. 3 *sur*, prep. 4 *lui*,  
pron. nom. m. 5 *prendre*,  
v. 6. 6 *frapper*, v. 1. 7 *sur*  
*la tête*. 8 *après que*. 9 *ils*  
*lui ôtèrent la robe*. 10 *le*  
*revêtirent de ses propres*  
*vêtemens*. 11 *emmener*, v. 1.  
12 *pour*, prep.

(C.) 1 *Deux*, adj. pl. m. and f.  
2 *malfaiteur*, n. m. 3 *surent*  
*aussi menés*. 4 *avec*, prep. 5  
*pour*, prep. 6 *mettre*, à, v.  
4. and prep. 7 *mort*, n. f.

8 *quand*, adv. 9 *arriver*,  
v. 1. 10 *au lieu*. 11 *ap-*  
*pellé*, p. p. 12 *Calvaire*,  
n. m. 13 *Et crucifièrent*  
*avec lui les malfaiteurs*. 14  
*l'un à sa droite*. 15 *Et*  
*l'autre à sa gauche*.

(D) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *dire*, v.  
4. 3 *mon père*. 4 *pardonne*  
*leur*. 5 *car*, conj. 6 *savoir*,  
v. 3. 7 *ce que*, pron. nom.  
m. 8 *faire*, v. 5. 9 *ils*  
*firent plusieurs parts de*. 10  
*ses*, pron. adj. pl. m. and  
f. 11 *habit*, n. m. 12 *Et*  
*les tirèrent au sort*.

(E.) 1 *Peuple*, n. m. 2 *se tenoit*  
*débout, en le regardant*. 3  
*Et les chefs de la synagogue*.  
3 *derided*



3 derided 4 him 5 saying, *he has saved 6 others 7, let him save himself 8, if 9 he be Christ 10 the chosen 11 of God 12.*

(F.) The soldiers also mocked him, coming 1 to 1 him, offering 2 him vinegar 3, and saying, *if thou be the king of the Jews, save 4 thyself 4.* They put also over 5 him 5 this 6 superscription 7, *this 8 is the king of the Jews.*

(G.) One 1 of the malefactors, who 2 were crucified with him, railed 3 on 3 him, saying, *if thou be Christ, save thyself and 4 us 4;* but 5 the 6 other 6 rebuked 7 him, saying, *dost thou not fear 8 God, seeing 9 thou art in 10 the same 11 condemnation 12? We 13 indeed justly 13; but this 14 man 15 has 16 done nothing amiss 16.*

(H.) He said unto Jesus, Lord 1, remember 2 me 3, when 4 thou comest 4 into 5 thy 6 kingdom 7; and Jesus said unto him, *verily 8 I say unto 9 thee 9; to-day 10 thou shalt be with me in 11 paradise 12.*

## The DICTIONARY.

4 *se mocquer de*, v. 1. and prep. 5 *lui*, pron. nom. m. 6 *sauver*, v. 1. 7 *autre*, n. m. 8 *lui même*, pron. nom. m. 9 *si*, conj. 10 *le Christ*. 11 *élu*, n. m. 12 *Dieu*, n. m.

(F.) 1 *S'approcher de*, v. 1. and prep. 2 *offrir*, v. 2. 3  *vinaigre*, n. m. 4 *saue-toi toi même*. 5 *au dessus de sa tête*. 6 *cette*, pron. adj. f. 7 *inscription*, n. f. 8 *celui-ci*, pron. nom. m.

(G.) 1 *L'un*. 2 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 3 *railler*, v. 1. 4 *Et nous saue aussi*. 5 *mais*, conj. 6 *l'autre*. 7 *repandre*,

v. 6. 8 *craindre*, v. 6. 9 *vu que*, conj. 10 *sous*, prep. 11 *même*, adj. 12 *condamnation*, n. f. 13 *pour nous, nous souffrons justement*. 14 *cet*, pron. adj. m. 15 *homme*, n. m. 16 *n'a point fait de mal*.

(H.) 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *se souvenir de*, v. 2. and prep. 3 *moi*, pron. nom. m. and f. 4 *quand tu seras arrivé*. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *ton*, pron. adj. m. 7 *royaume*, n. m. 8 *en vérité*. 9 *te*, pron. conj. 10 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 11 *dans*, prep. 12 *paradis*, n. m.

(I.) It

(I.) It 1 was 1 about 2 the sixth 3 hour 4, and 5 there was 5 a 6 darkness 6 all 7 over the earth 7 until 8 the ninth 9 hour 10. When 11 Jesus had said 11 with 12 a loud voice 12, *father* 13, *into* 17 *thy* 18 *hands* 19 *I commend* 14 *my* 15 *spirit* 16, he gave 20 up 20 the ghost 21.

(K.) Now 1 when the centurion saw 1 what 2 was 3 done 3, he glorified 4 God, saying, *certainly* 5 *this* 6 *was* a righteous 8 man 7. And all 9 the people 9, that 10 came 11 together 11 to that 12 fight 13, beholding 14 the things 15 which 16 were 17 done 17, smote 18 their breast 18 and 19 returned 19 home 20.

### The DICTIONARY.

(I.) 1 *Ceci arriva.* 2 *vers*, prep. 3 *fixième*, adj. 4 *heure*, n. f. 5 *il y eut.* 6 *des ténèbres.* 7 *par toute la terre.* 8 *jusqu'à.* 9 *neuvième*, adj. 10 *heure*, n. f. 11 *Jésus ayant dit.* 12 *à haute voix.* 13 *mon père.* 14 *remettre*, v. 4. 15 *mon*, pron. adj. m. but sometimes f. before a vowel. 16 *âme*, n. f. 17 *dans*, prep. 18 *tes*, pron. adj. pl. m. and f. 19 *main*, n. f. 20 *rendre*, v. 6. 21 *esprit*, n. m.

(K.) 1 *Le centurion ayant vu.* 2 *ce que*, pron. nom. m. 3 *étoit arrivé.* 4 *glorifier*, v. 1. 5 *certainement*, adv. 6 *celui-ci*, pron. nom. m. 7 *homme*, n. m. 8 *juste*, adj. 9 *tous ceux.* 10 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 11 *étoient venus.* 12 *ce*, pron. adj. m. 13 *spectacle*, n. m. 14 *voir*, v. 3. 15 *chose*, n. f. 16 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 17 *s'étoient passées.* 18 *se frappèrent la poitrine.* 19 *Et s'en retournèrent.* 20 *chez eux.*

XXXII. *Jésus* 1 *is* 2 *buried* 2.

(A.) When 1 the even was come 1, there 2 came 2 a rich 4 man 3 of Arimathea 5, named 6 Joseph 7, who 8 also himself was 8 Jésus' disciple 9. He went 10 to 10 Pilate 11, and 12 begged 12 the body 13 of Jésus; then 15 Pilate commanded 14 the 16 body to be delivered to him 16.

(B.) When 1 Joseph had taken 1 the body, he wrapped 3 it 2 in 4 a clean linen cloth 4, and 5 laid 6 it in 7 his 13 own 13 tomb 8, which 9 he had hewn 10 out 10 in 11 the rock 12; and he rolled 14 a great 15 stone 16 to 17 the door 17 of the sepulchre 18 and departed 19.

(C.) Now 1 the next day 1 that 2 followed the day of the preparation 2, the 3 chief priests 3 and the Pharisees 4 came 5 together 6 unto 7 Pilate 7, saying 8,

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus*, n. m. 2 *être mis* dans le tombeau, v. pass. prep. art. and n. m.

(A.) 1 *Le soir étant arrivé*. 2 *il vint*. 3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *riche*, adj. 5 *Arimathie*, n. f. 6 *nommé*, p. p. 7 *Joseph*, n. m. 8 *qui étoit aussi*. 9 *disciple*, n. m. 10 *aller trouver*, v. 1. 1. 11 *Pilate*, n. m. 12 *Et lui demanda*. 13 *corps*, n. m. 14 *ordonner*, v. 1. 15 *donc*, conj. 16 *qu'on le lui remit*.

(B.) 1 *Joseph ayant emporté*. 2 *le*, pron. conj. m. 3 *envelopper*, v. 1. 4 *dans un*

*linceuil blanc*. 5 *Et*, conj. 6 *mettre*, v. 4. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *le tombeau*. 9 *que*, pron. m. and f. 10 *creuser*, v. 1. 11 *dans*, prep. 12 *roc*, n. m. 13 *pour lui-même*. 14 *rouler*, v. 1. 15 *grand*, adj. 16 *pierre*, n. f. 17 *à l'entrée*. 18 *sepulchre*, n. m. 19 *s'en aller*, v. 1.

(C.) 1 *Le lendemain*. 2 *qui étoit le jour d'après la préparation*. 3 *les principaux d'entre les prêtres*. 4 *pharisien*, n. m. 5 *aller*, v. 1. 6 *en corps*. 7 *trouver Pilate*. 8 *et lui dirent*.

(D.) *Sir*



(D.) Sir 1, we remember 2 that 3 that 4 deceiver 5 said 6, whilst 7 he was yet 8 alive 9, after 10 three 11 days 12 I will rise 13 again 13. Command 14 therefore 15 that 16 the sepulchre be made sure 16 until 17 the 17 third 18 day, lest 19 his 20 disciples 21 come 22 by night, and steal him away, and say 22 to the people 23, he is risen from 24 the dead 24; so 25 the last error shall be worse than 25 the first 26.

(E.) Pilate said unto them, ye have a watch 1, go 2 your way 2, make 3 it as sure as you can 3. So 5 they went 4 and made 6 the sepulchre sure 6, sealing 7 the stone 8 and 9 setting a watch 9.

### THE DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 Seigneur, n. m. 2 se  
ressouvenir, v. 2. 3 que,  
conj. 4 ce, pron. adj. m.  
5 séducteur, n. m. 6 dire,  
v. 4. 7 lorsque, conj. 8  
encore, adv. 9 en vie. 10  
dans, prep. 11 trois, adj.  
plur. 12 jour, n. m. 13  
ressusciter, v. 1. 14 com-  
mander, v. 1. 15 donc,  
conj. 16 qu'on garde le  
sépulchre. 17 jusqu'an. 18  
troisième, adj. 19 de pour  
que, conj. 20 ses, pron. adj.  
plur. m. and f. 21 dis-

ciple, n. m. 22 ne viennent  
l'enlever de nuit & ne disent.  
23 peuple, n. m. 24 des  
morts. 25 la dernière erreur  
seroit pire que. 26 premier,  
adj.

(E.) 1 Garde, n. f. 2 s'en al-  
ler, v. 1. 3 faites le garder  
aussi bien que vous pourrez.  
4 s'en aller, v. 1. 5 donc,  
conj. 6 s'assurèrent du sé-  
pulcre. 7 en apposant leur  
sceau sur. 8 pierre, n. f. 9  
& posant des gardes.

XXXIII. *Jesus* 1 *riseth* 2 *from* 3 *the dead* 4.

(A.) In 1 the end 2 of the sabbath 3, as 4 it began to dawn towards the first day of the week 4, came 9 Mary 5 Magdalene 6 and 7 the other 8 Mary to 10 see 10 the sepulchre 11.

(B.) And 1 behold there was 1 a great 2 earthquake 3; for 4 the angel 5 of the Lord 6 descended 7 from 8 heaven 9, and rolled 10 back 10 the 11 stone from the door 11 and sat 12 upon 13 it 13.

(C.) And his 1 countenance 2 was like 3 lightning 4, and his raiment 5 white 6 as snow 6; for 7 fear of him the keepers did shake 7, and 8 became as dead men 8.

(D.) And the angel said 1 to the women 2, *fear* 3 *not ye*, for I know 4 that 5 ye seek 6 *Jesus*, who 7 was 8 crucified 8.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus*, n. m. 2 *être ressuscité*, v. 4. pass. 3 *des*, prep. and art. 4 *mort*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *à*, prep. 2 *fin*, n. f. 3 *sabbath*, n. m. 4 *comme le premier jour de la semaine commençoit à paroître*. 5 *Marie*, n. f. 6 *Magdalaine*, n. f. 7 *et*, conj. 8 *autre*, adj. 9 *aller*, v. 1. 10 *voir*. 11 *sépulcre*, n. m.

(B.) 1 *et il se fit*. 2 *grand*, adj. 3 *tremblement de terre*. 4 *car*, conj. 5 *ange*, n. m. 6 *seigneur*, n. m. 7 *descendre*, v. 6. 8 *du*, prep. and art. 9 *ciel*, n. m. 10

*renverser*, v. 1. 11 *la pierre de l'entrée*. 12 *s'asseoir*, v. 3. 13 *dessus*, adv.

(C.) 1 *Son*, *sa*, pl. *ses*, pron. adj. 2 *visage*, n. m. 3 *comme*, conj. 4 *un éclair*. 5 *vêtem-ent*, pl. *ens*, n. m. 6 *aussi blanc que la neige*. 7 *ses gardes en furent saisis d'une si grande frayeur*. 8 *qu'ils devinrent comme morts*.

(D.) 1 *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *femme*, n. f. 3 *craindre*, v. 6. 4 *savoir*, v. 3. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *chercher*, v. 1. 7 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 8 *a été*  
He

*He is not here 9; for he is risen, as 10 he said 10; come 11 see 12 the place 13 where 14 the 15 Lord laid 15; and 16 go quickly and tell 16 his disciples 17 that 18 he is risen from the dead; and 19 behold he goeth 19 before 22 you 22 into 20 Galilee 21, there 23 shall ye see him 23, lo 24, I have told you 24.*

(E.) They departed 1 quickly 2 from 3 the 3 sepulchre, with 4 fear 5 and with great 6 joy 7, and did run 8 to bring 9 his 11 disciples 11 word 10. And 12 behold, Jesus met them, saying 12, all 13 hail 13.

(F.) And 1 they came 1, and held 2 him by the feet 2, and worshipped 4 him 3. Then 5 Jesus said unto them, be 6 not afraid 6, go 7 tell 8 my 9 brethren 10 that 11 they go 11 into 12 Galilee: there 13 shall they see me 13.

### The DICTIONARY.

crucifié. 9 ici, adv. 10  
comme il l'avoit dit. 11  
venir, v. 2. 12 voir. 13  
li-eu, plur. ieux, n. m. 14  
où, adv. 15 on avoit mis le  
seigneur. 16 hâtez vous  
d'aller dire à. 17 disciple,  
n. m. 18 que, conj. 19 il  
s'en va. 20 en, prep. 21  
Galilée, n. f. 22 où il sera  
avant vous. 23 vous l'y  
verrez. 24 c'est de quoi je  
vous avertis.

(E.) 1 Sortir, v. 2. 2 aussitôt,  
adv. 3 du, prep. and art.  
4 avec, prep. 5 crainte, n.

f. 6 grand, adj. 7 joie, n.  
f. 8 courir, v. 2. 9 porter.  
10 cette nouvelle. 11 à ses  
disciples. 12 mais Jésus  
vint au devant d'elles &  
leur dit. 13 je vous salue.  
(F.) 1 & elles s'approchèrent  
de lui. 2 lui embrassèrent  
les pieds. 3 le, pron. conj.  
m. 4 adorer, v. 1. 5 alors,  
adv. 6 ne craignez rien. 7  
aller, v. 1. 8 dire à. 9 mes,  
pron. adj. pl. 10 frère, n.  
m. 11 d'aller. 12 en, prep.  
13 ils me verront là.



XXXIV. *Jesus* 1 *sendeth* 2 *his* 3 *disciples* 4 *to* 5 *baptize* 6 *and* 7 *teach* 8 *all* 9 *nations* 10.

(A.) *Jesus* being risen 1 from 2 the dead 2, some 3 of the watch 3 came 4 unto the city 5, and 6 shewed 7 unto the chief 8 priests 9 all 10 the things 11 that 12 were 13 done 13.

(B.) And 1 when they were assembled 1 with 2 the elders 3, and 4 had taken counsel 4, they gave 5 a 6 large sum of money 6 unto the soldiers 7, saying 8, *say* 9 *ye*, that 10 *his disciples* came 11 *by* 12 *night* 12 and 13 *stole him* away 13, while 14 *ye* slept 15; and if 16 *this* 17 come 18 to 19 the governor's 21 ears 20, we will persuade 23 *him* 22 and secure 25 you 24.

# The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus*, n. m. 2 *envoyer*, v. 1. 3 *ses*, pron. adj. plur. 4 *disciple*, n. m. 5 *pour*, prep. 6 *baptiser*, v. 1. 7 *Et*, conj. 8 *enseigner*, v. 1. 9 *t-out*, plur. m. ous, adj. 10 *nation*, n. f.

(A.) 1 *Resusciter*, v. 1. 2 *des* morts. 3 *quelques-uns* des gardes. 4 *venir*, v. 2. 5 *ville*, n. f. 6 *Et*, conj. 7 *rapporter*, v. 1. 8 *principal*, plur. m. aux, adj. 9 *prêtre*, n. m. 10 *t-out*, pl. m. ous, adj. 11 *chose*, n. f. 12 *qui*, pron. m. and f. 13 *étoient arrivées*.

(B.) 1 *Ceux-ci* s'étant assemblés.

2 *avec*, prep. 3 *ancien*, n. m. 4 *après avoir délibéré* ensemble. 5 *donner*, v. 1. 6 *une grosse somme d'argent*. 7 *soldat*, n. m. 8 *Et* leur dirent. 9 *dire*, v. 4. 10 *que*, conj. 11 *sont venus*. 12 *pendant la nuit*. 13 *Et* l'ont enlevé. 14 *pendant que*. 15 *dormir*, v. 2. 16 *si*, conj. 17 *cela*, pron. nom. m. 18 *venir*, v. 2. 19 *aux*, prep. and art. pl. 20 *oreille*, n. f. 21 *gouverneur*, n. m. 22 *le*, pron. conj. m. 23 *gagner*, v. 1. 24 *vous*, pron. conj. 25 *mettre à couvert*, v. 4. prep. and n. m.

(C.) They

(C.) They took 1 the money 2, and did 3 as 4 they were taught 4; and this 5 saying 6 is 7 reported among the Jews 7 until 8 this day 9.

(D.) Then 1 the eleven 2 disciples 3 went 4 away 4 into 5 Galilee 5, into 6 a mountain 7, where 8 Jesus had 9 appointed them 9; and 10 when they saw him 10, they worshipped 12 him 11; but 14 some 13 doubted 15.

(E.) And 1 Jesus came, and spoke unto them, saying 1, all 2 power 3 is 4 given unto me 4 in 5 heaven 6 and in 7 earth 8. Go 9 ye therefore 10, and 11 teach 11 all nations 12, baptizing 14 them 13 in 15 the name 15 of the father 16, of the son 17, and of the holy 18 ghost 19, teaching 20 them to 21 observe 22 all 23 things whatsoever 23 I have commanded 24 you; and 25 lo, I am with you always 25, even 26 unto 26 the end 27 of the world 28.

### The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 *argent*, n. m. 3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *ce qu'on leur avoit ordonné*. 5 *ce*, *cette*, plur. *ces*, pron. adj. 6 *fausseté*, n. f. 7 *a couru parmi les Juifs*. 7 *jusqu'à*. 8 *jour*, n. m.

(D.) 1 *Or*, conj. 2 *onze*, adj. pl. und. 3 *disciple*, n. m. 4 *s'en aller*, v. 1. 5 *en Galilée*. 6 *sur*, prep. 7 *montagne*, n. f. 8 *où*, adv. 9 *leur avoit ordonné de se rendre*. 10 *Et le voyant*. 11 *le*, pron. conj. m. 12 *adorer*, v. 1. 13 *quelques uns*, pron. nom. m. and pl. 14 *neanmoins*, conj. 15 *douter*, v. 1.

(E.) 1 *Mais Jésus, s'appro-*

*chant, leur dit*. 2 *tout*, pl. m. *ous*, adj. 3 *pouvoir*, n. m. 4 *m'a été donné*. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *le ciel*. 7 *sur*, prep. 8 *la terre*. 9 *aller*, v. 1. 10 *donc*, conj. 11 *enseigner*. 12 *nation*, n. f. 13 *les*, pron. conj. plur. 14 *baptiser*, v. 1. 15 *au nom*. 16 *père*, n. m. 17 *fil*, n. m. 18 *saint*, adj. 19 *esprit*, n. m. 20 *enseigner*, v. 1. 21 *à*, prep. 22 *observer*, v. 1. 23 *toutes les choses que*. 24 *commander*, v. 1. 25 *Et je serai toujours avec vous*. 26 *jusqu'à*. 27 *fin*, n. f. 28 *monde*, n. m.

F I N I S.



9  
:  
:  
:  
u  
7  
:  
-  
b.  
es  
-  
ai  
f-  
8



(C.) They took 1 the money 2, and did 3 as 4 they were taught 4; and this 5 saying 6 is 7 reported among the Jews 7 until 8 this day 9.

(D.) Then 1 the eleven 2 disciples 3 went 4 away 4 into 5 Galilee 5, into 6 a mountain 7, where 8 Jesus had 9 appointed them 9; and 10 when they saw him 10, they worshipped 12 him 11; but 14 some 13 doubted 15.

(E.) And 1 Jesus came, and spoke unto them, saying 1, all 2 power 3 is 4 given unto me 4 in 5 heaven 6 and in 7 earth 8. Go 9 ye therefore 10, and 11 teach 11 all nations 12, baptizing 14 them 13 in 15 the name 15 of the father 16, of the son 17, and of the holy 18 ghost 19, teaching 20 them to 21 observe 22 all 23 things whatsoever 23 I have commanded 24 you; and 25 lo, I am with you always 25, even 26 unto 26 the end 27 of the world 28.

The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 Prendre, v. 6. 2 argent, n. m. 3 faire, v. 5. 4 ce qu'on leur avoit ordonné. 5 ce, cette, plur. ces, pron. adj. 6 fausseté, n. f. 7 a couru parmi les Juifs. 7 jusqu'à. 8 jour, n. m.

(D.) 1 Or, conj. 2 onze, adj. pl. und. 3 disciple, n. m. 4 s'en aller, v. 1. 5 en Galilée. 6 sur, prep. 7 montagne, n. f. 8 où, adv. 9 leur avoit ordonné de se rendre. 10 Et voyant. 11 le, pron. conj. m. 12 adorer, v. 1. 13 quelques uns, pron. nom. m. and pl. 14 néanmoins, conj. 15 douter, v. 1.

(E.) 1 Mais Jésus, s'appro-

chant, leur dit. 2 tout, pl. m. ous, adj. 3 pouvoir, n. m. 4 m'a été donné. 5 dans, prep. 6 le ciel. 7 sur, prep. 8 la terre. 9 aller, v. 1. 10 donc, conj. 11 enseigner. 12 nation, n. f. 13 les, pron. conj. plur. 14 baptiser, v. 1. 15 au nom. 16 père, n. m. 17 fils, n. m. 18 saint, adj. 19 esprit, n. m. 20 enseigner, v. 1. 21 à, prep. 22 observer, v. 1. 23 toutes les choses que. 24 commander, v. 1. 25 Et je serai toujours avec vous. 26 jusqu'à. 27 fin, n. f. 28 monde, n. m.

F I N I S.



9  
.  
.  
.  
u  
7  
.  
-  
3.  
es  
-  
ai  
f-  
28